



Kaipara te Oranganui

**KAIPARA  
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

---

## **Kaipara District Council Open Meeting Agenda**

**Date:** Wednesday, 27 April 2022  
**Time:** 9.30 am  
**Location:** Mangawhai Domain  
75 Moir Street  
Mangawhai

**Elected Members:** Mayor Dr Jason Smith  
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow  
Councillor Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock  
Councillor Karen Joyce-Paki  
Councillor Jonathan Larsen  
Councillor Mark Vincent  
Councillor Peter Wethey  
Councillor David Wills  
Councillor Eryn Wilson-Collins

*For any queries regarding this meeting please contact  
the Kaipara District Council on (09) 439 7059*



Wednesday, 27 April, 2022

9:30 am

Mangawhai Domain

75 Moir Street

Mangawhai

Pages

<b>1. Opening</b>	
1.1. Karakia	
1.2. Apologies	
1.3. Confirmation of agenda	
1.4. Conflict of interest declaration	
<b>2. Presentations and petitions</b>	
<b>3. Minutes</b>	
3.1. Confirmation of previous minutes	1
<b>4. Notice of motion</b>	
<b>5. Decision</b>	
5.1. Petition report on Awakino Point Ratepayers against Dargaville Racecourse Development	13
5.2. Kaipara District Libraries Strategy	17
5.3. Revised Terms of Reference for the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee	67
5.4. Decision on Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy	75
5.5. Full Year Forecast 2021-2022 – Recommendation to Council to Adopt	167

5.6.	Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy – Proposal for Consultation	187
5.7.	Report on Baylys Beach Projects	205
5.8.	Mangawhai shared path – Delegation to award Contract	225
5.9.	Spring Street Reticulation - Additional funding request	229
5.10.	Rescinding of Decision-making arrangements: COVID-19 Pandemic decision made Monday 23 March, 2020	233
6.	Information	
6.1.	Kaipara District Council Taumata Arowai Drinking Water Standards and Rules Joint Submission	239
6.2.	Exceptions Report	351
6.3.	Resolutions Register	365
7.	Resolution to move to Public Excluded Session	371
8.	Public Excluded agenda items - 27 April 2022	
9.	Return to Open Session	
10.	Closure	
10.1.	Karakia	

# Confirmation of Open Minutes

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Gavin Dawson, Governance Advisor

## Recommendation/Ngā tūhunga

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Confirms the following Minutes as a true and accurate record.
  - Open Council Meeting Minutes – 30 March 2022.
  - Extraordinary Council Meeting Minutes – 13 April 2022.



## Kaipara District Council

### Open Minutes

**Date:** Wednesday, 30 March 2022  
**Time:** 9:30 am – 2:33 pm  
**Location:** Held online via Webex, Broadcast live on YouTube due to Covid Level restrictions. Permitted under Pandemic Notice

**Members Present:** Mayor Jason Smith  
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow  
Councillor Jonathan Larsen  
Councillor Karen Joyce-Paki  
Councillor Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock  
Councillor Mark Vincent  
Councillor Peter Wethey  
Councillor David Wills  
Councillor Eryn Wilson-Collins

---

#### 1. Opening

##### 1.1 Karakia

Mayor Smith opened the Meeting with karakia.

##### 1.2 Apologies

Nil.

##### 1.3 Confirmation of agenda

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Cr Wilson-Collins**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Confirms the agenda for 30 March 2022 noting that the Chief Executive has withdrawn item 5.3.

**Carried**

##### 1.4 Conflict of interest declaration

Nil.

## 2. Presentations and petitions

### 2.1 Presentation: Patrick French on the Covid-19 response from Kaipara District Council

Patrick French gave a presentation to the Elected Members.

## 3. Minutes

### 3.1 Confirmation of Open Minutes - 23 February 2022

**Moved: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

**Seconded: Mayor Smith**

That Kaipara District Council:

a) Confirms the following Minutes as a true and accurate record.

- Open Council Minutes – 23 February 2022.

**Carried**

## 4. Notices of motion

### 4.1 Rate increase limits - Cr del la Varis-Woodcock

[Secretarial note: The Notice of Motion was changed by the Mover with the agreement of the meeting from what was in the published agenda.]

**Moved: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock**

**Seconded: Cr Joyce-Paki**

a) That the Council requests from the Chief Executive a review of all existing budgeted expenditure for the July 22-June 2023 financial year with the aim of limiting any proposed rate increase to 5% at the very maximum, or preferably under.

[Secretarial note: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock called for a division.]

Elected Member	For	Against	Abstain	Absent
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow		X		
Cr Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock	X			
Cr Karen Joyce-Paki	X			
Cr Jonathan Larsen		X		
Cr Mark Vincent		X		
Cr Peter Wethey		X		
Cr David Wills		X		
Cr Eryn Wilson-Collins		X		
Mayor Dr Jason Smith		X		
<b>Total Votes</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>7</b>		

**The motion was Lost**



The Meeting adjourned at 10.44 am.

The Meeting reconvened at 10.50 am.

#### 4.2 Covid-19 policy approaches - Cr del la Varis-Woodcock

**Moved: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock**

**Seconded: Cr Wills**

- a) That Council requests from the Chief Executive the immediate review of any existing Health and Safety policy, or policies that decree the presentation of vaccine passports to access Council-owned facilities.
- b) That the Council requests from the Chief Executive the immediate review of any policy, or policies instituted, which mandate vaccination for certain Council roles or occupations.

[Secretarial note: Mayor Smith called for a division.]

<b>Elected Member</b>	<b>For</b>	<b>Against</b>	<b>Abstain</b>	<b>Absent</b>
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow		X		
Cr Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock	X			
Cr Karen Joyce-Paki		X		
Cr Jonathan Larsen		X		
Cr Mark Vincent		X		
Cr Peter Wethey		X		
Cr David Wills			X	
Cr Eryn Wilson-Collins		X		
Mayor Dr Jason Smith		X		
<b>Total Votes</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>1</b>	

**The motion was Lost**

#### 5. Decision

##### 5.1 Decision on Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel Participation and Representation

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Cr Wethey**

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Agrees elected member participation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be no participation.

[Secretarial note: Cr Wills proposed an amendment to the motion.]

**Moved: Cr Wills**  
**Seconded: Cr Larsen**

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Agrees elected member participation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be two participant observers with no speaking rights
- b) Agrees that elected member representation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be the elected members representing Otamatea Ward (currently Crs Curnow and Vincent).

**Carried (Unanimous)**

[Secretarial note: The substantive motion was put.]

**Moved: Cr Wills**  
**Seconded: Cr Larsen**

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Agrees elected member participation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be two participant observers with no speaking rights
- b) Agrees that elected member representation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be the elected members representing Otamatea Ward (currently Crs Curnow and Vincent).

**Carried (Unanimous)**

## **5.2 The extension of Contract 860 - The maintenance of Parks, Reserves, Cemeteries, Public Toilets, Buildings and Dargaville Gardens 2018/2022**

[Secretarial note: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock left the meeting at 12.03 pm at the beginning of this item, with technical difficulties.]

[Secretarial note: Cr Wilson-Collins left the Meeting at 12.04 pm.]

[Secretarial note: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock rejoined the meeting at 12.06 pm during questions.]

**Moved: Cr Joyce-Paki**  
**Seconded: Mayor Smith**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves to extend the term of contract for Contract 860, The Maintenance of Parks, Reserves, Cemeteries, Public Toilets, Buildings and Dargaville Gardens 2018/2022, for a further four months to the 31 October 2022.

**Carried (Unanimous)**

### 5.3 Externally funded projects – Pōuto Wharf Options and Funding

[Secretarial note: This agenda item (5.3) was withdrawn from the agenda on 28 March 2022 under Kaipara District Council Standing Order 9.9.]

The Meeting adjourned for lunch at 12.14 pm.

[Secretarial note: Cr Joyce-Paki and Cr Vincent left the Meeting during the adjournment.]

The Meeting reconvened at 12.30 pm.

### 5.4 Externally funded projects – Additional funding for Pahi Wharf and Kaiwaka Footbridges

[Secretarial note: Cr Vincent rejoined the meeting at 12.34 pm.]

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves that the shortfall of \$75,000 for Pahi Wharf be funded from District Financial Contributions Reserve.
- b) Approves that the shortfall of \$23,000 for Kaiwaka Footbridges be funded from:
  - 1) \$13,000 from retained earnings; and
  - 2) \$10,000 from Kaiwaka Pahi Wharf Financial Contributions Reserve.

[Secretarial note: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock proposed an amendment to the motion.]

**Moved: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock**

**Seconded: Cr Wethey**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves that the shortfall of \$75,000 for Pahi Wharf be funded from the Maungaturoto, Paparoa, Tinopai and Surrounds Financial Contributions Reserve.
- b) Approves that the shortfall of \$23,000 for Kaiwaka Footbridges be funded from:
  - 1) \$13,000 from retained earnings; and
  - 2) \$10,000 from Kaiwaka Pahi Wharf Financial Contributions Reserve.

[Secretarial note: Cr Wilson-Collins rejoined the Meeting at 12.53 pm during this debate.]

[Secretarial note: Mayor Smith called for a division.]

<b>Elected Member</b>	<b>For</b>	<b>Against</b>	<b>Abstain</b>	<b>Absent</b>
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow	X			
Cr Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock	X			
Cr Karen Joyce-Paki				X
Cr Jonathan Larsen	X			
Cr Mark Vincent	X			
Cr Peter Wethey	X			
Cr David Wills		X		
Cr Eryn Wilson-Collins	X			
Mayor Dr Jason Smith	X			
<b>Total Votes</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>1</b>		<b>1</b>

**The Motion was Carried**

[Secretarial note: The substantive motion was put.]

**Moved: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock**  
**Seconded Cr Wethey**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves that the shortfall of \$75,000 for Pahi Wharf be funded from the Maungaturoto, Papanoa, Tinopai and Surrounds Financial Contributions Reserve.
- b) Approves that the shortfall of \$23,000 for Kaiwaka Footbridges be funded from:
  - 1) \$13,000 from retained earnings; and
  - 2) \$10,000 from Kaiwaka Pahi Wharf Financial Contributions Reserve.

**Carried (Unanimous)**

## **5.5 Joint Submission - Renewable Energy Zones Consultation**

**Moved: Deputy Mayor Curnow**  
**Seconded: Cr del la Varis-Woodcock**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves the Draft Joint Submission on Renewable Energy Zones (Attachment B).
- b) Delegates the Mayor the authority to finalise the submission in conjunction with the Mayors and Chairperson of the Northland Councils, to reflect any further elected member feedback.

**Carried (Unanimous)**

## 5.6 Local Government Elections 2022 - Order of Candidate Names

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Notes the 2022 Triennial Election Report from the Electoral Officer.
- b) Resolves for the 2022 Triennial Election as permitted under Regulation 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001, to adopt the random order of candidate names.

**Carried (Unanimous)**

## 6. Information

### 6.1 3 Waters - Report from the Working Group on Representation, Governance and Accountability of New Water Services Entities

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Notes the report from the Working Group on Representation, Governance and Accountability of New Water Services Entities and the subsequent statement from the Kaipara District Mayor (Attachments A and B).

**Carried**

**Cr de la Varis-Woodcock voted against**

### 6.2 Exceptions report

[Secretarial note: Cr Vincent left the Meeting at 1.28 pm during questions for this item.]

**Moved: Cr Wethey**

**Seconded: Cr Wills**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Notes the Exceptions report.

**Carried**

### 6.3 Resolutions Register

**Moved: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

**Seconded: Cr Wills**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Notes the Resolutions Register – March 2022.

**Carried**

## 7. Resolution to move into Public Excluded Session

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Cr Wilson-Collins**

The following recommendation is made in reliance on section 48(1)(a) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (LGOIMA) and the particular interest or interests protected by section 7 of the Act.

On the grounds that matters will be prejudiced by the presence of members of the public during discussions on the following items, it is recommended:

<b>Recommendation/Ngā tūhunga</b>	
a) That the following items are considered with the public excluded:	
<b>Item</b>	<b>Grounds for excluding the public</b>
Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes - 23 February 2022; Contract Award – CON994 KDC General Bridge Repairs 2021-24; Three Waters Operations and Maintenance Contract renewal	S7(2)(a) to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons.  S7(2)(i) enable any local authority holding the information to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations).

**Carried**

The Meeting moved into Public Excluded Session at 1.49 pm.

**8. Return to Open Session 2.30 pm.**

The meeting returned to open session at 2.30 pm.

**9. Closure**

**9.1 Karakia**

Mayor Smith closed the Meeting with a karakia.

The Meeting closed at 2.33 pm.

**Kaipara District Council**  
**Extraordinary Meeting Minutes**

**Date:** Wednesday, 13 April 2022  
**Time:** 9.00 am – 10.12 am  
**Location:** Conference Room, Northern Wairoa Memorial Hall,  
Dargaville

**Members Present:** Mayor Dr Jason Smith  
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow  
Councillor Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock  
Councillor Mark Vincent  
Councillor Peter Wethey  
Councillor David Wills (by phone)  
Councillor Eryn Wilson-Collins (by video)

**Apologies:** Councillor Karen Joyce-Paki  
Councillor Jonathan Larsen

---

**1. Opening**

**1.1 Apologies**

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Accepts the apology from Cr Joyce-Paki and Cr Larsen.

**Carried**

**1.3 Confirmation of agenda**

**Moved: Deputy Mayor Curnow**

**Seconded: Cr Vincent**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Confirms the agenda for the Extraordinary Meeting held 13 April 2022.

**Carried**

**1.4 Conflict of interest declaration**

Nil.

**2. Decision**

**2.1 Externally funded projects – Pouto Wharf Options and Funding**

**Moved: Mayor Smith**

**Seconded: Cr Wills**

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves the shortfall of \$265,000 be funded from District Financial Contributions Reserve to facilitate the completion of Pouto Wharf.

**Carried (unanimous)**

**3. Closure**

The Meeting closed at 10.12 am.



# **Petition—Awakino Point Ratepayers against Dargaville Racecourse Development**

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Paul Waanders, District Planner

## **Purpose | Ngā whāinga**

To provide a response regarding the petition received at the February Council meeting on the potential Private Plan Change for Dargaville Racecourse.

## **Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga**

A petition against the proposed development of the Dargaville Racecourse was submitted to Council for consideration at the 23 February 2022 Council Meeting.

Council has subsequently received a Private Plan Change application for the Dargaville Racecourse and there is a prescribed process in Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) that now needs to be followed.

Staff recommend that correspondence is sent to the petition organisers, noting the Private Plan Change application has been received and that it will be publicly notified (likely within the next few months) and that the petitioners (as well as any members of the public) can lodge submissions once the Private Plan Change is notified.

## **Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga**

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Notes that the Private Plan Change application (PPC81 Dargaville Racecourse) has now been received.
- b) Notes that the Resource Management Act 1991(RMA) prescribes the procedure for determining the outcome of such applications, which is outlined in Schedule 1 of the RMA.
- c) Agrees that staff respond to the petition organisers advising them that the Private Plan Change has been received and that the petitioners will be informed when the Plan Change is notified and are encouraged at that stage to exercise their right to make submissions.

## **Context | Horopaki**

At the February 2022 Council Meeting, a petition on the future development of the Dargaville Racecourse was submitted to Council for consideration and petitioners had the opportunity to explain their views and answer questions for clarification from Elected Members.

Since presenting the petition to Council, a Private Plan Change (PPC81 Dargaville Racecourse), has been lodged in terms of Part 2 of Schedule 1, RMA. This prescribes the procedure to be followed for notification, receiving of submissions, conducting a hearing, and making decisions on plan changes.

## **Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero**

The petition originated after the Dargaville Racing Club, Dargaville Community Development Board and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Whātua (the applicants) met with local residents as part of the preparation of the Proposed Private Plan Change.

The Awakino Point Ratepayer's and Residents circulated a petition amongst 30 property owners who signed the petition in opposition to the potential re-zoning of the Dargaville Racecourse for light industrial and housing development (through the Private Plan Change process) and submitted this to Council early February 2022. This petition was received by Council at its February 2022 Council meeting.

Subsequently the applicants have lodged their Private Plan Change request with Council. The RMA prescribes the steps to process Private Plan Changes, starting with an assessment of the application to determine if additional information is required to better understand the proposal. Staff have requested further information and at the time of writing, staff are awaiting the additional information before the next step in the process can be undertaken.

Since the application for the Private Plan Change has been received, the prescribed procedure must be followed and the Awakino Point Ratepayer's and Residents are encouraged to become involved in the process and make submissions on the application in due course.

### **Options**

**Option 1:** Respond to the petitioners that advising them that the Private Plan Change has been received and that the petitioners will be informed when the Plan Change is notified.

#### Advantages

- This is an expectation from the petitioners from Council.
- This will help inform them about the Private Plan Change process and how they can influence the process.

#### Disadvantages

- None identified

**Option 2:** Do not provide a response to the petitioners.

#### Advantages

- None identified

#### Disadvantages

- Potential break down in trust/relationships with these community members.

The recommended option is **Option 1**

### **Policy and planning implications**

The Private Plan Change procedure is the opportunity for all stakeholders to express their views on the development proposals for the Dargaville Racecourse.

### **Financial implications**

None.

### **Risks and mitigations**

By not following the prescribed RMA process, Council could be accused of pre-determining the Private Plan Change application. Following due process will mitigate this risk.

### **Impacts on Māori**

This does not impact relationship agreements with Iwi/Mana Whenua.

Any obligations under the Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with Te Uri o Hau and the Mana Enhancing Agreement (MEA) with Te Iwi o Te Roroa will be adhered to and Iwi will also be given the opportunity to make submissions in due course.

## **Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā**

The decisions or matters of this report with regards to the petition are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council's decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

## **Next steps | E whaiake nei**

The information in the report will be conveyed to the petitioners, noting that the Private Plan Change is likely to be notified soon. This will provide an opportunity for all stakeholders to provide input into the proposal.



# Kaipara District Libraries Strategy

**Meeting:** Council Meeting  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Lisa Salter, Library Manager

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To seek approval for the Kaipara District Libraries Strategy 2022 - 2032

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

Sue Sutherland of Sue Sutherland Consulting and her associate John Truesdale were engaged to work with us on this Library Strategy. Sue Sutherland is an experienced library professional, with an impressive record in local and central government and libraries both in New Zealand and Australia. John Truesdale is a digital learning and libraries specialist with experience across a range of different sectors and industries.

As experienced library and digital professionals they have workshopped the planning with elected members and have consulted with staff, iwi and the wider community. They have compared Kaipara libraries with similar library services in New Zealand and abroad to shape the Kaipara Libraries Strategic Plan. Local iwi have given good direction and a continued commitment to working together to improve library services in the district.

Reports have been brought to two Council Briefings (4 August 2021 and 6 April 2022) and the strategy has been updated after discussion from the 6 April Council Briefing. **Attachment A** provides the updated strategy for library services and **Attachment B** is a summary document.

The strategy outlines focus areas such as broadening horizons, enriching lives and strengthening communities with goals and actions. It has aligned with the Council Values and Long Term Plan Outcomes and noted how library services can contribute to these outcomes. There is an implementation plan which can realistically begin delivering improvements and evidence to support future funding discussions.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves the Kaipara Libraries Strategy 2022 - 2032 (Attachment A)

## Context | Horopaki

The role of public libraries has changed as the look and dynamics of communities have changed and the role of technology in everyday life evolves. Libraries are no longer just a place to get books out or do research. They are now also a community space where the community can gather for social or educational reasons, and access or use technology.

Sue Sutherland Consulting has provided an overview of the changes happening in Libraries in New Zealand and overseas, with examples from similar local authorities as well as the benefits this is having on individuals and communities.

This information has helped to shape the Kaipara Libraries Strategic Plan. The timing of this feeds in well with the Council having made the decision in the 2021–31 Long Term Plan (LTP) to fund the further development of libraries around the district to provide a library service that is relevant and fit for purpose.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

A Plan is needed to ensure that the direction for Kaipara libraries is clear, focused, and resources can be allocated in the most effective way.

The report recommendations currently involve unbudgeted expense. The next step will be to acquire funding for the projects. This may be achieved through reallocation of current budgets, potential Annual Plan adjustments and/or requests through the next Long Term Plan.

Many of these projects are ready to action, which provides the opportunity of applying for any external funding should it become available.

## Options

### Option 1: Council approves the Kaipara Libraries Strategy 2022-2032

Advantages:

- Addresses library service challenges in Kaipara District Council and provides a future focused fit for purpose plan to guide delivery
- Recognises community need across the District

Disadvantages:

- Funding will have to be sought
- Timing is dependent on funding

This is the recommended option.

### Option 2: Status quo

Advantages:

- No funding implications

Disadvantages

- Continued negative feedback from the community
- Continued inadequate space and limited services in Dargaville
- No aligned strategy for library services across the District
- Libraries not fit for purpose
- Negative impact on Council reputation

## Impacts on Māori

The above recommendation is in alignment with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy and with their obligations under the Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with Te Uri o Hau and the Mana Enhancing Agreement (MEA) with Te Iwi o Te Roroa. Iwi have been consulted to inform this strategy.

## Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report do not trigger the significance criteria outlined in Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, and the public will be informed via agenda on the website.

## Next steps | E whaiake nei

Staff will commence work on budget options, implementation plans and timeframes. Staff will ensure, where funding is required and not available externally, that the strategy informs future Council Annual Plan or LTP budget reviews.

## Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Kaipara District Libraries Strategy
B	Kaipara District Libraries Strategy A3 summary

# Kaipara District Libraries Strategy



### **Acknowledgements**

The strategy has been developed by Sue Sutherland and John Truesdale in collaboration with staff at Kaipara District Council, in particular District Libraries Manager Lisa Salter. Our thanks to everyone who participated for their ideas, enthusiasm and willingness to try some new ways of working.



# Contents

SECTION 1: BACKGROUND AND CONTEXT .....	2
INTRODUCTION.....	2
About this document.....	2
KAIPARA DISTRICT .....	2
KAIPARA DISTRICT LIBRARIES .....	4
Benchmarking.....	4
KAIPARA DISTRICT COUNCIL .....	5
Long term plan 2021-2031 .....	6
COMMUNITY VOICE.....	7
PUBLIC LIBRARIES IN THE 21 <sup>ST</sup> CENTURY .....	8
A modern library service .....	8
Global trends .....	8
SECTION 2: CHALLENGES AND OBSERVATIONS .....	10
DARGAVILLE AND MANGAWHAI LIBRARIES.....	10
Dargaville Library .....	10
Mangawhai .....	11
Project management.....	11
COMMUNITY LIBRARIES .....	11
SERVICING THE REST OF THE DISTRICT.....	12
NEW AND EXPANDED SERVICES .....	12
Digital services.....	12
Programming .....	13
Local heritage/culture .....	13
COLLECTIONS .....	13
STAFFING.....	14
WORKING WITH IWI .....	14
IMPACT OF POTENTIAL CHANGES TO LOCAL GOVERNMENT.....	15
SECTION 3: THE STRATEGY – TOWARDS 2032 .....	16
MOVING FORWARD.....	16
THE STRATEGY .....	18
STRATEGIC PRIORITIES.....	19
Broadening horizons .....	19
Enriching lives.....	19
Strengthening communities.....	20
WORKING FOR SUCCESS.....	20
Partnership with Iwi .....	20
Customer and community engagement .....	21
Skilled staff, sustainable business.....	21
OUTCOMES.....	21
IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	22
INVESTMENT .....	22
APPENDICES .....	23
APPENDIX 1: KAIPARA DISTRICT LIBRARIES.....	23
APPENDIX 2: COMPARISON WITH OTHER DISTRICTS.....	27
APPENDIX 3: TURNOVER RATES BY COLLECTION TYPE.....	31
APPENDIX 4: PUBLIC LIBRARY COMPARATIVE DATA.....	32
APPENDIX 5: PEOPLE PLACES SERVICE CALCULATOR .....	33
APPENDIX 6: CONSULTATION WITH STAKEHOLDERS.....	37
APPENDIX 7: RECOMMENDATIONS .....	44

## Section 1: Background and Context

### Introduction

The first two decades of the 21st century have seen huge changes in how people communicate, get their information, relax and live their lives. Commentators expect that these changes will continue, with the development of artificial intelligence, robotics, automation and the internet of things. Alongside these technologically driven changes the world is experiencing massive disruption from climate change and most recently, the impacts of the global pandemic caused by the Covid-19 virus.

The world of public libraries has also changed dramatically during this time, reflecting these societal and technological changes. Libraries have now embraced their role as crucial social infrastructure for community well-being, in a much more sophisticated and overt way, and are seen as part of an overall learning, literacy and leisure landscape. They remain committed to their well-known roles around reading and information. However, in the last 20 to 25 years they have developed their roles around learning and community-making, through activities and programmes, and have built a new emphasis on the digital world and helping people to work within it.

Public libraries are a service of local government. There are changes signalled in the way local government will operate in New Zealand in the future having a much greater role in ensuring the well-being of communities – socially, economically, culturally and environmentally. As one of the significant services that contribute to community well-being, the development of a new strategy is timely in providing direction and focus for investment over the next ten years.

### About this document

The strategy has been developed by Sue Sutherland Consulting in partnership with staff of the Kaipara District Council (KDC). The process included research and information gathering, workshops with library and council staff and interviews with elected members, Iwi representatives and some community members. The planned community consultation was not possible because of Covid restrictions and was scaled back to an online questionnaire.

In developing the strategy we have taken account of the local context, including the current state of Kaipara District Libraries and how they compare with library services of similar sized local authorities. The feedback from the workshops and the support for new services as identified in the questionnaire and interviews have also informed the strategy.

There are a number of challenges facing the district in providing modern professional library services for the whole district. These challenges along with observations from visits and our knowledge of the sector have led to a number of recommendations for suggested improvements and/or changes in how the services are delivered.

Three possible scenarios are presented and assessed against a range of criteria. The outcome from this has enabled the development of a future strategy that outlines the vision, mission, values and goals that will guide the development of Kaipara District Libraries over the next ten years.



### Kaipara District

The Kaipara District runs north to south from the Waipoua Forest to the Kaipara Harbour and East to Mangawhai, covering 3110km<sup>2</sup>. State Highway 1 from Auckland runs through the east side at Kaiwaka and State Highway 12 runs through Maungaturoto, Dargaville and up the west coast.

There are no large towns. Dargaville's population was just over 5000 in 2020 and the nearest city is Whāngarei, which is around 60km northeast from Dargaville. The three biggest towns are Dargaville, Mangawhai and Maungaturoto. Rural populations are sparse in some of the western and northern parts.

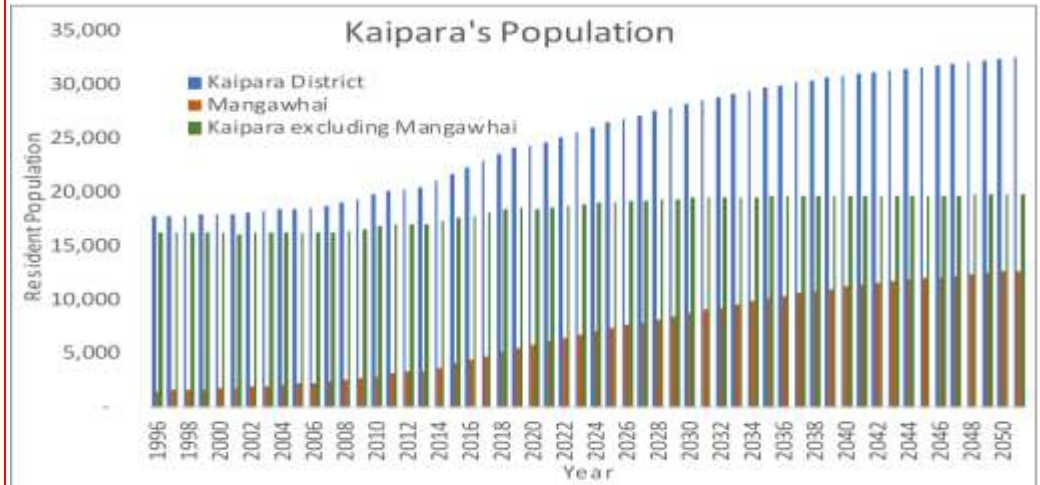
The information and data below has been taken from a comprehensive environmental scan for the Kaipara District that was completed in 2020<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Kaipara, place, people and key trends: Kaipara Environmental Scan 2020. Kaipara District Council.

<https://www.kaipara.govt.nz/uploads/LTP%202021%20%2031/Kaipara%20Environmental%20Scan%202020%20.pdf>

Key points to note:

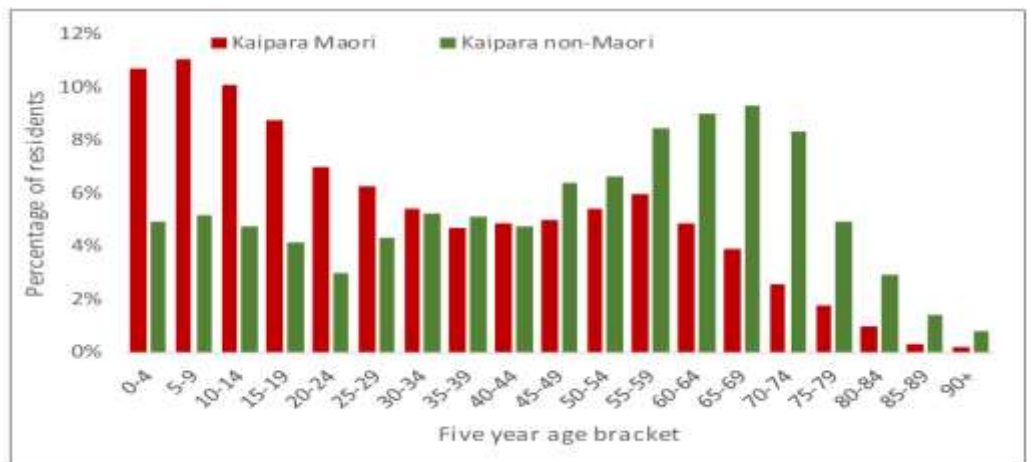
- The population was estimated to be 25,200 in 2020 and is projected to grow to 32,552 by 2051. By then the number of people over 65 will double.
- The major growth is in the east at Mangawhai with both retirees and younger families choosing the lifestyle offered. People moving out of Auckland come with city expectations of what a library service can be.



*“Because of the socio-economic status of much of the district, there is even more need in Kaipara than in most places for the library to provide access to things that wouldn’t otherwise be available to people. We shouldn’t focus Council money on the loudest voices or just in one area”*

- Interviewee

- 24.6% of the population is Māori, with Dargaville having 35.7% Māori
- The profile of Māori differs significantly from non-Māori, with more young people in the 0-24 year age group. Conversely, there are fewer Māori than non-Māori in the populations over 55 years.



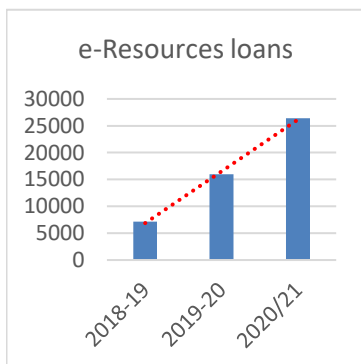
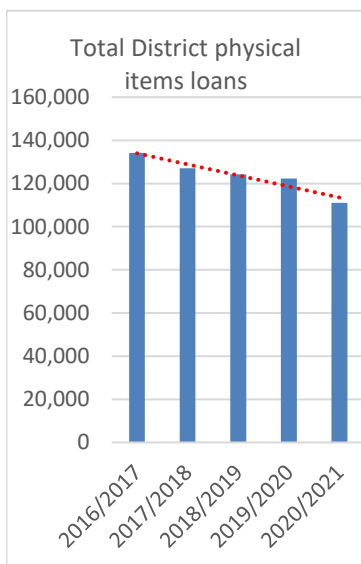
- The economy is founded on primary industries with an emphasis on practical and vocational skills rather than university based learning
- Internet connectivity is improving with rural broadband but there are still many pockets of poor or no connectivity
- People are very dependent on the car – the only public transport is a daily bus to Whāngarei from Dargaville.

A significant new development is proposed for Dargaville of mixed housing, a light industrial area and a retirement village on the 46.7 hectare former racecourse, 2km northeast of the town centre. This is a collaboration between the Dargaville Community Development Board, Te Runanga o Ngāti Whātua and the Dargaville Racing Club<sup>2</sup> and if it goes ahead will increase the population significantly in the immediate vicinity of the Dargaville Library.

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.matakohe.co.nz/projects/2021/12/14/whangrei-civic-centre-lee2b>

## Kaipara District Libraries

There are five libraries in the Kaipara District: Dargaville Library, which is the only professionally run library service, and four community libraries at Paparoa, Kaiwaka, Maungaturoto and Mangawhai which are run by volunteers. The community libraries receive support by way of grants for the purchase of books and a contribution towards running costs and rent if that is required. They are operated by independent management committees that have contracts for service with the KDC. All of the libraries are connected to Kōtui (the library management system) and data from this system, combined with other information was analysed to gain an understanding of how well the district's libraries were performing. The full analysis of this data is contained in Appendix one. Key findings include:



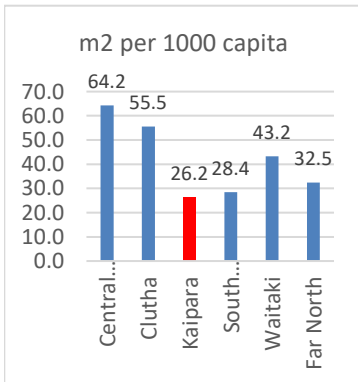
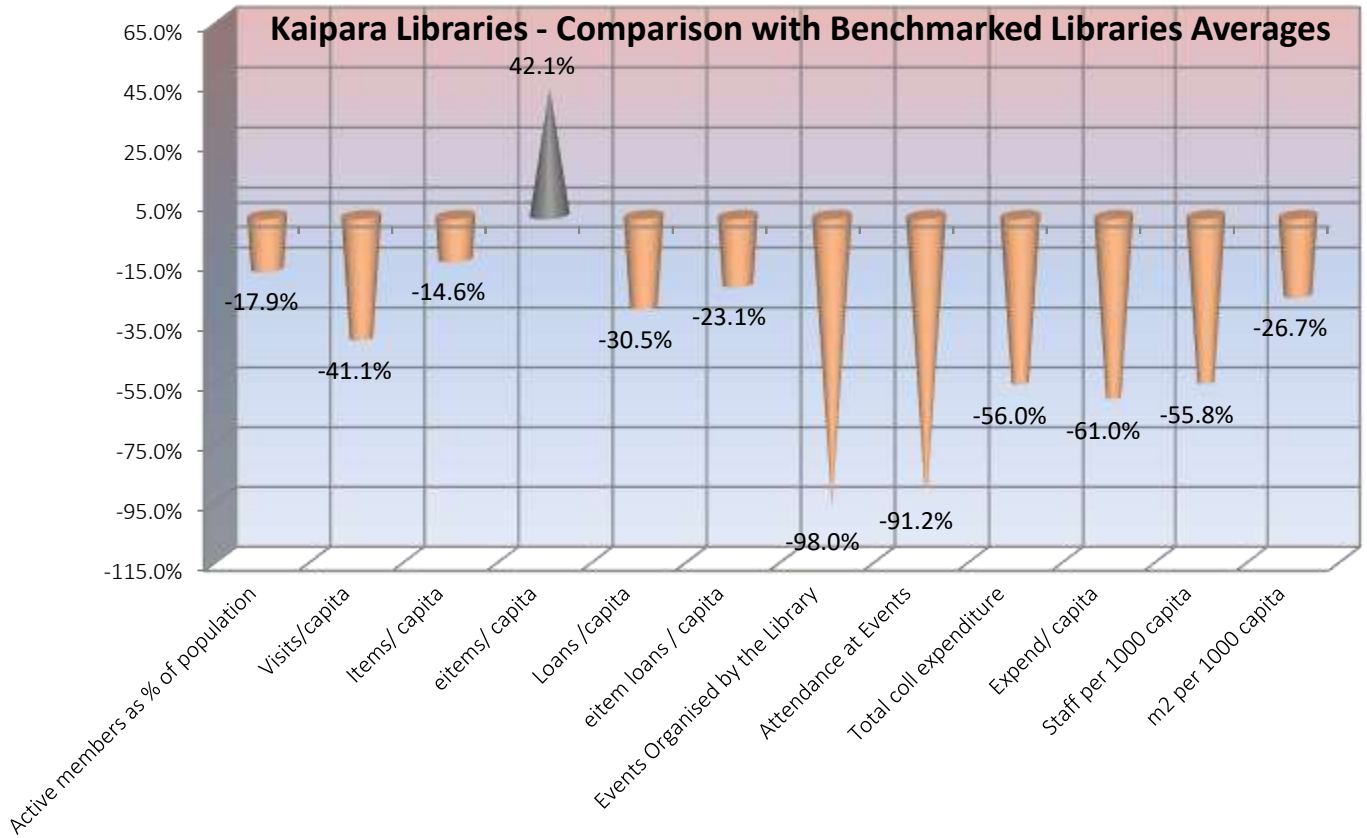
- The loan of physical items from the district libraries have been declining over the last five years. Covid related closures had an impact on Dargaville Library in particular. Covid has also had an impact on visits to Dargaville Library during the same period.
- At the same time, E-Resource loans have seen significant growth over the past three years
- The community libraries are carrying too much older stock and turnover of this stock is very low. Turnover is derived by dividing the number of loans by the number of items in the collection
- The currency of collections is also an issue. Ideally 50% -60% of the stock should be no older than five years. Dargaville Library has around 31% of the collection that is five years old or less, and the community libraries have an even smaller percentage of materials in this category. This suggests that along with carrying too much dead stock, insufficient new stock is being purchased to keep the collections current and fresh.
- Active members who used their cards in the previous two years number 4249. Kaiwaka, Maungaturoto and Paparoa each have fewer than 300 active members. Dargaville accounts for 60% of active members in the district.
- The total operational budget for Kaipara District Libraries in 2021/22 was \$574,784 which included \$63,000 for grants to the community libraries. Internal charges from Council were an additional \$167,136. The collections budget for Dargaville Library was \$58,000, a reduction on pre-Covid expenditure.

A comparison of Kaipara District Libraries relative to other library services in similar sized local authorities was made using data collected by Public Libraries New Zealand (PLNZ) for 2020-2021. Although Kaipara District has no exact comparator, four rural districts that had a similar population and a similar number of small libraries were chosen: Central Otago, Clutha, South Waikato and Waitaki. Far North District Libraries and Whāngarei City were included as the immediate neighbours of Kaipara District. The comparison looked at a range of key performance indicators around membership, visits, events, collections and loans, expenditure and staffing. A full analysis of the data is in Appendix two.

The graph on the following page summarises Kaipara District Libraries' performance relative to the benchmarked libraries. It shows how Kaipara sits with respect to the mean (average) for each measure. Apart from the number of e-items held per capita, all measure are well below the average, and in most cases are significantly below.

Key points to note from the analysis are:

- Kaipara is spending \$2.37 per capita on collections which is considerably less than other districts. The others ranged from \$4.68 (the Far North) to \$8.81 (Whāngarei).
- The district has the second lowest loans per capita compared to the benchmarked libraries
- Visits per capita are significantly lower than all the other seven libraries. This is partially because the community libraries do not have a door counter, but is also a reflection of the lack of space for programming and events, which are minimal in Dargaville's case.



- The amount of library space per 1000 capita (26.2m<sup>2</sup>) was the lowest and this measure includes all the community libraries. Dargaville Library catchment is estimated at 11,500 which suggest a building of between 750-1000m<sup>2</sup> according to NZ and Australian standards.
- The numbers of staff per 1000 capita for Kaipara was the lowest at 0.19. The recommended standard to serve a population of this size is 0.42 suggesting a staffing complement of 10.5FTE to 12.6 FTE (the current staffing is 4.7FTE)
- Kaipara District spends \$22.31 per capita on libraries and is the lowest of all benchmark libraries. Far North spends \$33 per capita and Whāngarei \$89.50. If Kaipara was to match the Far North based on current population this would add around \$270,000 annually to the budget. The other four benchmarked libraries ranged from \$55.12 per capital to \$69.45 per capita.



Picton Library, 720m<sup>2</sup>

## Kaipara District Council

The Council’s vision for the district is “Growing a better Kaipara: nurturing our people and place by inspiring a vibrant, healthy and caring community”. The focus will be on six areas: climate smart, healthy environment, celebrating diversity, a trusted council, prosperous economy and vibrant communities. Libraries have the potential to support several of the goals outlined in the vision.



### Long term plan 2021-2031

The Council’s ten year plan<sup>3</sup> includes:

- A new library facilities for Mangawhai in the LTP. Staff are to secure a site for the future library based on “relevant technical matters such as suitability, accessibility and land availability”.
- A new facility for the Dargaville Library that will be part of a larger civic development and is dependent on being transferred to a trust which would then raise funds to build the centre.

Capital has been identified as follows:

Capital projects with a ten year cost of more than \$250,000											
	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028	2029	2030	2031	Total
	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000	\$,000
Mangawhai Library Development		150	4850								5000
Mangawhai Library initial book inventory				290							290
Mangawhai book ongoing					58	58	58	58	58	58	348
Dargaville Library & Community building				2000							2000

An assumption in the LTP was that “Changes in the district’s population demographics resulting in greater numbers of retirees and Māori youth, is expected to increase demand for library services. There is a growing demand for digital services. It is anticipated there will be ongoing demands for changes in the range and types of services that the district’s libraries are expected to provide. This is expected to continue to increase”.

<sup>3</sup> Kaipara District Council. Long Term Plan Mahere Wā Roa, 2021-2031, pp 21, 35, 298

Also noted was support for community libraries to improve and develop their services and work to align standards between libraries. Co-operative initiatives with other Northland libraries would be investigated. From 2024 onwards RFID would be installed in libraries. Although no funding was identified in the LTP itself (it only specifies amounts of \$250,000 or more), \$90,000 has been set aside in year four for this purpose, with a request to the current Annual Plan Review for this to be moved forward to years 2 or 3.

*"In thinking about new libraries can we think beyond just libraries? Can we connect people's other needs and aspirations by providing facilities in close proximity?"*

- Questionnaire interviewee

*"Foster community, learning, civic pride and social wellbeing"*

- Elected member workshop

## Community voice

Workshops with library and council staff, and with elected members, along with interviews with Iwi and community representatives provided ideas and insights into community aspirations for libraries. Wider input was through an online questionnaire as Covid prevented any face to face focus groups or community gatherings.

There was general support across all groups for:

- More space for activities, reading, browsing and working in the library
- Spaces for community meeting and use
- More opportunities for learning programmes and activities to build community knowledge, capability and creativity
- Wide support for a mobile library to take library services to the community: to events, to more remote settlements, to marae, to schools. Several people expressed the view that this should not be at the expense of larger libraries in the main towns.

The Library was seen as a destination, a community hub that might have related civic, cultural or learning activities associated with it. It was valued as a civic, non-commercial space at the heart of a community.

The importance of having access to digital tools and tech so that people can keep up with where the future of work and leisure is heading was seen as important.

It was seen as important to cater for a wide diversity of needs, abilities and cultures. Libraries have grown out of European traditions and other ways of learning and experiencing the world need to be catered for, e.g. Te Ao Māori world view sitting alongside the traditional European view of library. Broadening the user base of the libraries was important.

There were many good ideas from comments in the questionnaire for programmes including:

- Seed bank, book clubs for different ages, interest groups with speakers on subjects affecting residents
- A community hub, nursery and community garden, focusing on sustainability
- A digital learning centre for seniors; encourage book clubs; children's activities arising from reading e.g. playacting

More detailed summaries of the output from workshops, interviews and the questionnaire are attached as Appendix 6.

## Public libraries in the 21<sup>st</sup> century

### A modern library service

The past two decades have seen significant changes in how libraries serve their communities. Modern library services in the 21<sup>st</sup> century continue to provide materials for reading, enjoyment and information. Their role in lifelong learning has broadened to encompass new digital formats as well as providing access to the devices and tools people need to access the internet and experience new technologies for themselves. Libraries have become places for people to meet, connect, create, learn new skills, study, work away from home, discuss, debate and be inspired and entertained through innovative programming.

*“Digital literacy is essential to navigating the knowledge economy. Thriving in the digital world requires new skills ranging from basics, such as how to set up an e-mail account ... to searching databases, applying for benefits online, accessing e-government services, or using a 3D printer. Digital literacy is particularly important for long-term economic success, including finding a job and acquiring skills needed to thrive in the workforce”.*

- Urban Libraries Council, USA



Waitohi Library, Johnsonville



Credit: Athfield Architect

The role of librarians has also changed over this time. As we have moved from an information scarce world to one where we are overloaded by information, librarians are helping people to become information and digitally literate, including searching and discovering online content, evaluating sources and identifying misinformation.

Quality information is often behind paywalls. Libraries make some of this available to citizens, to counteract the glut of opinion and disinformation that is so freely available. Never has this been as dramatically apparent as through the Covid-19 pandemic.

Funders and decision makers are increasingly recognising the value of public libraries to community well-being and civil society. Libraries are being recognised as key elements in the social infrastructure of a community, not only in the western world but increasingly in transitioning and developing countries from Eastern Europe, Africa and Asia.

In New Zealand the \$58.8 million government grant in 2020, for support to public libraries was significant recognition at a national level. The New Zealand Library Partnership Programme (NZLPP) administered by the National Library of New Zealand, has provided financial support to all public libraries during the recovery period of the pandemic. This funding ends in June 2022 and the ongoing sustainability of library services remains a priority.

### Global trends

IFLA (the International Federation of Library Associations) is the global body for research and advocacy for libraries. Their vision is for a strong, united library field powering literate, informed and participatory societies. IFLA recently released their Trends Report for 2021<sup>4</sup> which identifies 20 political, economic, social, cultural and technological trends that have the potential to shape the future of libraries and their communities. Of particular importance in shaping thinking for this strategy are:

- **Virtual is here to stay.** Through the pandemic many libraries extended their e-collections, moved services online and used new tools and apps to reach users. Making best use of these channels requires new skills for those working in libraries. The virtual is not replacing the physical – it is another way to access content and services.
- **The comeback of physical spaces.** During the pandemic there have been restrictions on gathering either because of lockdowns, or the need for social distancing. As these lift it is thought that people will rediscover the value of spaces that offer opportunities for meaningful exchange and discussion. There is a constant need to think about how to keep physical spaces attractive, useful and accessible for all.
- **Diversity taken seriously.** Our communities are much more diverse across: ethnicities, language, sexual orientation, gender, culturally and in ability. Librarians need to be more conscious of bias in their collections, practices, physical facilities and programmes to ensure that the library is for everyone in the community.

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.ifla.org/news/ifla-trend-report-2021-update-released/>





*Green libraries are designed to minimize negative impact on the natural environment and maximize indoor environmental quality by means of careful site selection, use of natural construction materials and biodegradable products, conservation of resources, and responsible waste disposal.*

- IFLA

- **Inequalities deepen.** While technology is creating new possibilities for those with access to it, the gap between them and those without will only grow, confining groups in the population to inequality and potential poverty.
- **Race to the extremes.** Political debate is becoming more polarised making it difficult to get consensus in politics and society. There is less willingness to engage and understand the views of others and declining trust in institutions and professions which previously had high respect. Libraries could act as “light houses – democratic spaces of knowledge promoting participation, collaboration and transparency”
- **Lifelong learning and information literacy.** Both of these are traditional roles for libraries but they are assuming new importance as a result of rapid economic and technical change and the inequalities referred to above. Information literacy (which includes digital literacy in this context) is vital to countering the misinformation and conspiracies that abound, particularly in social media.
- **Data domination.** The growing role of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and other applications of data is increasingly affecting our economic and social lives. Data literacy, and understanding how personal data is used, or misused, is going to be increasingly important in the future. The business of libraries generates significant amounts of data, including personal data and ensuring that this is protected and used ethically is vital. Libraries should also be using their own data to better understand customer needs.
- **The analogue backlash.** The ideas in this trend included the continuing importance of physical collections as well as virtual, and the concern by some that the virtual world can actually close down choices in how we get information with our online experience dominated by a small number of platforms designed to grab and retain attention. For some there is a need to see the pendulum swing back for a more balanced approach to life.
- **Scale matters.** There is the risk that we will see two classes of libraries – those they are able to keep up (often the bigger, better resourced ones and those that are left behind. This is already an issue in New Zealand in smaller local authorities. In Kaipara’s case closer working with the Far North and Whāngarei may be possible through local government reform or participating in national and regional initiatives.
- **An environmental reckoning.** Climate change is bringing new threats to communities, in many place forcing radical adaptation to avoid disaster. Libraries have a part to play both in awareness-raising helping to promote behaviour change, and in demonstrating the important of sustainability through green buildings when new facilities are required. IFLA has had a ‘Green Library Award’<sup>5</sup> for the past six years.

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://www.ifla.org/g/environment-sustainability-and-libraries/ifla-green-library-award/>

## Section 2: Challenges and observations

These observations around the challenges and opportunities for Kaipara District Libraries are drawn from our knowledge of the library sector, both in New Zealand and internationally, from the discussions with library and council staff, and the analysis of the library data. The questionnaire provided an indication of the types of services responders would like to have in the libraries, supported by the individual in-depth conversations with iwi representatives, and with a group of people who indicated in the questionnaire their willingness to talk with the consultants.

The key challenges preventing Kaipara District Council providing a modern library service are:

- Inadequate facilities – Dargaville Library is too small with insufficient space to deliver programmes and events, and limited or no space for users to read, study or browse.
- Insufficient numbers of staff to develop, promote and run new services which are now core in public libraries in New Zealand and internationally, e.g. access to digital technologies for learning and leisure, a range of learning programmes to meet diverse needs and communities
- The lack of a fully professional library service for the district. While Dargaville is professionally led and operated, it is not able to provide a modern, 21st century library service because of the lack of space and staff. The rest of the district is being short changed even more and the services are inconsistent across the community libraries. Significant areas in the north, west and south west have no access to library services

These challenges are discussed below with a number of recommendations for consideration.

### Dargaville and Mangawhai Libraries

#### Dargaville Library

A new library is urgently needed in Dargaville. The lack of space is severely limiting the ability to introduce new services and provide more learning programmes and events. In spite of a recent refurbishment which has improved the look and feel, there is still very little room for people based activities. The space issues have been exacerbated by the need for social distancing to meet regulations resulting from the Covid19 pandemic. A single entry point can be problematic, and more and stricter cleaning regimes are required.

Council's expectation that funding will be raised by a Trust is problematic in terms of timeliness in delivering a facility that is an integral, fit-for-purpose part of the library network for Kaipara District Council. Although \$2m in funding is indicated in the LTP in 2025/26 as the Council's contribution towards the fit out of a new library, there is no formal planning underway yet as to how the Trust will be formed and supported. There are some quite significant pitfalls and hidden costs in funding community infrastructure in this way. Two of the Far North District Council's (FNDC) libraries are part of facilities that include other arts, culture and community space that were funded in similar ways. However, a key difference is that there were already identifiable community groups in the Far North planning for arts and cultural facilities that enabled the library to be part of those complexes.

Other possible funding and governance models that could be considered are a public/private partnership; shared public funding, e.g. Council, Iwi, Dargaville Community Development Agency and/or Central Government agency partnership to build a shared facility; or the establishment of a Trust that is purely focused on fund raising rather than the development and ongoing operation of the whole facility. All avenues for funding will require significant council staff time and leadership.

A new purpose designed and built library and community hub for Dargaville has the very real potential to be a significant legacy project for the district for the next 50 years and will bring economic benefit to the town and district both through the development and construction and in the ongoing amenity benefit to the town.

*"Coffee please, and more space. It's crowded and claustrophobic. One cannot look at providing any more than basic services in the current tiny old Dargaville space"*  
- Questionnaire respondent.

*From my 6 year old "I would love the kids' area to be bigger with more books and huts to read in and more comfy areas. I would love craft activities."*

-From Arlo via the Questionnaire



Devonport Library



Credit: Athfield Architects

### **Mangawhai**

The Council is currently in the process of determining the best location and securing land for a new, larger Council owned and operated library in Mangawhai. Funding has been set aside in the LTP for this project. However, the Council has identified that with building and material costs escalating at a very significant rate it is likely that the budget will be insufficient.

### **Project management**

Both of these library builds need to be set up as projects now so that a more formal approach to planning can begin. The Council Property Team is running the process of securing land in Mangawhai and it is important that the Libraries Manager is involved in these early stages.

It is vital that concept and spatial design briefs are prepared well ahead of any decisions to engage architects/builders so that it is clearly understood from the outset what types of spaces, facilities and services are to be provided from the buildings. These will take account of the size of the population to be catered for, the size of the collections, the digital technologies, the types of public and activity space, and any special considerations for space required for other functions that might be collocated with the library in a community hub type approach. Ideally the libraries should be centrally located as part of the civic/cultural/retail precinct. The design briefs will also need to consider the implications of managing a library service under pandemic regulations should these be required in the future.

The lapsed time from preliminary planning, spatial brief, design, construction and opening is a minimum of three years and more likely to be 4-5 years, particularly if land is to be procured.

### **Recommendations:**

1. Set up the library build programmes for Dargaville and Mangawhai as projects with proper project management disciplines and timelines established
2. Agree the concepts for each building and develop spatial design briefs in advance of engaging architects/designers/builders
3. Do some further analysis on the issues, risks and benefits of a community funded and led model for Dargaville Library and explore alternative funding mechanisms

### **Community Libraries**

Book lending is only one of the services modern libraries supply. The community libraries operate mainly as book lending places, with relatively small numbers of active members and loans, other than at Mangawhai. The Council has already decided to move to provide a full library service at Mangawhai once a new, larger facility is built which means moving from a voluntary run facility, to being a full part of the library network.

The three remaining community libraries are holding too much stock that is old and not being read. This is evidenced by the low turnover of the majority of stock. There needs to be a major overhaul/ weed of collections to free up some space which can be used for sitting, browsing and using a public computer. They may require professional library support to do this. Without the training in library practices, and given the time available, volunteers cannot be expected to keep up to date with all the tasks, trends and technology needed for a modern library service.

It was apparent from the questionnaire and some of the comments made, that users are confused about the types of services and the level of service available from community libraries and do not understand that they are not operated by Council. There needs to be

*“Bring a printer or scanner on the mobile bus so people can sign up in advance to get something printed or scanned... a local JP on board once a month to get docs verified without going in to town. Helping people set up their own devices with the library app or website ...to borrow from their own device.”*

- Questionnaire respondent



E-mobile library – Upper Hutt

*“Personally (and I know I'm biased as I'm young and computer savvy) I think we need to focus on going digital as everything's moving online. I would love to see more focus on eBooks, Audiobooks (my personal favourite) and digital services”.*

- Questionnaire respondent

*“Would love to see more work go in to both the [library] app and the website, to make them even smarter and easier to use - so we can encourage people to use them more!”*

-Questionnaire respondent

clear articulation of what services they will and won't provide and their role in the overall system.

Each Community Library has a contract for service with the KDC. They are required to report on use and expenditure and provide a Health and Safety report regularly. We understand some of them have significant financial reserves built up. The LTP clearly states that they will be supported to develop services and align standards. Although there is no documented plan, we are advised that progress was made this past year on aligning policies and standards. The managers of the community libraries have good working relationships with Dargaville staff and each other, however they largely appear to operate separately.

**Recommendations:**

4. Support the community library managers to undertake a major weed of their collections to improve access, turnover and make space for people based activities
5. Agree the services that the community libraries will supply and the levels of service and incorporate in to the next revision of the Contract for Service. As a minimum, each library needs to place reserves for customers and fill reserves needed by other libraries, provide an internet computer for public use with a scanner and printer, and support people to connect to the wifi, in addition to their book loan service.

**Servicing the rest of the district**

The best way of meeting library, learning and information needs in parts of the community that are not serviced by a static library is a mobile library (library-on-the-go). This will provide access to services for people who cannot visit or don't visit because they don't think libraries are for them. People do not use libraries for a wide range of reasons. They may not have been introduced to the library habit as a child; they might find reading difficult or boring; the buildings and spaces are off putting or not culturally sensitive/attractive; they have had a bad experience; or it is too difficult to get there. The wifi-enabled mobile library would take a selection of books, magazines, digital devices, tech kits for loan along with staff to run programmes and introduce new users to the possibilities that libraries can provide. Funding for the vehicle, fit out, resources and staff to operate the service will be needed. Introducing a mobile library in the next 1-2 years will mitigate some of the issues caused by the lack of space in physical buildings and provide a way of bringing library services to areas that do not have access now. As noted by one of the community interviewees, the mobile library should not be seen as a substitute for the requirements for physical library buildings.

Establishing a mobile library was supported by 90% of people responding to the questionnaire as 'great' or 'good' to have. 89% thought it was great or good for it to bring books and deliver requests, 87% for it to run programmes and activities throughout the district and 77% for it to bring digital tools and equipment for use.

**Recommendation:**

6. As an urgent priority, introduce a mobile library service for the district to improve equity of access and provide opportunities to engage with non-library users in a way that meets their needs.
7. Use the budget set aside for RFID in the current LTP as part of the cost of the mobile library. RFID can be delayed and installed as part of the new libraries in Dargaville and Mangawhai.

**New and expanded services**

**Digital services**

The provision of digital tools and services for customer creativity, learning and experience are now core services in public libraries. While Dargaville Library has computers for public use of the internet it has not yet moved into the wider range of technical and digital



*“Adults need programmes too”*

- Interviewee

*“Local history is important – both Māori and European. The Library is the keeper of history. It needs a historical connection to the area”.*

- Interviewee



services. These include providing tech and craft kits for loan, making Virtual Reality (VR) experiences available, providing space and programmes that support 3D printers, laser cutters, sewing machines, or video making hardware and software. While the lack of space may limit some services in the short term, the lending of tech and craft kits can be introduced now as this service is not too space hungry.

New and larger Dargaville Library and Mangawhai libraries will need to incorporate activity spaces for a tech lab and programming spaces, and until that time the mobile library can provide opportunities for the whole district with a mobile tech lab that can be moved from the van into other spaces such as community halls, marae etc.

### **Programming**

Programming is a vital part of the learning and leisure environment in a modern public library. If users are to get the most out of the resources and digital tools available then providing opportunities for learning new skills and expanding knowledge and ideas, is essential. This might include: being introduced to new and different books; book launches and author visits; a wider range of children’s programmes to include older children; navigating the online environment or finding your way around a cell phone; learning to programme a robot or making a computer game; family and local history sessions and learning from local experts on a wide range of topics, are just some of the ideas.

Harnessing the knowledge and expertise in the community and partnering with others mean library staff do not have to deliver everything themselves. Offering programmes and events is an easy way to introduce new users to what the library can provide. Developing such a programme of work will require a strategic approach and planning to ensure that it fits within the wider context of local events and interests.

### **Local heritage/culture**

There are a number of museums in the district that are already collecting objects, photos and other digital heritage materials. In the longer term we recommend that Kaipara District provides a coordinating role to ensure that the digital collections of the district are accessible in a shared digital repository, using a software repository such as Recollect<sup>6</sup>. This is the same software used by Far North District and Whāngarei City.

An idea that came from the consultation was for the library to work with Iwi in telling the stories of the district in a physical way with story walks that highlight significant locations and events. This could also be done for the European historical stories as well.

### **Recommendations**

8. In the short term, develop and implement a service to lend tech and craft kits
9. Develop a mobile tech lab that can be taken to different locations in the district on the mobile library, including in Dargaville in a location other than the library.
10. Take a strategic approach to developing an annual suite of programmes and events. Until such time as there is appropriate space in Dargaville, the number of events is likely to be small and aligned with other significant events such as Matariki etc.
11. In the longer term consider implementing a digital heritage repository using the Recollect software.

### **Collections**

Collections continue to be the life blood of the library and as such need to be well selected and managed. Ideally, given that the Council provides funds to the community libraries to purchase books, the collection should be treated as a network wide resource. In the future this could mean centralised buying, collection management and weeding. However, in the

<sup>6</sup> <http://www.micrographics.co.nz/recollect/overview/>



medium terms it means that anyone in the district can access a book held in a community library and have it delivered to their 'home' library.

Given the lower spend per capita and the need to keep the collections renewed considerations should be given to reinstating and/or increasing the amount spent on the collections for Dargaville. Removal of rental charges would ensure equitable access to new stock. The process for charging for new fiction dates back to the 1940's and 50's which discriminated between what was thought 'good' for you to read and only 'serious' fiction was free.

#### Recommendations:

12. Consider treating the collections as one network wide resource to make better use of available budgets
13. Reinstating the budget available for collections for Dargaville to levels prior to Covid restrictions and ensure inflation adjustments in out years to ensure buying power is maintained.
14. Consider removing rental charges from selected new fiction

## Staffing

Over the past 18 months, Kaipara received funding for two additional staff through the New Zealand Library Partnership Programme funded by central government through the National Library of New Zealand. This staffing has made a significant difference to the library operation. However, it is in place only until June 2022.

As the benchmarking indicates, the staff numbers are comparatively low and if Kaipara District Libraries is to deliver a modern library service for the whole district, and not just Dargaville, this cannot be done within the existing complement. There is no capacity to plan, co-ordinate and deliver new services and programmes or plan for new facilities. The introduction of a mobile library would also require additional staff resources.



Credit: NZ Herald

When Mangawhai comes into the network as a professional service the District Libraries Manager will have a new direct report and it will be timely to look at the organisational structure to create a senior lead team and to share the staff management responsibilities.

Further work is needed to determine exactly which new roles are needed and whether these are full time or part time. They are likely to include: 1 to 1.5 FTE to operate the mobile service, 1 FTE to coordinate and develop programmes, 2.5 to 3 FTE to operate the Mangawhai library including 1 FTE as team leader, a further FTE for Dargaville, and possibly 0.5 FTE to act as coordinator for the community libraries. The additional staff will not all be needed at once but phased in as required. These numbers are intended as a guide only but are supplied to give some idea of the quantum of additional resources needed for the district over time.

#### Recommendations:

15. Identify and budget for key new roles to support the development and implementation of the strategy

## Working with Iwi

Given the large percentage of Māori living in the district, services need to be tailored to the way Māori learn and experience the world through a partnership approach. Initial discussions with Iwi representatives were constructive and we recommend that the Council and Library continue the korero to determine how Māori needs for learning, literacy and creativity can best be served by the library in partnership. A good approach might be to agree a pilot programme or initiative, focused on tamariki or rangitahi, to test out new ways of working together. Consideration might be given to providing funding for a pilot programme that would enable an iwi based person to work with library staff to deliver such a programme.

It is vital that local iwi are involved at the outset in the design of the Mangawhai and Dargaville libraries to ensure that they reflect Te Ao Māori concepts and designs.



Credit: Jason Oxenham

## Impact of potential changes to local government

The three local authorities in Te Tai Tokerau Northland already have open borders with no charges for out of district membership. The Far North is keen for greater collaboration, including considering a single library service for the whole area. Whāngarei will consider individual initiatives that benefit their users and rate payers. The funding per capita for Whāngarei is considerably greater and this presents an issue for them in collaborating more closely.

The Future of Local Government Review has the potential to change how existing local government services are funded and delivered. The challenge will be to take advantage of scale while retaining local ownership of assets and the passion and creativity of local people for their well-being of their communities. KDC has indicated its ongoing interest in collaborative approaches and at this stage will keep the dialogue open with the other local authorities. The Library Managers continue to meet and look for operational opportunities to work more closely together.

The full list of recommendations is attached as appendix 7.



## Section 3: the strategy – towards 2032

### Moving forward

The purpose of Kaipara District Libraries is to connect people with information, ideas, stories and experiences for learning, literacy, creativity and empowerment. The overall objective is to provide equitable, modern library services for the district that enables individual personal development, helps build strong communities and supports a sustainable and strong democratic way of life. We have identified three possible scenarios for the next ten year period, which identify different levels of service.



*“The strategy for servicing the district could be two libraries (Dargaville and Mangawhai) with a mobile library taking books, tech and programmes to the rest of the district.”*

- Mayor Dr Jason Smith (at elected member workshop)

*“Maungaturoto Library is too small for the growing community, and all the staff are still volunteers”*

- Questionnaire respondent

#### **Bronze scenario (not recommended)**

This scenario assumes that a new Mangawhai Library goes ahead, and the Council establishes a new mobile library service. It also assumes that it proves too difficult to form a Trust that can raise sufficient funds for a new Dargaville Library building within a ten year time frame, and it remains at its current location and size for the period of the strategy.

A full library service offering physical and digital collections, learning and programming activities and access to modern digital and other equipment would be available at Mangawhai and through the mobile library but Dargaville would continue operating at a reduced standard, with occasional programmes being offered at other nearby locations.

The remaining three community libraries would provide book collections with centralised monitoring; access to the internet, printing and scanning, and wifi. They would not provide programmes or other digital technologies.

#### **Silver scenario (recommended)**

This scenario assumes that new library buildings would be provided at Dargaville and Mangawhai and the Council establishes the mobile library. A full library service would be provided at both libraries and the mobile within a five to six year time frame.

The remaining three community libraries would provide book collections to an agreed and monitored standard, and access to the internet, wifi and printing and scanning. They would not provide programmes or other digital technologies. Hours of opening would be reviewed to provide sensible options for access at times that suited local needs.

#### **Gold scenario (recommended for further consideration after 5 years)**

This scenario assumes that new library buildings would be provided at Dargaville and Mangawhai and the Council establishes the mobile library. In addition by year 10, a full community library would be established in Maungaturoto to replace the community library, either in a refurbished existing building (if there is one of sufficient size) or a new purpose built facility. A full library services would be provided at all three libraries and the mobile.

Council would no longer provide grants or support to the remaining two community libraries.

Each scenario has been assessed against the following criteria:

- Access to a full library service including collections, programmes and events, digital and other technologies for use and experience, supported by staff with professional expertise.
- Fit-for-purpose physical library spaces for browsing, studying, activity, and meeting
- Access to a library providing a full service within a drive of no more than 20km from home
- Hours of opening that meet community needs



Assessment of options against the criteria is as follows:

Criteria	Bronze	Silver	Gold
1. Access to full service	Only partial – service remains inequitable	Yes	Yes
2. Fit-for-purpose space	Only partial – no improvement in Dargaville	Yes	Yes
3. Access within 20km drive from home	No – not even with mobile	Some - but there is 93 km between Dargaville and Mangawhai – mobile won't be able to cover all areas	Yes – with a library at Maungaturoto residents of Paparoa and Kaiwaka can access a library within a 20km radius. Mobile serves the remainder of the district
4. Hours of opening meet needs	Unchanged except for Mangawhai	Improved hours for all libraries proposed	Improved for Maungaturoto as well as for the silver scenario

The gold scenario provides the best long term provision of library services for the district. However, for fiscal reasons, its achievability may not be possible within the ten year timeframe. We have developed the strategy based on the silver scenario with the proviso that Council review progress after five years, when there may be greater clarity around the shape of local government and progress in achieving the major planks of the strategy.

In developing the strategy we have taken account of the following factors:

- Kaipara District Council's vision and high level goals for the district. We have aligned the library strategy to show that it supports the vision and goals.
- Kaipara District's demographics with a high percentage of Māori, particularly in the 0-24 years age range, and the growth in those over 65 years. The population is projected to increase 29% by 2051 to 32,552.
- The Council's obligations to honour the Treaty of Waitangi and to work in partnership with iwi to find ways and means of achieving positive outcomes for Māori in Kaipara.
- The ideas and aspirations of the community, staff and elected members heard through workshops, the questionnaire, and interviews
- The trends and new service developments happening in libraries both in New Zealand and internationally.

## The strategy

The Council's vision is '*Growing a better Kaipara: nurturing our people and place by inspiring a vibrant, healthy and caring community*'.

The library service contributes to this vision by broadening horizons, enriching lives and strengthening communities. The library connects people with information, ideas, stories and experiences for learning, literacy, creativity and empowerment. Through its collections and services it links the past, present and future and provides access to the digital world anywhere, anytime.

Our aspiration is that Kaipara District Libraries will provide an equitable, modern library service for the district to enable individual personal development, facilitate knowledge sharing, help build strong communities and support a sustainable and strong democratic way of life.

We want to be known for our innovative, responsive and 'make it happen' approach with easy to use services and great staff so that more people will connect with library services wherever they are: in-library, online or in the community. Our services will reflect and embrace Tikanga Māori.



Important principles lie at the heart of what we do:

- Freedom of information – the right of an individual to access knowledge and ideas within the law
- Equity of access – ensuring all have access to learning and knowledge regardless of their economic, cultural, educational or social circumstances
- Trust – in collections and content and in the values that underpin services
- Partnership – working in accordance with the provisions of the Treaty of Waitangi
- Collaboration – working our communities to deliver more

Council values shape our way of working:

- Mahi tahi - team work
- Mahia te mahi – make it happen
- Mana – integrity
- Pono – trustworthy
- Whakaute - respect

To realise this vision and purpose we have developed three strategic priorities with a set of goals. We would expect to review the goals at least once over the life of the strategy. The actions and initiatives to achieve the goals will be achieved over the ten year period – some in the first one to two years. Others will take the full ten years of the strategy. Again we would expect that as some of these actions are completed, new ones will arise that will make sure we continue to deliver value to the community.

## Strategic priorities

### Broadening horizons



*Libraries are non-commercial, safe spaces, where people can broaden their knowledge and experience – “simply the most important public amenity after basic sanitation” – Elected member workshop*

The rapid changes in technologies, society and our environment mean people need to adapt and learn new skills and grapple with new ideas.

Providing opportunities for people to experience new technologies, gain new skills, or become re-acquainted with older crafts and analogue technologies such as sewing gives people a taste of possible options – both for employment and leisure.

We are also in a time of information overload, where opinion and misinformation are disguised as fact and the ability to evaluate and discern information is crucial. A democratic society thrives on being able to understand another’s point of view and to come to consensus through the sharing of ideas and discussion.

#### Goals

- Foster learning and critical thinking
- Enhance access to the digital world, tools and content
- Create opportunities to learn and share new ideas, skills and innovation

#### Actions

- Develop and implement a service to lend tech and craft kits
- Take a strategic approach to developing an annual suite of programmes and events
- Utilise community expertise to deliver a wider range of programmes, including information and digital literacy programmes
- Ensure tech labs are provided in the mobile and new library builds
- Provide free access to the internet at all libraries

### Enriching lives



*“Aside from the sheer joy of exercising the imagination, research shows reading for pleasure improves literacy, social skills, health, and learning outcomes.”*

- National Library of New Zealand

*:You’re never alone when you are reading a book”*

- Susan Wiggs

Research<sup>7</sup> on reading for pleasure shows the benefits include improving literacy skills and learning outcomes leading to better health and well-being. Reading can open up new worlds and stimulate imagination and creativity. Stories help us understand the perspective from another’s point of view.

When we feel connected and our culture is acknowledged and celebrated, we are more likely to participate in civic life and democratic processes. Diversity of customs, and thought leads to a richer society.

However, not all are able to participate in society and libraries without additional support, or encouragement. We need to make sure that we remove barriers to access whether those are physical, cultural, social, emotional or economic to ensure everyone in the district has the opportunity for a richer life.

#### Goals

- Inspire reading for pleasure
- Connect to our history, culture and identity and celebrate diversity
- Offer a more diverse and relevant service

#### Actions

- Provide up-to-date, quality, trusted information and collections
- Make it easy for everyone to search, discover, use information and borrow items
- Work in collaboration with institutions collecting digital heritage materials that reflect Māori and European history
- Identify and work with target groups to improve access and use

<sup>7</sup> <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/research-evidence-on-reading-for-pleasure>

## Strengthening communities

*“The future of democratic societies rests not simply on shared values but on shared spaces” – Eric Klinenberg<sup>8</sup>*



*“Life today can be complex and libraries play an important role in helping individuals to feel part of a community. In the next few years, I believe that libraries will play a vital role to promote tolerance, respect and inclusion.”*

- Vicky McDonald, CE State Library of Queensland

Strong libraries help build strong communities. Libraries are one of the few non-commercial gathering places for individuals and groups to come together regardless of ethnicity, gender, socio economic status, education or belief. They provide quiet spaces for reflection and study, activity spaces for creativity and making things, and gathering places to meet and share kai. Libraries play an important role in helping individuals feel part of communities especially when the spaces are attractive and culturally appropriate. The new libraries in Dargaville and Mangawhai will be vital to place-making in these towns.

A mobile library will provide access to services for people who cannot visit or don't visit because they don't think libraries are for them. A mobile library can be an attractor and a way of interesting non-users in what the library offers.

Ideally, we want our communities to be part of shaping our services so that they have a sense of ownership. Online channels can provide ways of engagement and exchange of ideas for those not able to get to a library, or who prefer that medium.

### Goals

- Develop great community spaces at the heart of our main towns
- Ensure equity of access for the whole district
- Reach more people by offering choice and convenience in the way we connect
- Design and deliver services in partnership to be more inclusive

### Actions

- Introduce a mobile library that brings services and resources to the rest of the district using the budget in the LTP set aside for RFID, as seed funding
- Set up the library build programmes for Dargaville and Mangawhai as projects and develop the concepts and spatial design briefs
- Develop and promote our online platforms
- Clarify and agree standards and levels of service with community libraries

## Working for success

There are three key elements needed to successfully deliver our strategic priorities:

### Partnership with Iwi

Māori participation in decision-making processes is required by the Local Government Act 2002. We want to continue to build the relationship with iwi and hapu to ensure Te Ao Māori is reflected in our services and facilities. We will build our knowledge and practice of Tikanga, encourage the use of te reo and look for meaningful ways to involve iwi in the design of services, and new builds and environs. Possibilities for partnership include:

- Investigating a pilot programme for tamariki and rangitahi
- Involving Iwi at the outset in the development of the new libraries in Dargaville and Mangawhai
- Looking for ways to bring Māori stories and history alive in the community



<sup>8</sup> Klinenberg, Eric *Palaces for the People: how social infrastructure can help fight inequality, polarisation, and the decline of civic life*. New York, Crown, 2018.



*“The most important asset of any library goes home at night – the library staff”*

- Thomas Healy, President  
New York Public Library 1989-1992

### Customer and community engagement

We live in a networked world both physically and online. Involving customers, community groups, businesses and organisations in developing and delivering services, means needs are better met, greater empowerment, and more value delivered through shared resources and ideas and skills that complement our expertise. This will strengthen our impact and visibility in the community. Possibilities include:

- Seek and use customer feedback to improve services
- Identify one or two customer groups that require targeted services and involve them in the planning and development

### Skilled staff, sustainable business

We are committed to being a part of a ‘Trusted Council - An open organisation working for our community’. To be sustainable the libraries need planned and ongoing investment and wise use of resources.

Our library team is crucial to the success of the strategy. We need to have the skills, aptitude and capacity to respond quickly and easily to change and to deliver new digital and learning services. Actions include:

- Identify and budget for key new staff roles to support the development and implementation of the strategy over the ten year period
- Develop a ten year investment plan, including identifying new staff roles, to deliver the strategy
- Develop key performance indicators that demonstrate use and outcomes
- Be alert to new technologies and systems that improve operations

## Outcomes

The Council has developed six goals and desired outcomes for the district. The Library as a service of Council supports these goals through the resources and services it provides for citizens. The Council’s goals are:

Goal	Outcome
Climate smart	Climate change and its impacts are reduced through community planning
Healthy environment	Our natural environment is protected and open to the community
Celebrating diversity	our local heritage and culture are valued and reflected in the community
A Trusted Council	An open organisation working for our community
Prosperous economy	Development is encouraged, supported and sustainable
Vibrant communities	Kaipara communities offer an attractive place to live and visit

Strong libraries change lives. By providing information and resources for learning and enjoyment, programmes, and events to grow skills and knowledge, spaces where people can meet, learn, and create and connections with the past and future they support social, cultural, economic, and environmental well-being. As a result there is

Library outcomes	
Greater social cohesion and participation	Increased literacy
A more tolerant and inclusive society	Digital inclusion and personal cyber safety
Greater fairness and equity	More informed decision making
Empowered, vibrant, thriving communities	Stronger civic pride and trust

These outcomes contribute directly to the Council goals of *celebrating diversity* and *vibrant communities*. To a lesser extent they support a *prosperous economy* through the growth of skills, and *climate smart* and *healthy environment* by increasing knowledge about the importance of these issues. Library staff and the operations of the library contribute to achieving the goal of *a trusted council*.

## Implementation Plan

The following table outlines a potential order for the actions outlined in the strategic goals. There will be others as the strategy is embedded into the annual planning cycles for library and council.

### Year 1

- Introduce tech kits for loan
- Plan for a mobile library service that complements the physical libraries. Reallocate RFID funds to begin this process
- Revisit the funding model for Dargaville Library to ensure timely delivery of a new building
- Set up build programmes for Mangawhai and Dargaville as projects
- Develop spatial design briefs for Dargaville and Mangawhai Libraries
- Support the community library managers to modernise their collections
- Install an internet connected public access computer, scanner, and printer in community libraries

### Year 2

- Implement the mobile library service
- Reinstated the budget available for collections for Dargaville
- Make the case for removal of rental fees on fiction
- Develop a ten year investment plan, including identifying new staff roles, to deliver the strategy
- Investigate a pilot programme with iwi for tamariki and rangitahi
- Revise contracts with community libraries to take account of agreed standards and levels of service
- Engage architects to work on concept designs for community consultation

### Years 3-5

- Begin construction of new facilities
- Prepare for the delivery of new and extended services from the new buildings
- Engage new staff

### Years 6 -10

- Review and refresh strategy, goals and actions
- Investigate the need for a full library service at Maungaturoto (Gold scenario)

## Investment

To ensure that modern library services can be delivered, and adapt and change over time, investment will be required over the ten year period in the following areas:

- New library buildings that provide the platform for delivering modern library services and that contribute to place making, including capital for the development and increased operational funding for utilities.
- A mobile library to service the whole district.
- Increased resources budget for relevant content in all its formats and digital kits for lending.
- Additional staff – particularly for delivering programmes, the mobile library and for Mangawhai Library when the new library opens
- A budget amount to buy in expertise for specialist tasks such as spatial design briefs, project management, business cases (if required for annual and long term planning)
- On-going investment in staff training and development, technologies and promotion and marketing.

## Appendices

### Appendix 1: Kaipara District Libraries

Dargaville is the only professionally run library service. The four libraries at Paparua, Kaiwaka, Maungaturoto and Mangawhai are volunteer run. They receive support by way of grants for the purchase of books and a contribution towards running costs and rent if that is required. They are connected to the library management system (Kōtui) and use that for cataloguing and circulation of materials.

#### Population catchment



The map above shows the statistical areas for the Kaipara District. The 2018 census gave the population of each area as:

	Population	Library catchment
Kaipara Coastal	3,690	Dargaville
Mangarau	1,800	Dargaville
Dargaville	4,794	Dargaville
Ruawai-Matakoha	2,436	60% Dargaville; 40% Paparua
Otamatea (Kaipara District)	1,713	75% Maungaturoto; 25% Paparua
Maungaturoto	1,269	Maungaturoto
Kaiwaka	2,139	Kaiwaka
Mangawhai Rural	2,100	Mangawhai
Mangawhai Heads	1,995	Mangawhai
Mangawhai	936	Mangawhai
	22,872	

This assignment of catchment can only be approximate. It is acknowledged that some people will travel to Dargaville for shopping when they may live in Paparua; or people who live close to the border with Whāngarei may use the Whāngarei Library. However, it is sufficient for the purposes of understanding the general areas and population that each library could serve.

#### Population served and size of library

	Dargaville	Kaiwaka	Maungaturoto	Mangawhai	Paparoa	Total
Population	11,746	2,139	2,554	5,031	1,402	22,872
% of total	51%	9%	11%	22%	6%	100%
Size of library	266m2	162m2	54m2	78m2	100m2	660m2

Wherever the line is drawn on the catchment, it is clear that Dargaville Library is serving at least half the population of the District over a very wide area. This has an impact on the size of the space required. Mangawhai is growing rapidly and a new library is likely to draw people from Kaiwaka and Otamatea.

#### Standards and guidelines

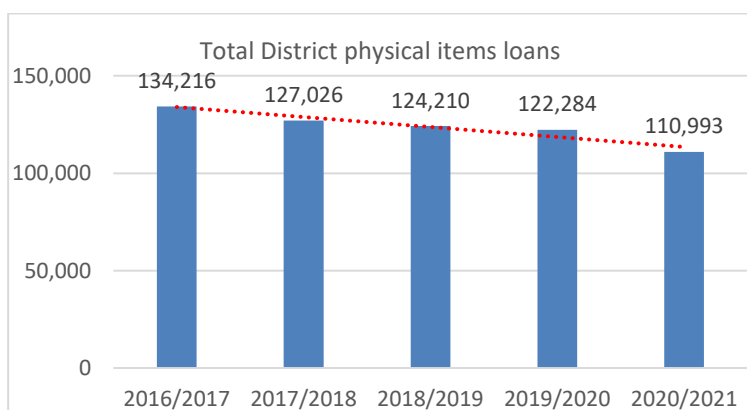
In order to assess how well Kaipara District Libraries is performing recognised standards and guidelines have been used. There are no current standards or guidelines for New Zealand public libraries, the last having been published in 2004<sup>9</sup>, and these are out of date. However, the Australian Library and Information Association (ALIA) recently published a new edition of their standards for Australian public libraries<sup>10</sup>. While these standards have NOT been adopted by LIANZA or PLNZ (Public Libraries New Zealand) and in some cases the 2004 standard was greater than the Australian standard, they are however, relevant to the New Zealand context in most cases. Where there is a New Zealand standard that is still relevant these have been included.

#### Collections and loans

Dargaville's collection currently has 24,000 items. 1930 are in off-site storage. 28% of the collection is free fiction and large print, 21% children's and YA and 29% non-fiction. Rental fiction, bestsellers, magazines, DVDs and heritage materials make up the remainder. The total physical stock of all the libraries and the loans from 2020-21 financial year are as follows:

	Items held	Loans 2020/21	Turnover
Dargaville	24,004	72,697	3.03
Kaiwaka	6145	5181	0.84
Mangawhai	11,785	22,823	1.94
Maungaturoto	6691	4173	0.62
Paparoa	6716	6119	0.91
	<b>55,341</b>	<b>110,993</b>	

Overall loans of physical items have been declining since 2016/17.

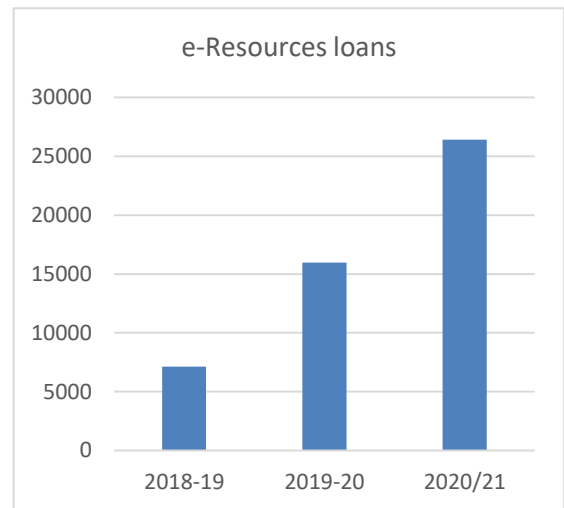
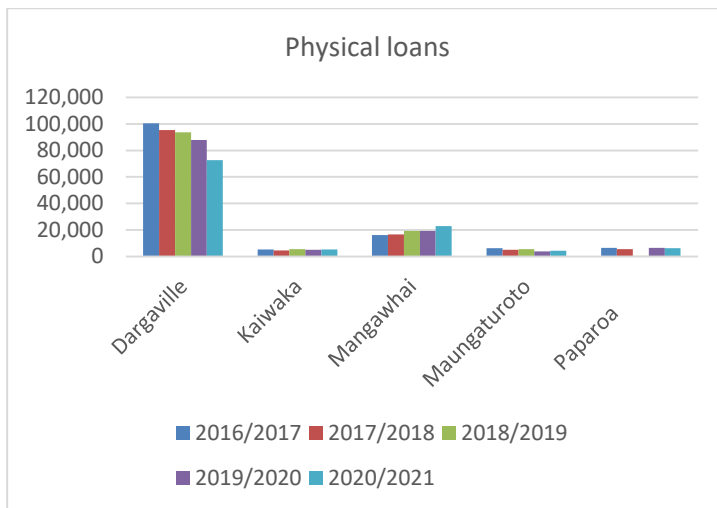


Dargaville in particular has been affected by closures from Covid19 in the early part of 2020 and in 2021. Mangawhai has been experiencing an upward trend over the past three years, Maungaturoto has declined and Paparoa and Kaiwaka have held steady.

<sup>9</sup> Standards for New Zealand Public Libraries. Wellington, LIANZA, 2004

<sup>10</sup> Standards and Guidelines for Australian Public Libraries. Australian Public Library Alliance and Australian Library and Information Association, December 2020. <https://www.plv.org.au/wp-content/uploads/2020/12/APLA-ALIA-Standards-and-Guidelines-2020.pdf>





The District’s eBook, eAudio and eMagazines have shown significant growth over the last three years.

## Turnover

Turnover is a measure of how hard the collection is working and is derived by dividing the number of loans by the number of items in the collection. It is also an indicator of whether there is ‘dross’ in the collection. A turnover of 3.0 or more is reasonable. A more detailed analysis of the turnover by main collections types (see Appendix 3) reveals that it is clearly the newer, more up-to-date materials that are wanted by users, even if they have to pay. Most of the new fiction, for example, goes into the rental collections and this is the collection that turns over the most in all the libraries. The fact that new material is charged for could result in some users not being able to read current popular material and they may well not use libraries as a result.

Free fiction turns over well in Dargaville, and has the most loans of all materials types. The turnover rate of 4.4 meets the recommended Australian standard<sup>11</sup>. Both Dargaville and Mangawhai Libraries have very good turnover of junior materials. The turnover of non-fiction in all the community libraries is very low, as is the turnover of free fiction in Maungaturoto, and this is where significant weeding of the collections is needed. This was borne out by a visual look at collections on our visits to the libraries. Mangawhai’s turnover in other areas is reasonable.

Experience has shown that when a library collection is overcrowded, with a large amount of dated stock, people cannot easily find something to read. A smaller, more up-to-date collection will increase circulation and lift the turnover rate immediately.

Currency of the collections is also important.

Age of collections	Under 5 Years	5 to 10 Years	11 to 20 Years	21 to 30 Years	31 Years & over
Dargaville	31.2%	22.8%	22.0%	7.9%	16.1%
Kaiwaka	19.5%	17.1%	24.8%	7.6%	31.0%
Mangawhai	20.3%	21.2%	31.5%	12.5%	14.5%
Maungaturoto	9.7%	15.8%	31.4%	17.8%	25.2%
Paparoa	10.1%	16.6%	31.6%	12.9%	28.8%

The amount of recent material (Under 5 years old) as a percentage of the total collection is lower than is desirable at just under a third for Dargaville. 54% of the collection is ten years and under. The Australian standard recommends 60% of the collection should be published in the last five years. The book vote for Dargaville was reduced during the anticipated financial constraints due to Covid but it does not appear to have been reinstated in out years in the LTP. Judicious weeding of the community library collections of stock that is dated and not been issued over the past 3-4 years will improve the overall percentage of stock under ten years.

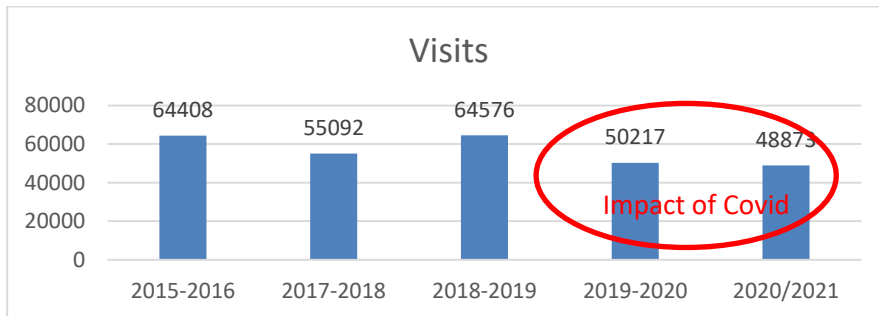
<sup>11</sup> Ibid.

## Members and visitors

The table below indicates the number of members listed on the database and those who have been active in the past two years. Given that three of the libraries have fewer than 300 active members it may be timely to look at their viability in the long term once Mangawhai has a new library.

	Total members	Active in last 2 years
Dargaville	4478	2549
Kaiwaka	508	289
Mangawhai	1834	941
Maungaturoto	464	211
Paparoa	399	259
	<b>7683</b>	<b>4249</b>

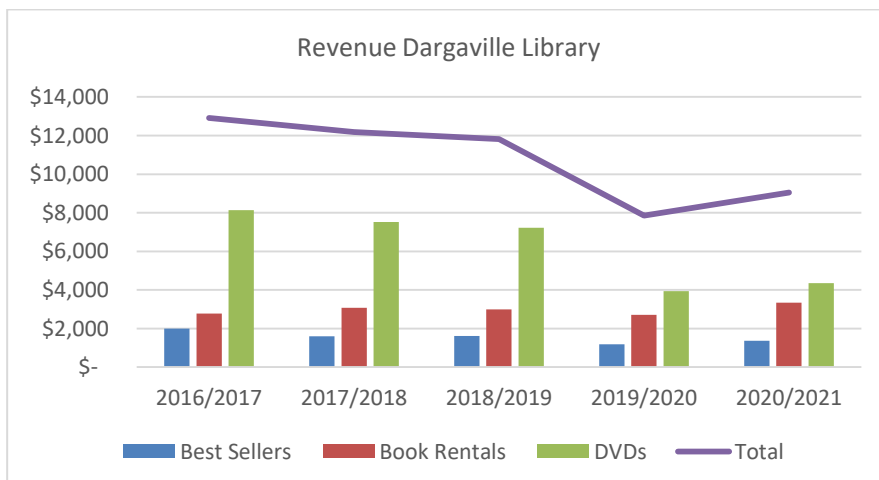
Membership of the libraries is required to borrow items, both physical and digital. However, people visit and use the library for other purposes such as using a computer, photocopying and scanning, and attending a programme or event. A membership card is not required for these. Only visits to Dargaville are recorded. The impact of Covid is evident over the past two years.



## Fees and charges

Dargaville Library does not charge fines except on Bestsellers, DVDs and rental fiction. All fines are capped at \$5.00 per item. The rental fiction collection is for new materials less than two years old. Currently the rental collection is 2% of the total collection.

Revenue from rentals has been trending down over the past five years and earlier. Revenue from DVDs has also declined significantly over the past two years, possibly because of streaming services. The library is the only source of DVDs in the town. Revenue from loans in the community libraries is retained by those libraries and is not accounted for in the financial statements for the Kaipara District Libraries.



## Budgets including grants

The following are the annual grants to the voluntary community libraries.

	Maungaturoto	Mangawhai	Kaiwaka	Paparoa	Totals
Books	4000	13000	4000	4000	25000
Books - Child	1000	1000	1000	1000	4000
Sub-total books	<b>5000</b>	<b>14000</b>	<b>5000</b>	<b>5000</b>	<b>29000</b>
Electricity	700	700	700	700	2800
Wifi	1800	1800	1800	1800	7200
Sundries	1000	1000	1000	1000	4000
Rent	6278			8371	14649
Insurance contribution	500	500	500	500	2000
Lease				1170	1170
<b>Total</b>	<b>15278</b>	<b>18000</b>	<b>9000</b>	<b>18541</b>	<b>60819</b>

The budget for Dargaville Library includes the grants made to the community libraries. An expenditure breakdown for the 2021/22 financial year is as follows:

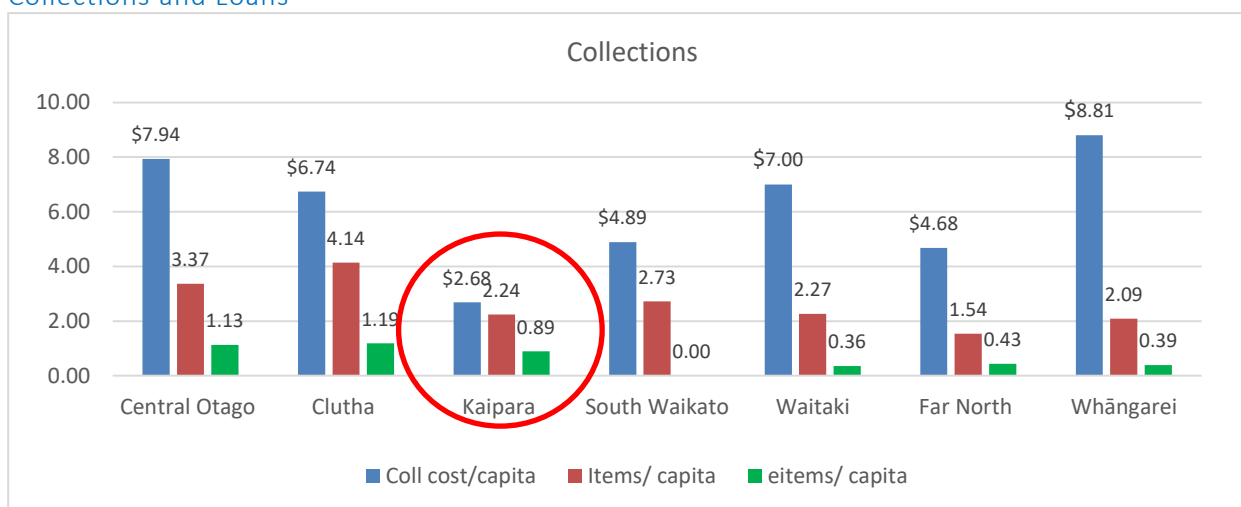
OPEX	CAPEX		
Staff costs	391,139	Collections budget	58,000
Grants	63,000		
Other costs	120,645		
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>574,784</b>		<b>58,000</b>
Internal charges	167,136		

## Appendix 2: Comparison with other districts

To understand where Kaipara District Libraries sits relative to other library services in similar sized local authorities we have used the data collected by Public Libraries New Zealand (PLNZ) for 2020-2021. Although Kaipara District has no exact comparator, we have chosen four rural districts that have a similar population and a similar number of small libraries. We have also made a comparison with Far North District Libraries and Whāngarei.

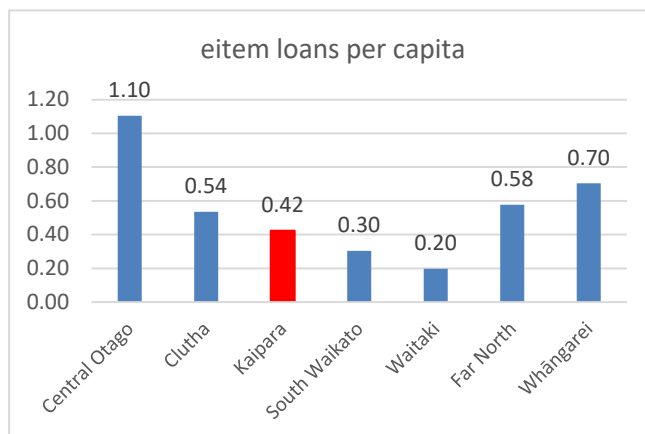
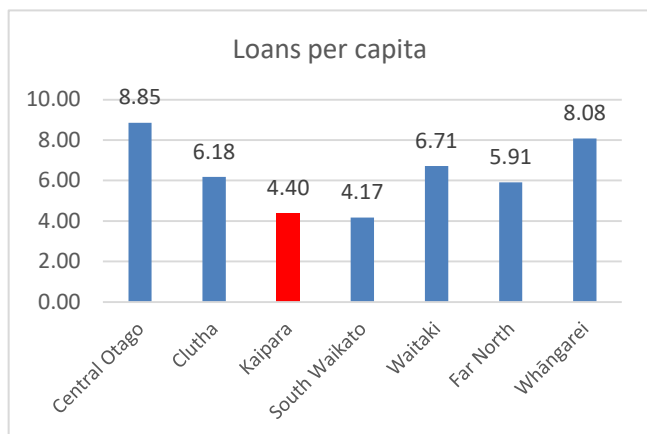
It was not feasible to do a full benchmarking exercise within this project, which would require a more in-depth analysis and a conversation with the other districts, however a look at some of the key performance indicators (KPIs) can give us an indication of how Kaipara compares. The full dataset is attached as Appendix 4 and these graphs have been drawn from that data.

### Collections and Loans



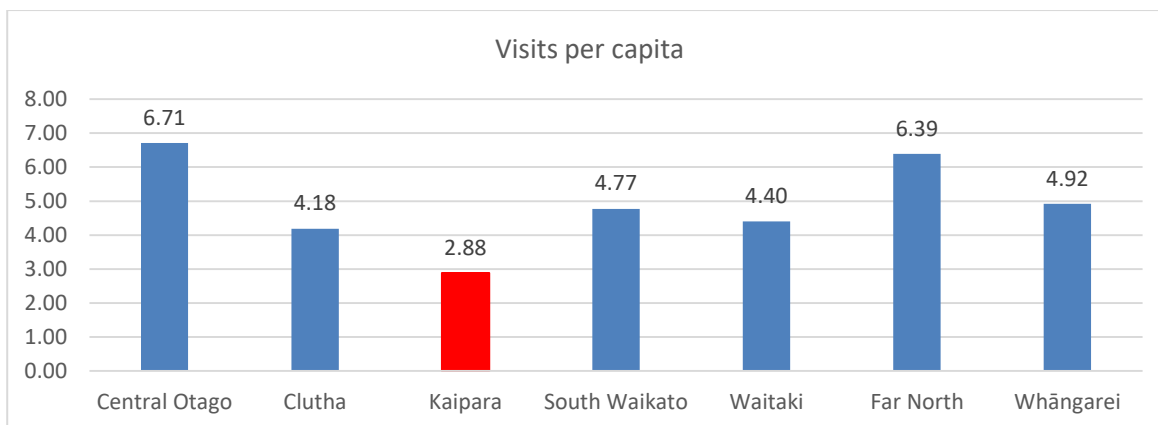
Points to note:

- Kaipara is spending considerably less on collections per capita than other districts.
- Items per capita appear reasonable, however they are inflated by the collection numbers of the community libraries which need weeding.
- E-items per capita are better than Far North and Whāngarei but loans per capita are lower and this is an area which could grow further.
- Kaipara has the second lowest loans per capita – the quality and quantity of collections and the lack of access for more remote parts of the district have an impact



### Visits and programmes

The number of visits per capita is the lowest of all seven districts.

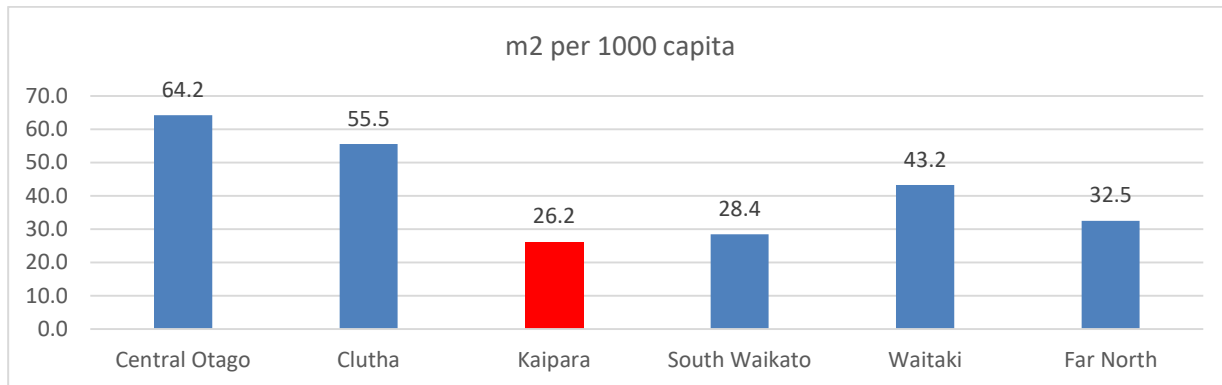


This figure is only for Dargaville Library as door counts are not collected for the other libraries. However, it is also an indicator that the size of Dargaville Library is not conducive to people visiting for purposes other than loans or to use computers. This is backed up by the data on the number of programmes able to be held in Dargaville Library compared with others. Dargaville is significantly lower.

Library Name	Events/ Programmes	Nos attending
Central Otago District	656	15,354
Kaipara District	10	548
South Waikato District	634	2,862
Waitaki District	443	7,594
Far North District	1,495	10,338
Whāngarei	210	7,070

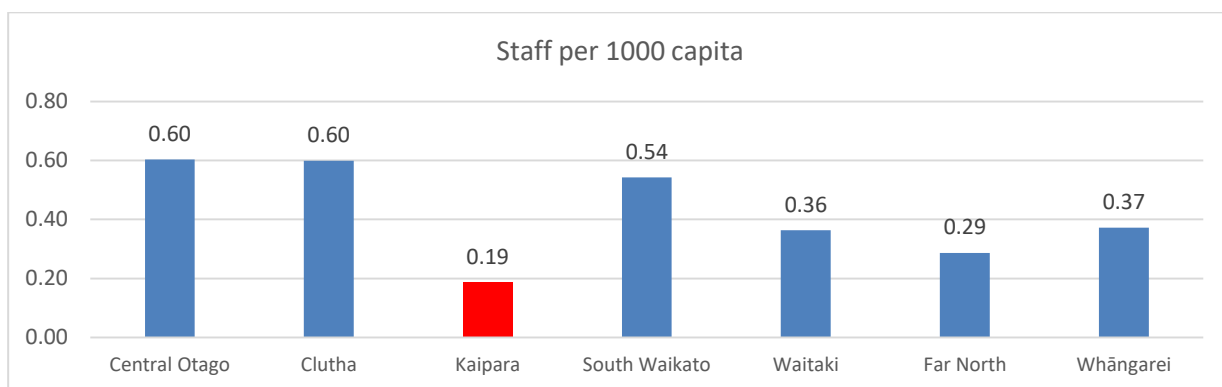
## Library space

The Council has committed to the need for a bigger library in Dargaville. The table below corroborates this need – and this figure includes the four small community libraries as well. According to the Australian guidelines *People Places*<sup>12</sup> a library serving a population of 11,500 needs a library of between 750m<sup>2</sup> and 1000m<sup>2</sup> depending on the number and size of meeting rooms, makerspace, café, etc. A sample of their service based calculator is attached as Appendix 5. The recommended NZ standard from 2004 is 70m<sup>2</sup> per 1000 capita which on the current catchment would mean a library of around 825m<sup>2</sup>. Community meeting space would be additional.



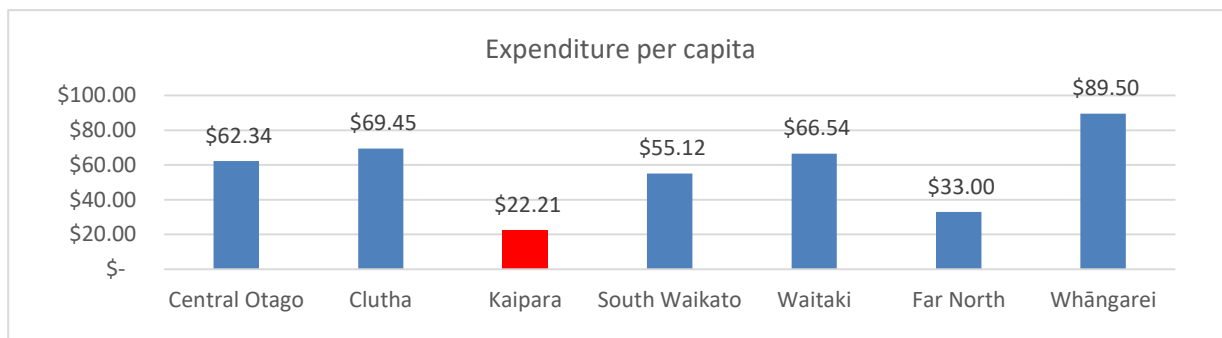
## Staffing

It is not surprising that Kaipara's staff numbers per 1000 capita is the lowest as there is only one library with paid professional staff. However, with only 4.7 FTE to cover opening hours, collection selection, acquisition and management, administration, staff development, planning and reporting and a small amount of programming there is little left for the development and support of new services, including more comprehensive programming, digital services and outreach into the wider community. The additional temporary funding from the New Zealand Libraries Partnership Programme (NZLPP) is not included in these figures as it expires in June 2022.



## Total expenditure

The table below includes all direct operating expenditure plus expenditure on collections. It does not include Council internal charges.



<sup>12</sup> People Places: a guide for planning public library buildings. State Library of New South Wales. <https://www.sl.nsw.gov.au/public-library-services/people-places>

Kaipara is expending \$22.21 per capita with the next lowest being the Far North with \$33 per capita. The third lowest is South Waikato at \$55.12. If Kaipara was to match the Far North, based on current population this would add around \$269,000 to the budget.

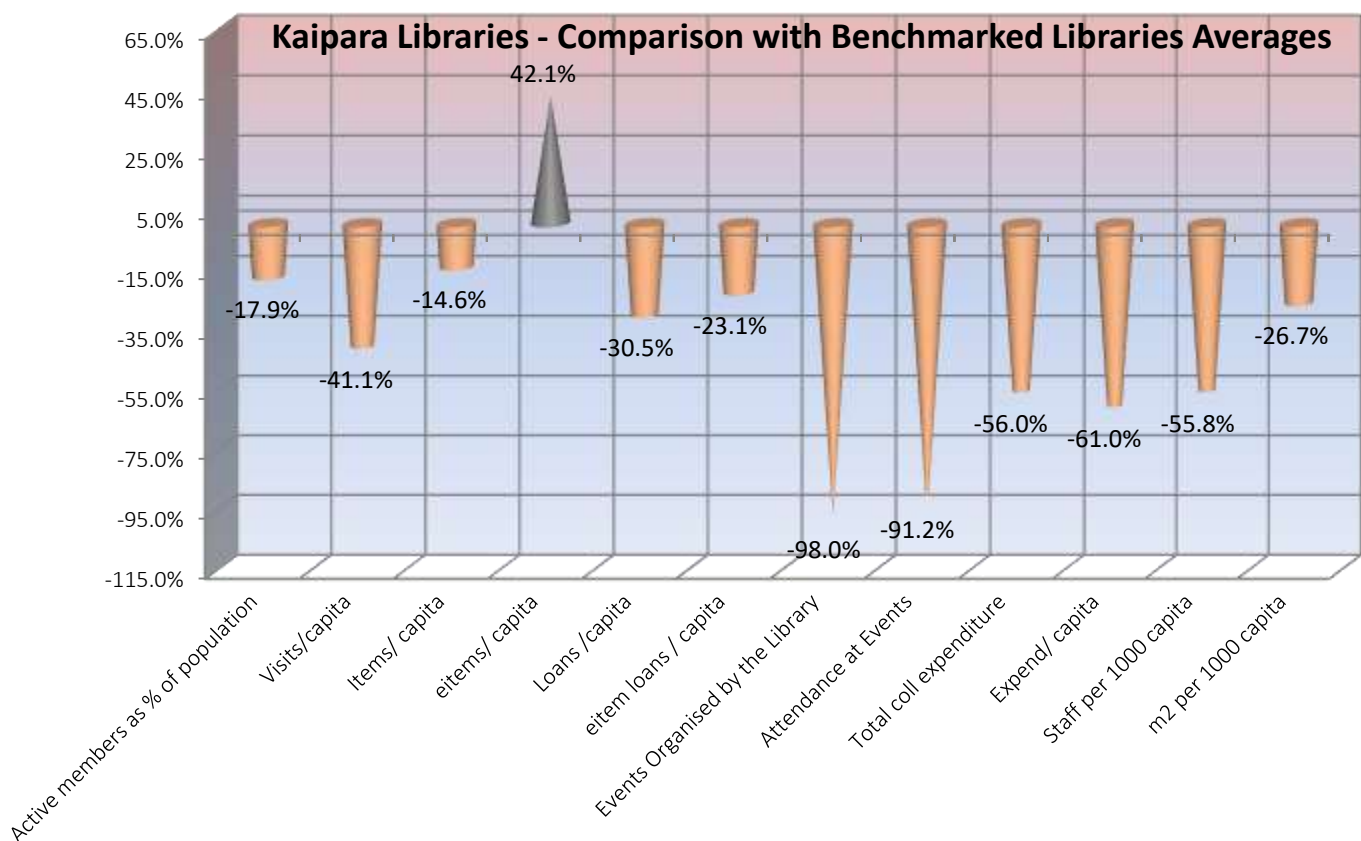
The following table shows Kaipara District Libraries compared to the Australian standard for expenditure and staffing numbers. The dollars amounts are in Australian currency and NZ\$ for Kaipara.

Standard	Service population	Median	Range	Kaipara
Library expenditure per capita	20,000 to 99,999	\$48	\$39 to \$62	\$22.21
		<b>Target</b>		
Total collection expenditure		\$4.50		\$2.68
		<b>Target</b>	<b>Enhanced</b>	
Number of staff per 3000 population	10,000 to 49,999	1.25	1.5	0.57*

\*NZ measures staff per 1000 capita. This is 0.19 multiplied by 3 for the purposes of comparison

If the staffing standard was applied to Kaipara District Libraries there would be a staff of between 10.5 and 12.6 FTE for the district based on the current population.

The graph below summarises the data reported with respect to the benchmarked libraries. It shows how Kaipara sits with respect to the mean (average) for each parameter. Apart from the number of e-items held, all measures



### Appendix 3: Turnover rates by collection type

Item Type	Dargaville			Kaiwaka			Mangawhai			Maungaturoto			Paparoa		
	No of items	No of issues	Turn over	No of items	No of issues	Turn over	No of items	No of issues	Turn over	No of items	No of issues	Turn over	No of items	No of issues	Turn over
Rental Fiction	418	3,484	8.3	299	972	3.3	827	4,461	5.4	304	1,067	3.5	146	484	3.3
Free Fiction	5,494	23,904	4.4	2,322	2,504	1.1	4,772	7,736	1.6	4,320	2,295	0.5	3,079	3,097	1.0
Non-fiction	7,353	13,228	1.8	1,381	728	0.5	2,413	1,224	0.5	1,116	447	0.4	1,355	677	0.5
Large Print	1,888	4,885	2.6	727	215	0.3	451	635	1.4	550	362	0.7	370	328	0.9
Junior Board Books	134	595	4.4				48	338	7.0	6	6	1.0	15	22	1.5
Junior fiction	1,572	4,695	3.0	388	373	1.0	307	877	2.9	568	336	0.6	926	901	1.0
Junior Graphic Novels	406	2,650	6.5				80	438	5.5	6	9	1.5	33	89	2.7
Junior Non-fiction	854	2,322	2.7	86	28	0.3	152	455	3.0	107	30	0.3	161	182	1.1
Junior picture books	1,264	6,171	4.9	250	301	1.2	976	3,537	3.6	355	327	0.9	271	376	1.4

## Appendix 4: Public library comparative data

Four districts were chosen to compare with Kaipara District. Not all district libraries have provided data for each category. Three have similar sized populations: Central Otago, South Waikato and Waitaki. Clutha District, while serving a smaller population, has similarities in that its libraries are in small towns and there is a city (Dunedin) close by. All of the districts have more than one library with professional paid staff, unlike Kaipara. While no district has exactly the same characteristics the spread of libraries provides a reasonable means of comparison. Far North and Whāngarei are provided as the adjacent local authorities although both districts serve considerably larger populations and Whāngarei has a mid-size city within its district. Tables 1 and 2 provide the raw data. Table 3 has a range of KPIs which make comparison possible.

**Table 1**

Library Name	Population	Active Members	Physical loans	e-item loans	Visits (physical)	Visits (virtual)	Events/ Programs	Nos attending	Collections (physical)	Collections (electronic)	No of Libraries	Space m2	Opening Hours
Central Otago District	21,558	5,702	190,790	23,787	144,677	71,750	656	15,354	72,673	24,324	7	1,385	185
Clutha District	18,350	3,711	113,315	9,828	76,774	34,991	0	0	75,970	21,808	5	1,019	203
<b>Kaipara District</b>	<b>25,200</b>	<b>4,160</b>	<b>110,784</b>	<b>10,645</b>	<b>72,656</b>	<b>25,175</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>548</b>	<b>56,515</b>	<b>22,451</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>660</b>	<b>102</b>
South Waikato District	23,800	3,138	99,244	7,245	113,567	22,474	634	2,862	64,860	0	3	677	149.5
Waitaki District	23,500	5,395	157,722	4,648	103,499	31,114	443	7,594	53,314	8,369	6	1,016	112
Far North District	68,500	11,354	404,522	39,569	437,494	769,017	1,495	10,338	105,770	29,748	6	2,224	259.5
Whangarei	86,000	21,388	694,737	60,502	422,710	208,048	210	7,070	180,162	33,677	5	0	169

**Table 2**

Library Name	Staff FTE	Staff costs	Collection Costs	e-Item costs	e-resources costs	Other OPEX	Total Expenditure	Total Revenue
Central Otago District	13	593,556	163,926	7,161	3,330	576,052	1,344,025	29,077
Clutha District	11	711,923	116,429	7,238		438,867	1,274,457	61,071
<b>Kaipara District</b>	<b>4.7</b>	<b>340,879</b>	<b>59,650</b>	<b>8,000</b>	<b>700<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>150,471</b>	<b>559,700</b>	<b>17,842</b>
South Waikato District	12.92	537,581	113,496	3,000	0	657,752	1,311,829	89,332
Waitaki District	8.55	643,101	151,391	13,000	0	756,163	1,563,655	202,970
Far North District	19.65	1,385,566	272,285	48,336	28,213	526,381	2,260,781	133,298
Whāngarei	32	1,904,996	676,202	81,081	70,607	4,963,939	7,696,825	159,753

Note 1: Only \$700 was required to be paid in this financial year because the other databases normally paid for were covered by the NZLPP fund. When this funding finishes there will be an ongoing need to fund these purchases.



Table 3

	Active members as % of population	Loans/capita	e-item loans/capita	Items/capita	e-items/capita	Turnover Physical collections	Visits/capita	m2 per/1000 capita	Total \$\$/capita	Collection \$\$/capita	e-items \$\$/capita	Total Collection \$\$/capita	Staff per 3000 capita
Central Otago	26%	8.85	1.10	3.37	1.13	2.63	6.71	64.2	62.34	7.60	0.33	7.94	1.81
Clutha	20%	6.18	0.54	4.14	1.19	1.49	4.18	55.5	69.45	6.34	0.39	6.74	1.80
Kaipara	17%	4.40	0.42	2.24	0.89	1.96	2.88	26.2	22.21	2.37	0.32	2.68	0.56
South Waikato	13%	4.17	0.30	2.73	0.00	1.53	4.77	28.4	55.12	4.77	0.13	4.89	1.63
Waitaki	23%	6.71	0.20	2.27	0.36	2.96	4.40	43.2	66.54	6.44	0.55	7.00	1.09
Far North	17%	5.91	0.58	1.54	0.43	3.82	6.39	32.5	33.00	3.97	0.71	4.68	0.86
Whāngarei	25%	8.08	0.70	2.09	0.39	3.86	4.92	0.0	89.50	7.86	0.94	8.81	1.12

### Appendix 5: People Places service calculator

## Service Based Calculator

<b>Catchment Population</b>	11,500
<b>Collection Size</b>	24,000
<b>% Books</b>	90%
<b>% Periodicals</b>	3%
<b>% Non-Print</b>	7%
<b>% Virtual &amp; Digital</b>	

Base Area	% of Collection	No. of items	% out on loan	Adjusted no. of items	Items per sqm	Floor Area
<b>Collection size</b>	100%	24,000				
Books & vols on shelves	90%	21,600	30%	15120	70	216
Periodicals	3%	720	30%	504	10	50
Non-print material	7%	1,680	30%	1176	100	12

Virtual & digital	0%	0	30%	0	0	0
<b>Collection floor area</b>						278 sqm
<b>Area for library computers &amp; personal devices</b>						
			<b>No. of items</b>	<b>Sqm per item</b>	<b>Floor area</b>	
Catchment population			11,500			
Recommended public computers			5	5	25	
Additional public computers				5	0	
Personal devices (desk space)				5	0	
Personal devices (lounge space)				3	0	
Self check units				3	0	
<b>Computers, tablets &amp; other devices floor area</b>						25 sqm

**Total base area** 303 sqm

<b>Reading, seating &amp; study areas</b>		<b>Recommended seats</b>		<b>Desired seats</b>	
Seating based on population		79.5		50	
	<b>Percentage of total</b>	<b>Recommended values</b>		<b>Desired floor area</b>	
		<b>Sqm per item</b>	<b>Floor Area</b>		
seating as desks	20%	5	50 sqm	50	sqm
seating as lounges	55%	3	83 sqm	83	sqm
seating as group study	25%	1.8	23 sqm	23	sqm
	100%			155	sqm

**Total reading, seating & study areas** 155 sqm

<b>Other functional &amp; service areas</b>		<b>Recommended floor area</b>		<b>Desired floor area</b>	
Service desk		15 sqm		15 sqm	

Returns	15 sqm	15 sqm
Quick picks, display & information	21 sqm	21 sqm
Newspaper & magazine area	15 sqm	15 sqm
<b>Children/youth Areas</b>		
Children's story telling	21 sqm	21 sqm
Toy library	0 sqm	0 sqm
Young adult area	21 sqm	21 sqm
Games area/digital media space	21 sqm	21 sqm
<b>Specialist</b>		
Specialist genre collection	21 sqm	sqm
Local & family history room	21 sqm	21 sqm
Storage for archive/conservation	15 sqm	sqm
IT training room	21 sqm	sqm
<b>Staff</b>		
Staff work, lunch, lockers	30 sqm	30 sqm
Work area storage	15 sqm	15 sqm
Mobile library services area	0 sqm	50 sqm
Central & regional work area	0 sqm	sqm
<b>Amenities and ancillary</b>		
Foyer, lobby, corridors etc	21 sqm	21 sqm
Toilets/restrooms, cleaners	15 sqm	15 sqm
Plant, equipment, maintenance	21 sqm	21 sqm
Server room	15 sqm	15 sqm
Photocopiers, digital equipment	15 sqm	15 sqm
Loading dock, garbage & store	21 sqm	21 sqm
Stack area	0 sqm	0 sqm

**Additional services (optional)**

Café	9 sqm	9	sqm
Community services	0 sqm	0	sqm
Exhibition space	6 sqm	6	sqm
Community kitchen	0 sqm	0	sqm

---

**Total other functional & service areas** **356 sqm**

---

**Meeting Spaces (optional)**

	No. of rooms	No. of people	Area/Person
Meeting room & storage	1	50	1.5
Small meeting rooms			2
mid size meeting rooms	1	12	2
Makerspaces & associated storage	1	25	3
Multipurpose or training room			2

	Recommended floor area	Desired floor area
Meeting room & storage	75 sqm	75 sqm
Small meeting rooms	0 sqm	0 sqm
Small meeting rooms	24 sqm	24 sqm
Makerspaces & associated storage	75 sqm	75 sqm
Multipurpose or training room	0 sqm	0 sqm

---

**Total meeting spaces** **174 sqm**

---



---

**Total Gross Floor Area** **988 sqm**

---

## Appendix 6: Consultation with stakeholders

A workshop with library and selected Council staff was held on 3 August 2021 and one with elected members on 4 August 2021. Covid 19 restrictions meant further face to face meetings were cancelled. Two Zoom meetings were held with Iwi. The first was with Snow Tane, Te Roroa on 12 October and the second on 19 October with Fiona Kemp, Katarina Tautuhi and Jane Raymond-Paieka, Te Uri o Hau. Five people who answered the online questionnaire (see Appendix 7) were also interviewed. The following is a summary of the key themes and ideas from those workshops and conversations.

### Library and Council staff workshop

This workshop identified five main themes which could influence the library strategy:

- **Accessibility** including geographic distance for many, lack of public transport, facilities too small, lack of awareness of services and limited offers for young people
- **Demographic** including the aging population, increasing Māori population, lack of jobs for young people who leave for education and work, different demographics between East and West
- **Socioeconomic** including housing shortage, small rating base, dispersed population and lower incomes
- **Sustainability** including climate change, food security, changing nature of local government, small rate base and limited numbers participating in community life
- **Learning/literacy** including low educational achievement, low engagement, disinformation, and a lack of availability of digital information.

Key ideas for development included:

- Much larger space, community learning and digital hub(s), co-location with related services (e.g. CAB), or other Council services, possibly 24 hour access or longer opening hours, with meeting and other activity spaces, places to work and study away from home, culturally designed buildings/spaces
- Delivering services out in the community – mobile services reaching isolated communities, marae visits, Pop-up events (linked with existing events)
- Provide more programmes and learning activities to build community capacity and creativity – book clubs, digital learning clubs, access to technology and help to use it, devices for loan, author evenings, job clubs, careers and budgeting advice (using outside experts), after school and holiday programmes, gathering our oral heritage, great links with tertiary providers
- Connected communities: opportunities to socialise across cultures and generations, link youth with aged, e.g. help with digital tech, learning old crafts such as sewing, build community spirit
- Better promotion – tell stories of why people value the services, advertising campaign
- Greater understanding community/customer need, don't assume - survey, research
- Remove barriers to use – fees and fines

### Elected Member workshop

This identified many of the same ideas as above. Additional ideas and concepts included:

- The Library as destination, a social hub, with cafe, spaces for study, working, access to printers, and multifunctional spaces for meeting, events, programmes and activities, with appropriate spaces for both quiet and noisy activities
- Sustainable architecture that reflects the vernacular of our area, e.g. Waiheke Library as example
- Support for a mobile / pop-up library travelling round small communities, at markets, schools, activating town and village spaces
- Need pathway for updated technology and digital tools so people can learn into the future, tech gadget library, suite of free Ipads etc
- Improved online catalogue with curated content and links to films, TV – “constructive rabbit holes”; bilingual website
- Libraries sheltered from political views that would undermine or under value them
- Civics education courses about Local Government
- The value of libraries as non commercial, safe spaces, where people can broaden their knowledge and experience – “simply the most important public amenity after basic sanitation”
- Many ideas for programming and activities including celebrating local authors, volunteers reading to seniors, juniors and others, podcasts (listening, making own), linking with cinemas and theatres, digital learning courses
- Support for different groups such as political refugees, adult literacy, home school
- The Mayor identified the strategy for servicing the district could be two libraries (Dargaville and Mangawhai) with a mobile library taking books, tech and programmes to the rest of the district. Others recognised the importance of the digital channel as well.

## Engagement with Iwi

This was designed to

- Begin the korero
- Find out whether they wished to be involved and how
- If there are ways that libraries can progress iwi aspirations
- Seek their guidance on how to proceed with iwi engagement from this point both for the strategy development and for the longer term

The purpose was to also understand what if any resourcing might be needed by Kaipara to make ongoing engagement possible.

Both Iwi identified their desire to continue involvement, however their capacity is very limited. The following ideas were suggested by either one or both Iwi as ways that the library could meet the needs of Iwi, hapū and, in particular their tamariki, rangitahi and kaumatua.

- Māori people are visual and oral people and this needs to be taken into account when devising programmes and providing resources
- Mangawhai is developing rapidly. There is an opportunity to engage all people with the local history of tangata whenua to help them connect to the place
- Celebrate Matariki as it is a special time for Te Ao Māori – how about a night journey, with storytelling, a night walk and a hangi – appreciating the night sky
- The library experience will need to change – it needs to be more hands on and incorporate the outside world. Science and the environment are good ways to engage with young Māori – perhaps loans of kits e.g. microscopes, water testing kits
- Digital technologies both in library and for loan – need to have an explanation on how to use them if taking away
- Books are still the way to grow literacy, New Zealand non fiction, books in te Reo are all good
- The library experience needs to find a balance of both worlds – Te Ao Māori and European traditions

## Kaipara Libraries Community Interviews

In the responses to the online questionnaire looking at future services for Kaipara Libraries, 55 people indicated a willingness to talk further. Ten such respondents were selected from this group (with 2 held in reserve) for further discussion via telephone or video conference. Unfortunately only 5 of the 12 responded to the invitation but the quality of the discussion made this a very worthwhile exercise.

The purpose of these interviews was twofold:

- To corroborate to some extent the overall views that had been expressed in the questionnaire responses.
- To allow those interviewed to advance further ideas and thinking.

While not all of the interviewees used libraries and only two used Kaipara Libraries exclusively, all were passionate about the importance of libraries for community and individual growth, and all had obviously thought about what they wanted to say.

**Common themes** mentioned by all were:

- The need to provide programmes, especially for children. Most added that adults need programmes too. Getting kids involved might provide a pathway to get adults involved.
- There was general acknowledgement that lack of space was an issue that staff are having to work around. Space in Dargaville is “uncomfortable” and not friendly to wheelchairs or prams. It was acknowledged that library staff are doing the best they can within this constraint.
- All acknowledged the importance of both digital and physical resources.
- All stated in some way that access to resources, to activities, to learning, to space and to staff is the single most important requirement for a library. Library provides a pathway to knowledge and to equalised access.
- There was general support for mobile services, although one interviewee stated that they should not be established at the expense of fixed library developments.

There were a range of other comments around three themes:

**Status of Library** – There is an urgent need to:

- Make the library relevant by providing a more modern type of service
- Library is one community space which is safe and secure and for everyone.
- Make the library more like a hub – meeting facilities, programmes etc
- Provide a balance between digital and “old school”

- Provide access to reading, Internet and knowledge.

#### Access

- Have all libraries open all the times you would expect it to be.
- Older people who can't necessarily get into library – can the library use tools like Kahoot quizzing to get to them.
- Potential for mobile services to fill gap round missing elements but doesn't replace the need and urgency to provide better fixed libraries. Be good to get the mobile out to places like Donnelly's Crossing.

#### Services

- More emphasis on resources to help people access library.
- Improved access to Internet (all locations)
- Need printing and scanning at every library.
- Support move to digital content but need digital literacy support alongside it (Could collaborate to provide).
- Local history is important – both Māori and European. Library is the keeper of history. It needs a historical connection to the area.

“In thinking about new libraries can we think beyond just libraries? Can we connect people's other needs and aspirations by providing facilities in close proximity?”

“Because of the socio-economic status of much of the district, there is even more need in Kaipara than in most places for the library to provide access to things that wouldn't otherwise be available to people. We shouldn't focus Council money on the loudest voices or just in one area”.

#### Online questionnaire – brief summary

The Kaipara Library Questionnaire was conducted using Survey Monkey between 12 and 27 November 2021. In all 145 people responded. Not all respondents answered all questions. Please note that all percentages are with respect to the number of people who answered the question being analysed.

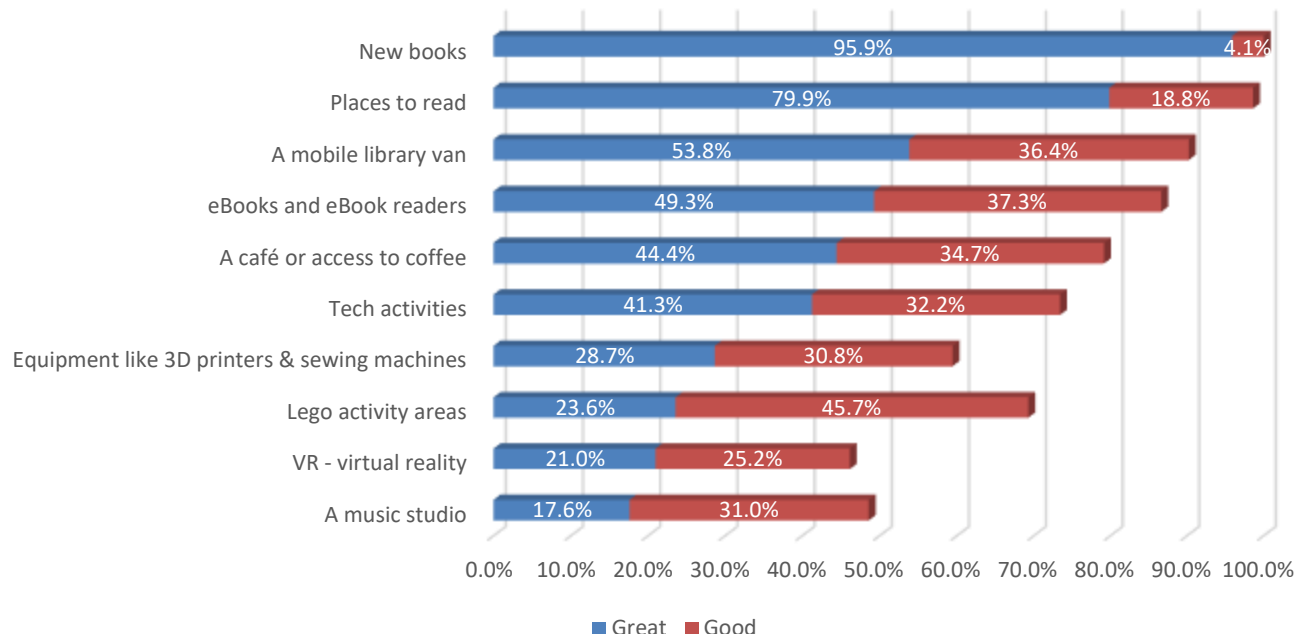
#### Images detailing offerings

*A set of images were presented, and respondents invited to categorise them as great, good or something they wouldn't like in libraries.*

Images detailing offerings	Great to have	Good to have	I don't like this	Number answering
New books	139	6	0	145
Places to read	115	27	2	144
A mobile library van	77	52	14	143
eBooks and eBook readers	70	53	19	142
A café or access to coffee	64	50	30	144
Tech activities	59	46	38	143
Equipment like 3D printers & sewing machines	41	44	58	143
Lego activity areas	33	64	43	140
VR - virtual reality	30	36	77	143
A music studio	25	44	73	142

The graph below details the proportion of responses which were categorised great or good – in other words were favoured by those who answered.

## Great or Good Responses to Images Detailing Offerings



All images were rated great or good by the majority of respondents except for favoured by the majority, except for VR and music studio.

### Statements detailing offerings

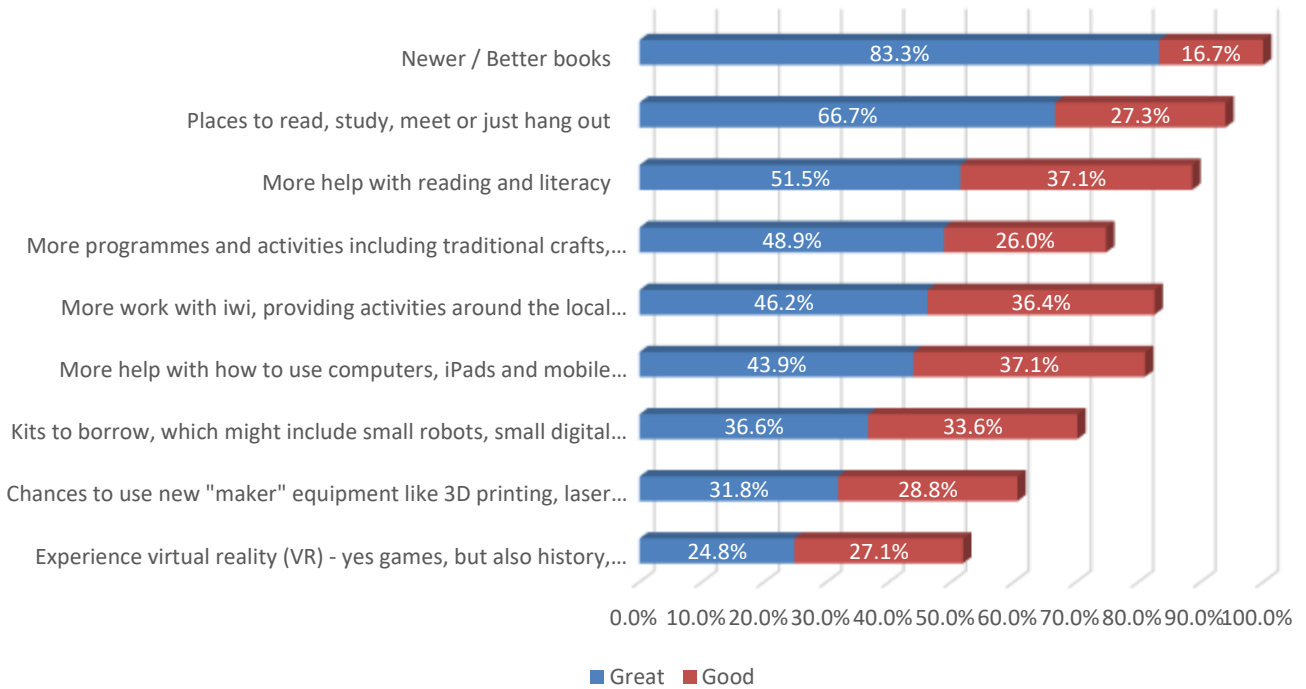
A set of statements were presented, and respondents invited to rate them as Great, Good, Not Good or as I don't know.

How good would it be for Kaipara libraries to have the following?	Great	Good	Not Good	Don't Know	Number Answering
Newer / Better books	110	22	0	0	132
Places to read, study, meet or just hang out	88	36	4	4	132
More help with reading and literacy	68	49	1	14	132
More programmes and activities including traditional crafts, te reo, use of digital equipment, music, reader activities and more	64	34	20	13	131
More work with iwi, providing activities around the local environment and history of the area	61	48	4	19	132
More help with how to use computers, iPads and mobile phones	58	49	8	17	132
Kits to borrow, which might include small robots, small digital drum sets, digital microscopes, water testing kits and more	48	44	31	8	131
Chances to use new "maker" equipment like 3D printing, laser and vinyl cutter and sewing machines	42	38	33	19	132
Experience virtual reality (VR) - yes games, but also history, simulated job interviews, travel, the natural environment and more	33	36	43	21	133

The graph below details the proportion of responses which were categorised great or good – in other words were favoured by those who answered.



## Great or Good Responses to Statements Detailing Offerings



This time, all ideas were favoured by the majority, although VR support was marginal.

### Mobile Library Service

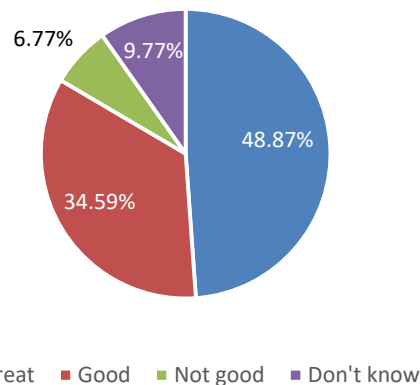
The questionnaire asked how good would it be to have a "library-on -the -go" (mobile library) in the Kaipara District?

Great	65
Good	46
Not good	9
Don't know	13

**Total answers: 133**

The responses show that a significant majority support the establishment of this service.

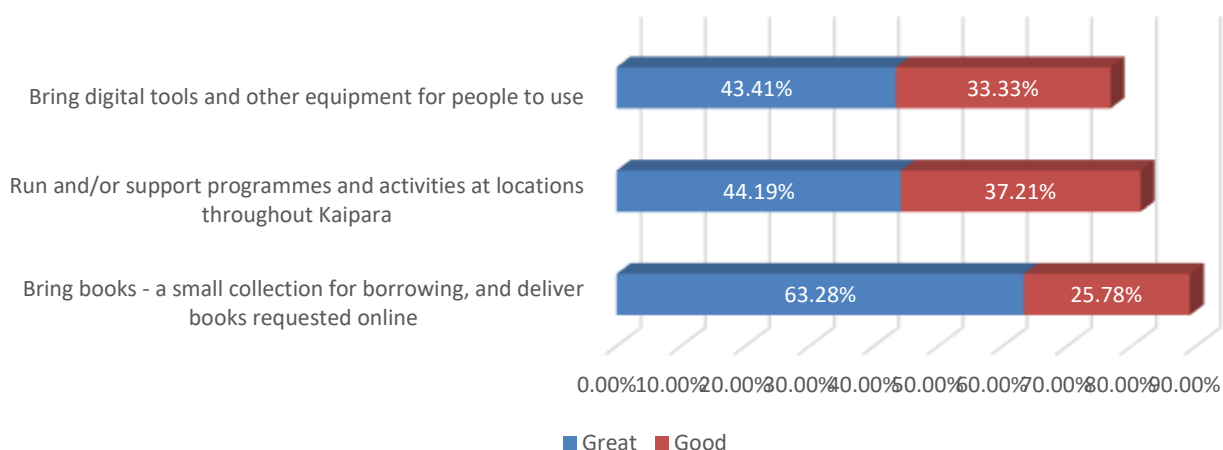
### How good would it be to have a "library-on -the -go" (mobile library) in the Kaipara District?



The questionnaire then asked: if the Kaipara District had a "library-on-the-go" how good would it be for it to do the following

	Great	Good	Not Good	Don't Know	Total
Bring books - a small collection for borrowing, and deliver books requested online	81	33	3	11	128
Run and/or support programmes and activities at locations throughout Kaipara	57	48	8	16	129
Bring digital tools and other equipment for people to use	56	43	18	12	129

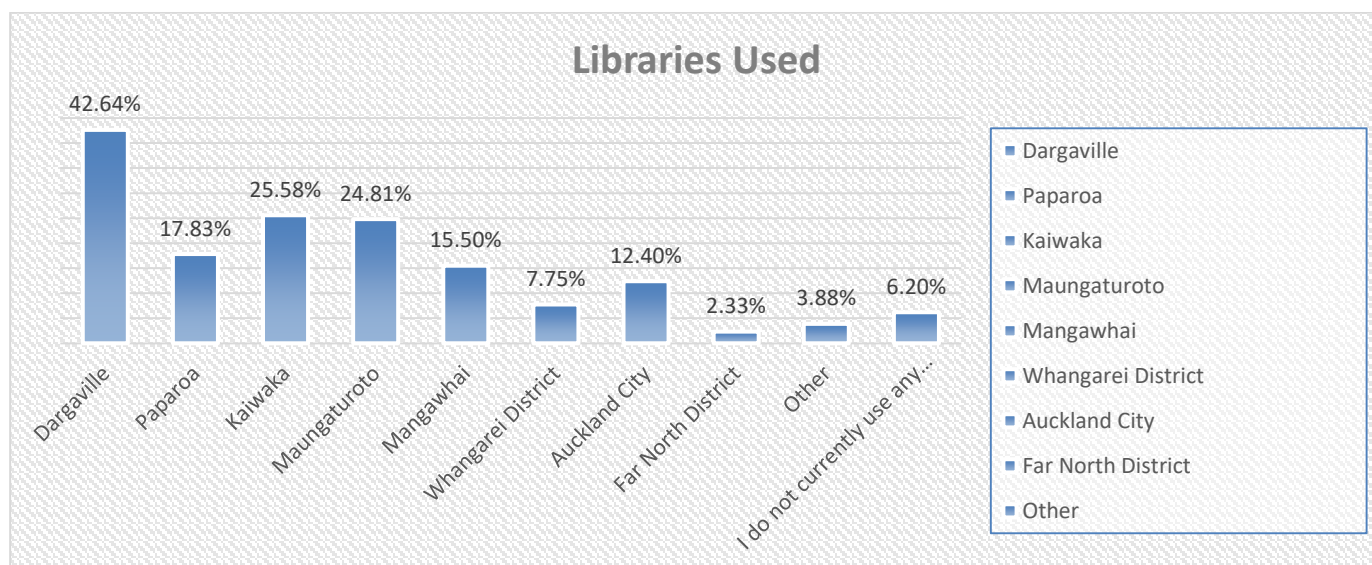
## Great or Good Responses to Mobile Offerings



All possible activities mentioned were strongly supported.

### Library Use

Respondents were asked which Libraries they use? They could select more than one library. The graph below shows the result.



### Place of Residence

Respondents were asked where they live. The results are shown below.

Where do you live in the Kaipara District?	Percentage	Number
Baylys Beach	0.78%	1
Dargaville	15.63%	20
Donnellys Crossing/Aranga	1.56%	2
Glinks Gully	0.00%	0
Hakaru	2.34%	3
Kaihu	0.78%	1
Kaiwaka	14.84%	19
Kellys Bay	0.00%	0

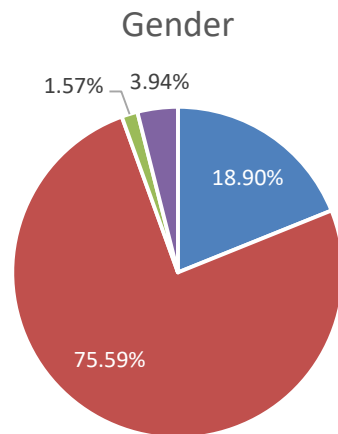
Manganui Bluff	0.00%	0
Mangawhai	12.50%	16
Matakohe	3.13%	4
Maungaturoto	23.44%	30
Omamari	0.00%	0
Pahi	3.91%	5
Paparoa	3.91%	5
Pouto Point	0.00%	0
Ruawai	4.69%	6
Tangiteroria	0.00%	0
Tangowahine	0.00%	0
Te Kopuru	3.13%	4
Tinopai	0.78%	1
Whakapirau	0.78%	1
Other (please specify)	7.81%	10
<b>Total</b>		<b>128</b>

### Demographics

Respondents were asked to indicate gender, age, and ethnicity. The results are shown below.

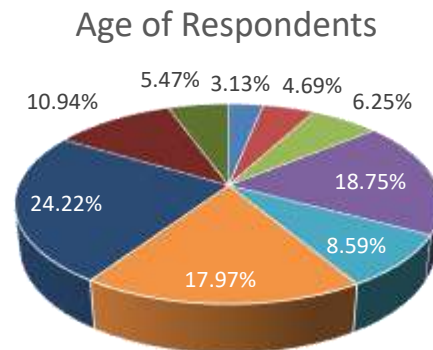
#### Gender

Male	18.90%	24
Female	75.59%	96
Gender diverse	1.57%	2
Prefer not to answer	3.94%	5
<b>Answered</b>		<b>127</b>



#### Age

14 years and under	3.13%	4
15 - 24 years	4.69%	6
25 - 34 years	6.25%	8
35 - 44 years	18.75%	24
45 - 54 years	8.59%	11
55 - 64 years	17.97%	23
65 - 74 years	24.22%	31
75 years and over	10.94%	14
Prefer not to answer	5.47%	7
<b>Answered</b>		<b>128</b>

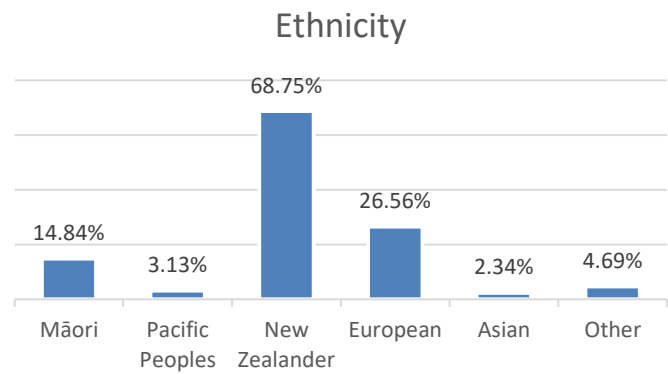


- 14 years and under
- 15 - 24 years
- 25 - 34 years
- 35 - 44 years
- 45 - 54 years
- 55 - 64 years
- 65 - 74 years
- 75 years and over
- Prefer not to answer

## Ethnicity

Respondents could indicate more than one ethnicity. As a result, the percentages below add to more than 100%.

Māori	14.84%	19
Pacific Peoples	3.13%	4
New Zealander	68.75%	88
European	26.56%	34
Asian	2.34%	3
Other	4.69%	6
	<b>Answered</b>	<b>128</b>



## Appendix 7: Recommendations

1. Set up the library build programmes for Dargaville and Mangawhai as projects with proper project management disciplines and timelines established
2. Agree the concepts for each building and develop spatial design briefs in advance of engaging architects/designers/builders
3. Do some further analysis on the issues, risks and benefits of a community funded and led model for Dargaville Library and explore alternative funding mechanisms
4. Support the community library managers to undertake a major weed of their collections to improve access, turnover and make space for people based activities
5. Agree the services that the community libraries will supply and the levels of service and incorporate in to the next revision of the Contract for Service. As a minimum, each library needs to place reserves for customers and fill reserves needed by other libraries, provide an internet computer for public use with a scanner and printer, and support people to connect to the wifi, in addition to their book loan service.
6. As an urgent priority, introduce a mobile library service for the district to improve equity of access and provide opportunities to engage with non-library users in a way that meets their needs.
7. Use the budget set aside for RFID in the current LTP as part of the cost of the mobile library. RFID can be delayed and installed as part of the new libraries in Dargaville and Mangawhai.
8. In the short term, develop and implement a service to lend tech and craft kits
9. Develop a mobile tech lab that can be taken to different locations in the district on the mobile library, including in Dargaville in a location other than the library.
10. Take a strategic approach to developing an annual suite of programmes and events. Until such time as there is appropriate space in Dargaville, the number of events is likely to be small and aligned with other significant events such as Matariki etc.
11. In the longer term consider implementing a digital heritage repository using the Recollect software.
12. Consider treating the collections as one network wide resource to make better use of available budgets
13. Reinststate the budget available for collections for Dargaville to levels prior to Covid restrictions and ensure inflation adjustments in out years to ensure buying power is maintained.
14. Consider removing rental charges from selected new fiction
15. Identify and budget for key new roles to support the development and implementation of the strategy

**Our Council vision:** *Growing a better Kaipara: nurturing our people and place by inspiring a vibrant, healthy, and caring community.* **The Libraries contribute by** broadening horizons, enriching lives, and strengthening communities. Our libraries' role is to connect people with information, ideas, stories and experiences for learning, literacy, creativity and empowerment; link the past, present and future; and provide access to the digital world anywhere, anytime. Kaipara District Libraries will provide an equitable, modern library service for the district to enable individual personal development, facilitate knowledge sharing, help build strong communities and support a sustainable and strong democratic way of life. The libraries will be known for their innovative, responsive and 'make it happen' approach with easy to use services and great staff. More people will connect with library services wherever they are: in-library, online or in the community. Our services will reflect and embrace Tikanga Māori.

## Broadening horizons



### Goals:

- Foster learning and critical thinking
- Enhance access to the digital world, tools, and content
- Create opportunities to learn and share new ideas, skills, and innovation

### Actions

- Develop and implement a service to lend tech and craft kits
- Take a strategic approach to developing an annual suite of programmes and events
- Utilise community expertise to deliver a wider range of programmes, including information and digital literacy programmes
- Ensure tech labs are provided in the mobile and new library builds
- Provide free access to the internet at all libraries

## Implementation Plan

This table outlines a potential order for the actions in the strategic goals. There will be others as the strategy is embedded into the annual planning cycles for library and council.

### Year 1

- Introduce tech kits for loan
- Plan for a mobile library service that complements the physical libraries. Reallocate RFID funds to begin this process
- Revisit the funding model for Dargaville Library to ensure timely delivery of a new building
- Set up build programmes for Mangawhai and Dargaville as projects
- Develop spatial design briefs for Dargaville and Mangawhai Libraries
- Support the community library managers to modernise their collections
- Install an internet connected public access computer, scanner, and printer in community

### Year 2

- Implement the mobile library service
- Reinstate the budget available for collections for Dargaville
- Make the case for removal of rental fees on fiction
- Develop a ten year investment plan, including identifying new staff roles, to deliver the strategy
- Investigate a pilot programme with iwi for tamariki and rangitahi
- Revise contracts with community libraries to take account of agreed standards and levels of service
- Engage architects to work on concept designs

### Years 3-5

- Begin construction of new facilities
- Prepare for the delivery of new and extended services from the new buildings
- Engage new staff

### Years 6-10

- Review and refresh strategy, goals, and actions
- Investigate the need for full library service at Maungaturoto (Gold scenario)

## Enriching lives



### Goals:

- Inspire reading for pleasure
- Connect to our history, culture and identity and celebrate diversity
- Offer a more diverse and relevant service

### Actions

- Provide up-to-date, quality, trusted information, and collections
- Make it easy for everyone to search, discover, use information, and borrow items
- Work in collaboration with institutions collecting digital heritage materials that reflect Māori and European history
- Identify and work with target groups to improve access and use

## Strengthening communities



### Goals:

- Develop great community spaces at the heart of our main towns
- Ensure equity of access for the whole district
- Reach more people by offering choice and convenience in the way we connect
- Design and deliver services in partnership to be more inclusive

### Actions

- Introduce a mobile library that brings services and resources to the rest of the district
- Set up the library build programmes for Dargaville and Mangawhai as projects and develop the concepts and spatial design briefs
- Develop and promote our online platforms
- Clarify and agree standards and levels of service with community libraries

## Principles

Important principles lie at the heart of what we do:

- Freedom of information – the right of an individual to access knowledge and ideas within the law
- Equity of access – ensuring all have access to learning and knowledge regardless of their economic, cultural, educational, or social circumstances
- Trust – in collections and content and in the values that underpin services
- Partnership – working in accordance with the provisions of the Treaty of Waitangi
- Collaboration – working with our communities to deliver more

## Working for success

### Partnership with iwi

Māori participation in decision-making processes is required by the Local Government Act 2002. We want to continue to build the relationship with iwi and hapu to ensure Te Ao Māori is reflected in our services and facilities. We will build our knowledge and practice of Tikanga, encourage the use of te reo and look for meaningful ways to involve iwi in the design of services, and new builds and environs

### Customer & community engagement

We live in a networked world both physically and online. Involving customers, community groups, businesses, and organisations in developing and delivering services means needs are better met, greater empowerment, and more value delivered through shared resources and ideas and skills that complement our expertise. This will strengthen our impact and visibility in the community.

### Skilled staff, sustainable business

We are committed to being a part of a 'Trusted Council - An open organisation working for our community'. To be sustainable the libraries need planned and ongoing investment and wise use of resources. Our library team is crucial to the success of the strategy. We need to have the skills, aptitude, and capacity to respond quickly and easily to change and to deliver new digital and learning services.

### Our values

Council values shape our way of working: Mahi tahi - team work; Mahia te mahi – make it happen; Mana – integrity; Pono – trustworthy; Whakaute - respect

## Council Outcomes

- Climate smart - Climate change and its impacts are reduced through community planning
- Healthy environment - our natural environment is protected and open to the community
- Celebrating diversity - our local heritage and culture are valued and reflected in the community
- A Trusted Council - an open organisation working for our community
- Prosperous economy - development is encouraged, supported and sustainable
- Vibrant communities - Kaipara communities offer an attractive place to live and visit

## Library Outcomes contribute

**Strong libraries change lives – they support social, cultural, economic, and environmental well-being and offer:**

Greater social cohesion and participation; A more tolerant and inclusive society; Greater fairness and equity; Empowered, vibrant, thriving communities; Increased literacy; Digital inclusion and personal cyber safety; More informed decision making; Stronger civic pride and trust



# Revised Terms of Reference for the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Katy Simon, Climate Change Advisor

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To seek adoption of the revised Terms of Reference for the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

This report presents a revised Terms of Reference (ToR) for the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (Joint Committee) for Council's consideration and adoption. The Joint Committee is a key regional governance body, providing direction, oversight and coordination of climate adaptation activities across Northland.

ToR are a requirement under the *Local Government Act 2002* for the establishment and operation of a Joint Committee. The ToR sets out the Joint Committee roles and responsibilities, status, membership, committee structure, quorum, administrative arrangements, and remuneration.

The revised ToR has been endorsed by the Joint Committee and includes minor changes from the previous version, relating to remuneration of non-elected members and a new clause allowing the Joint Committee to continue after the triennial elections.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Adopts the revised Terms of Reference for the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee at Attachment A.
- b) Agrees that the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee is not discharged at the Local Government elections.

## Context | Horopaki

In April 2021, the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (the Joint Committee) was presented with the original adopted Terms of Reference (ToR). The Joint Committee did not endorse this ToR and instead recommended that respective councils develop a consistent policy for remuneration of iwi and hapū representatives.

In August 2021, Northland Regional Council reviewed and amended their Non-Elected Members Allowance Policy, increasing the total remuneration amount per meeting. Kaipara District Council has followed an exception clause in its Non-Elected Member Remuneration Policy to match the meeting amount identified in the NRC policy, at \$240.00 per meeting. Far North District Council is also following NRC's policy. Whangarei District Council (WDC) rate is currently \$280.00 per meeting. WDC are waiting to review their policy in its entirety after the 2022 elections.

On March 7, 2022, the Joint Committee endorsed the ToR with revisions and recommended the revised version for consideration and adoption.

Any revisions need to go through each member council for adoption to meet requirements for a standing committee under the Local Government Act (LGA) 2002. From April to May, Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau (CATT) staff are presenting a report for consideration and adoption to each member council.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

There are three changes to the revised ToR, described below (marked in Attachment B).

1. Changes the direction on remuneration process from respective Council policies to either the NRC Non-Elected Members Allowance Policy or respective Council policies.
2. Changes language from 'nominate' elected member representatives to 'appoint' elected member representatives.
3. Adds the following clause, per the LGA 2002, resolving that the Joint Committee will not discharge at the triennial elections:

*Pursuant to Clause 30(7) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, the councils have resolved that this joint committee is not discharged at the triennial elections. However, on coming into office following an election, a council may choose to review its appointments on the committee.*

These changes are considered minor and do not impact on the purpose and responsibilities on the Joint Committee nor on Council as a participating member. The changes also do not impact on Council's previous remuneration decision for iwi and hapū representatives.

## Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Adopt the revised ToR as attached.	The draft ToR meets the requirements under the Local Government Act 2002. Each council remunerates their hapū/iwi appointees in accordance with either their respective remuneration policy or with NRC's non-elected members allowances policy. Improved consistency in remuneration has been reached in a way that meets councils' needs.	Iwi/hapū representatives' remuneration between councils is inconsistent, noting that the discrepancy in remuneration between councils is minor.
2	Status quo - Do not adopt the revised ToR as attached.	None	The Joint Committee arrangements are not consistent with Local Government Act 2002 requirements.

**Option 1 is the recommended option.**

## Financial implications

None - remuneration for hapū and iwi representation is accounted for under the existing climate change work programme budget.

## Impacts on Māori

There is no negative impact on Council's existing partnership with Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust or Te Roroa Whatu Ora and Mana Whenua Trusts and their ability to act as representatives. Adopting the revised ToR enables Council to begin remunerating our Mana Whenua partners for their representation services.



## Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council's decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

## Next steps | E whaiake nei

If all Northland councils decide to adopt the revised ToR, they will come into effect. If any member council does not adopt the revised ToR, CATT staff will present a report on that councils' concerns to the next Joint Committee meeting in June 2022.

## Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Revised Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference
B	Highlighted Changes to August 2020 Terms of Reference



# Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (JCCAC)

## Terms of Reference (TOR)

March 2022

### Background

Climate change poses significant risks to the environment and people of Te Tai Tokerau - local government has responsibilities in reducing the impact of climate change (adaptation). It is essential that councils, communities and iwi / hapū work collaboratively to ensure an effective, efficient and equitable response to the impacts of climate change. Work on adaptation has already started between council staff with the formation of the joint staff working group Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau and the development of a Climate Change Adaptation Strategy for Tai Tokerau. The formation of a joint standing committee of the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei district councils and Northland Regional Council elected council members and iwi / hapū is fundamental to ensuring these outcomes are achieved in a coordinated and collaborative way across Te Tai Tokerau.

### Role and Responsibilities

- 1) Provide direction and oversight of the development and implementation of climate change adaptation activities by local government in Te Tai Tokerau
- 2) Receive advice and provide direction and support to Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau
- 3) Make recommendations to member councils to ensure a consistent regional approach is adopted to climate change adaptation activities
- 4) Act collectively as an advocate for climate change adaptation generally and within the individual bodies represented on the Committee
- 5) Ensure the bodies represented on the Committee are adequately informed of adaptation activity in Te Tai Tokerau and the rationale for these activities
- 6) Ensure the importance of and the rationale for climate change adaptation is communicated consistently within Te Tai Tokerau
- 7) Receive progress reports from Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau

### Membership

The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (the committee) is a standing committee made up of elected members from the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei district councils, the Northland Regional Council and representatives from Northland hapū and iwi.

The committee shall have eight members as follows:

One elected member from:

Kaipara District Council  
Far North District Council  
Whangarei District Council  
Northland Regional Council

Iwi / hapū members:

One representative from iwi / hapū appointed by each council from within their jurisdiction. Where possible, this appointment should follow recommendations from council Māori advisory groups or committees.

Each council shall also appoint one alternative elected member and one alternative iwi / hapū member who will have full speaking and voting rights when formally acting as the alternate.

**Status**

The Committee is a joint standing committee of council as provided for under Clause 30(1)(b) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002 and shall operate in accordance with the provisions of Clause 30A of that Act. The committee is an advisory body only and has no powers under the Local Government Act 2002 (or any other Act) other than those delegated by decision of all member councils. The joint standing committee shall operate under Northland Regional Council Standing Orders.

**Committee Chair and deputy Chair:**

The Chair and Deputy Chair is to be appointed by the members at the first meeting of the committee.

**Quorum**

At least 50% of members shall be present to form a quorum.

**Meetings**

The Committee shall meet a minimum of two times per annum.

**Service of meetings:**

The Northland Regional Council will provide secretarial and administrative support to the joint committee.

Draft agendas are to be prepared by Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau and approved by the Chair of the Committee prior to the Committee meeting.

**Remuneration**

Remuneration and / or reimbursement for costs incurred by council members is the responsibility of each council.

Respective iwi / hapū representatives will be remunerated and reimbursed by the nominating council in accordance with either the non-elected members remuneration policy of that council or alternatively the Northland Regional Council Non-Elected Members Allowances Policy.

**Joint Committee not discharged at triennial elections**

Pursuant to Clause 30(7) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, the councils have resolved that this joint committee is not discharged at the triennial elections. However, on coming into office following an election, a council may choose to review its appointments on the committee.

**Amendments**

Any amendment to the Terms of Reference or other arrangements of the Committee shall be subject to approval by all member councils.

# Joint climate change adaptation committee Terms of Reference

August 2020

## Background

Climate change poses significant risks to the environment and people of Te Taitokerau - local government has responsibilities in reducing the impact of climate change (adaptation). It is essential that councils, communities and iwi / hapū work collaboratively to ensure an effective, efficient and equitable response to the impacts of climate change. Work on adaptation has already started between council staff with the formation of the joint staff working group Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau and the development of a Climate Change Adaptation Strategy for Taitokerau. The formation of a joint standing committee of the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei district councils and Northland Regional Council elected council members and iwi / hapū is fundamental to ensuring these outcomes are achieved in a coordinated and collaborative way across Te Taitokerau.

## Role and Responsibilities

- 1) Provide direction and oversight of the development and implementation of climate change adaptation activities by local government in Te Taitokerau
- 2) Receive advice and provide direction and support to Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau
- 3) Make recommendations to member councils to ensure a consistent regional approach is adopted to climate change adaptation activities
- 4) Act collectively as an advocate for climate change adaptation generally and within the individual bodies represented on the Committee
- 5) Ensure the bodies represented on the Committee are adequately informed of adaptation activity in Te Taitokerau and the rationale for these activities
- 6) Ensure the importance of and the rationale for climate change adaptation is communicated consistently within Te Taitokerau
- 7) Receive progress reports from Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau

## Membership

The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (the committee) is a standing committee made up of elected members from the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei district councils, the Northland Regional Council and representatives from Northland hapū and iwi.

The committee shall have eight members as follows:

One elected member from:

Kaipara District Council  
Far North District Council  
Whangarei District Council  
Northland Regional Council

Iwi / hapū members:

One representative from iwi / hapū nominated by each council from within their jurisdiction. Where possible, this nomination should follow recommendations from council Māori advisory groups or committees.

Each council shall also nominate one alternative elected member and one alternative iwi / hapū member who will have full speaking and voting rights when formally acting as the alternate.

## Status

The Committee is a joint standing committee of council as provided for under Clause 30(1)(b) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002 and shall operate in accordance with the provisions of Clause 30A of that Act. The committee is an advisory body only and has no powers under the Local Government Act 2002 (or any other Act) other than those delegated by decision of all member councils. The joint standing committee shall operate under Northland Regional Council Standing Orders.

**Committee Chair and deputy Chair:**

The Chair and Deputy Chair is to be elected from members at the first meeting of the committee.

**Quorum**

At least 50% of members shall be present to form a quorum.

**Meetings**

The Committee shall meet a minimum of two times per annum.

**Service of meetings:**

The Northland Regional Council will provide secretarial and administrative support to the joint committee.

Draft agendas are to be prepared by Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau and approved by the Chair of the Committee prior to the Committee meeting.

**Remuneration**

Remuneration and / or reimbursement for costs incurred by council members is the responsibility of each council.

Respective iwi / hapū representatives will be remunerated and reimbursed by the nominating council in accordance with the non-elected members remuneration policy of that council.



**Amendments**

Any amendment to the Terms of Reference or other arrangements of the Committee shall be subject to approval by all member councils.

# Decision on Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Katy Simon, Climate Change Advisor

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To seek adoption of the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy, which was endorsed by the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee on 29 November 2021.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

Staff are presenting this report for Council's consideration and adoption of the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (the Strategy). Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau (CATT) working group has developed the Strategy over two years. In November 2021, the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee endorsed the Strategy.

Adoption of the Strategy commits Council to a robust, collaborative approach to developing local government adaptation responses to the impacts of climate change. The Strategy establishes objectives, principles, key issues, focus areas and priority actions on climate adaptation. The Strategy supports positive, long-term climate resilience and wellbeing outcomes for Te Tai Tokerau Northland.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Adopts the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (Attachments A, B and C)

## Context | Horopaki

### Background

In 2018, the Chief Executive Officers Forum endorsed Terms of Reference for a Climate Change Working Group, now known as Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau (CATT) and appointed the Chief Executive Officer of Kaipara District Council as the project sponsor of CATT.

Members of CATT include staff from the four Northland local authorities as well as iwi and hapū representatives. The purpose of CATT is to develop a regional collaborative approach to climate change adaptation planning for local government in Northland, including a draft climate change strategy for Northland and a work programme that identifies and addresses priority issues at both a regional and district level.

Northland's Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (Joint Committee), consisting of Elected Members and iwi and hapū representatives from the four Northland local authorities, was formed in 2020. The Joint Committee provides direction and oversight of the development and implementation of climate change adaptation activities by local government in Te Tai Tokerau, including the development of a regional strategy.

On 6 October 2021, Council's Elected Members discussed the draft strategy and suggested several changes. Staff presented this feedback and responses on 3 November 2021.

On 29 November 2021, the Joint Committee endorsed the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Change Adaptation Strategy (the Strategy) for adoption by the individual local councils.

CATT staff are now presenting the Strategy for consideration and adoption to each member council. At the time of writing, the Far North District Council (FNDC) Strategy and Policy Committee unanimously voted to support the Strategy for FNDC adoption. In Whangarei District, Te Kārearea, their Hapū/Council strategic standing committee has also voted to support the Strategy for WDC adoption.

### Relevant legislation

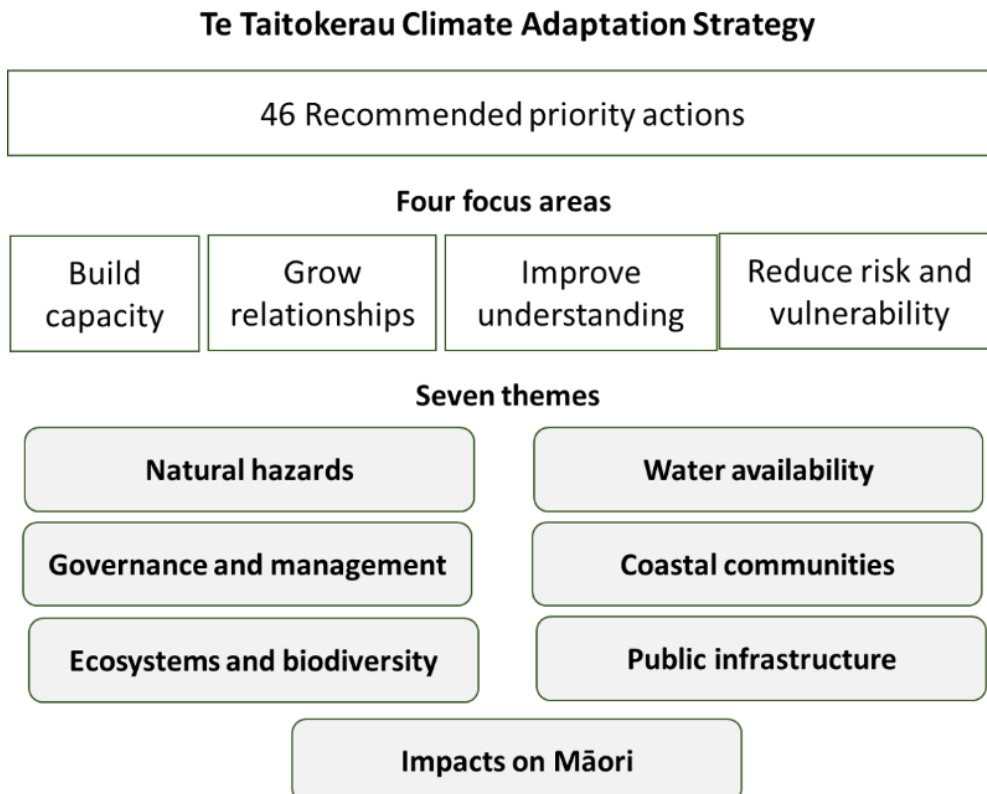
A range of current legislation and government advice supports Council actions to adapt to climate change and develop a strategically, aligned regional approach. Key are:

- The **Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA)**. Under the RMA, council is required to have ‘particular regard to the effects of climate change’
- The **New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010** requires managing of coastal hazard risks “taking account of climate change”. The associated advice, **Coastal Hazards and Climate Change: Guidance for Local Government 2017**, outlines an adaptive planning approach for council and communities to plan for the impacts of climate change on coastal communities. A priority action in the regional Strategy is to work with at risk coastal communities using this adaptive planning approach.
- The first **National Climate Change Risk Assessment**. The government released this Assessment in August 2020. This identified 43 risks that could have major or extreme consequences for New Zealand and noted that Māori will be disproportionately impacted by these risks

### Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

The Strategy aims to set out a robust, collaborative approach to developing local government adaptation responses to the impacts of climate change to ensure positive, long-term outcomes for Te Tai Tokerau Northland. It is designed as a living document to stay up to date and relevant.

The content of the Strategy is summarised in the following diagram:



### Key Documents

The Strategy includes three documents:



- **Full Strategy.** Includes an introduction, discussion of issues and opportunities, focus areas and themes, and living document review plan. (**Attachment A**)
- **Appendix One - Priority Actions.** Lists 46 priority actions for Northland councils, some are to be led by Council, while many others are either led by Northland Regional Council or collaboratively led by Councils. (**Attachment B**)
- **Appendix Two - Climate Risk Overview Technical Report.** Describes the climate change risks for Northland. (**Attachment C**)

### Implementation of the Strategy

The majority of priority actions listed in the Strategy are the responsibility of Councils to implement, either as an individual council or through all-council collaboration. Many are already included within current Council work programmes. It is expected that these projects will gain momentum, with further funding requested in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan under the climate change work programme.

If Council adopts the Strategy, other listed priority actions which are not yet underway will be presented to Council with funding sought in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

### Options

Two viable options have been considered and these are outlined below:

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Council adopts the Strategy	<p>The Strategy provides a broad direction for climate change adaptation, while still allowing Council to tailor plans and programmes to specifically meet the needs of our communities within available resources.</p> <p>Ensures a consistent 'joined up' approach to climate adaptation across the Northland Region.</p> <p>Increases opportunity to learn from climate adaptation activities conducted by other Northland councils.</p> <p>Increased opportunity to lobby and seek funds from central government and from government agencies from a place of greater strength.</p> <p>Support effective and efficient use of council resources. Spreads the financial load of climate adaptation work.</p>	<p>A 'joined up' regional Strategy may be perceived as not allowing Council to do what is best for its local communities.</p> <p>However, it is considered that the Strategy is broad enough to allow Council to tailor plans and programmes to best meet the needs of our communities.</p>
2	Council does not adopt the Strategy	<p>None</p> <p>Council can still carry out a majority of its climate adaptation and mitigation work under the 2021-2031 LTP, albeit without an overarching agreement on alignment and regional support.</p>	<p>Relatively ineffective and inefficient use of council resources.</p> <p>Council's approach will be inconsistent with other Northland local councils.</p> <p>A weaker position for Council when dealing with government</p> <p>Financial load for Council is greater, as it will not be shared with other councils in the region.</p>

Option 1 is the recommended option.

## Policy and planning implications

A decision to adopt the Strategy would support improved policy and planning for climate change. In particular, the Strategy identifies a need for climate change policy, consistent climate change considerations in planning, and a consistent process for climate risk disclosure.

Council has already committed to the development of a Climate Smart Policy, which would address these actions. Council has already committed to Climate Adaptation planning services, through its Adaptive Pathways Planning mahi.

## Financial implications

Currently, \$1,500,000 over 10 years is budgeted in the current Long-Term Plan, to cover climate change work (both adaptation and mitigation projects). Many adaptation projects included within our existing budget fall within the listed priority actions.

Any further/additional resources needed (to fund additional priority actions) can be put forward through a business case for the next (2024 to 2034) Long Term Plan process.

It is also important to note that adopting the Strategy does not commit Council to specific expenditure amounts. Council has flexibility to tailor additional actions to meet the needs of the community within available resources.

## External funding

Additionally, some funding for the priority actions in the Strategy will come from external sources, for example:

- Northern Regional Council has a substantial budget to assist climate adaptation work
- The Department of Internal Affairs has provided funding to assist the development of the Te Ao Māori Climate Change Decision-making Framework (Priority action 2 in the Strategy)
- The Deep South Science Challenge has already provided seed funding of \$25,000 to the CATT group to help improve engagement with tangata whenua and has indicated that further funding of up to \$300,000 may be available for this work.

## Risks and mitigations

Staff have identified two main risks if Council adopts the Strategy.

- Council cannot complete all the priority actions identified in the Strategy. This is considered low risk as the most significant actions are already accounted for under Council's existing climate change work programme.
- Increased challenges to keep the Strategy relevant and alive through the upcoming legislative reform programme. This is a medium risk that can be mitigated through regional collaboration and good management of the Strategy as a living document.

## Impacts on Māori

A decision to adopt the Strategy will likely have positive impacts on Māori, as the Strategy focuses on enhanced partnership, strengthening relationships, and supporting Māori led adaptation planning (hapū or iwi led planning).

## Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council's decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

## Next steps | E whaiake nei

At the time of writing, an interim branding and website is in development and is due for completion by the end of April 2022. This interim branding and website will serve as the centralised platform to house and introduce CATT, the Joint Committee, and the regional adaptation collaboration vision. The interim branding will serve until the identity process is complete and branding finalised by July 2022.

If the Strategy is adopted by all member Councils, CATT will start implementation through an in-depth review of the priority actions. CATT will focus on the 'Joint Committee' and 'All Councils collaboration' actions and identify the status of these actions and the collaborative work necessary to progress these actions. CATT will also begin work on a reporting framework to monitor progress.

KDC staff will perform a similar review of the 'Individual Council' actions to identify the status of these actions, where current work programmes and resourcing can already the actions, and where additional work and resourcing is needed. Staff would likely complete it at the same time as the CATT review described above.

A review plan is outlined in the Strategy to maintain its relevance as a living document. The first proposed review will occur late this year, triggered by the release of the draft National Adaptation Plan and by further engagement and input by Tangata Whenua. CATT will lead this review.

## Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy
B	Appendix One - Priority Actions
C	Appendix Two - Climate Risk Overview Technical Report



April 2022

# Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy



Far North District  
tangata whenua  
representatives



NRC Tai Tokerau Māori  
and Council (TTMAC)  
representatives

Whangarei District  
tangata whenua  
representatives



Kaipara District  
tangata whenua  
representatives





## Table of Contents

Foreword.....	5
Executive summary .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Foundations .....	7
What are we doing and why is it important?.....	8
Part 1. Background and context.....	12
<i>Understanding and communicating about climate change</i> .....	12
<i>Central and local government adaptation: roles and responsibilities</i> .....	14
<i>What can the councils do?</i> .....	16
Part 2. Key adaptation issues, responses and opportunities .....	18
1. <i>Governance and management</i> .....	18
2. <i>Impacts on Māori</i> .....	24
3. <i>Coastal communities</i> .....	30
4. <i>Water availability</i> .....	34
5. <i>Natural hazards</i> .....	37
6. <i>Ecosystems and biosecurity</i> .....	40
7. <i>Public infrastructure</i> .....	46
Part 3. Enabling effective adaptation.....	57
Part 4. An evolving strategy .....	60
<i>Reporting</i> .....	63

## Signatory page

Whangarei District Council

Whangārei District tangata whenua representatives

Far North District Council

Far North District tangata whenua representatives

Kaipara District Council

Kaipara District tangata whenua representatives

Northland Regional Council

NRC Tai Tokerau Māori and Council (TTMAC) representatives

## About the authors

In early 2020, chief executives and mayors of the four Northland councils recommended the establishment of the collaborative Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee. It was agreed that the Joint Committee be comprised of eight members with an equal representation (50:50) of councillors and iwi/hapū representatives from across the region. Each council nominated one elected member (with another as back-up/alternate) and one iwi/hapū representative (with another as backup/alternate).

The Te Tai Tokerau Māori and Council Working Party provided their nominations for membership on behalf of Northland Regional Council at their March 2020 meeting. District council elected member representatives were determined at the respective council meetings. District council tangata whenua representatives were nominated through tangata whenua forums and then endorsed by representative bodies (Far North District Council, Whangarei District Council), or through direct engagement based on partnership agreements (Kaipara District Council).

This strategy was drafted in a collaborative process by Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau, a joint working group made up of staff from all four Northland councils (Kaipara, Whangarei and Far North District councils, and Northland Regional Council), as well as hapū and iwi representatives. A key objective for the group is to align local government climate adaptation policy, information and methodologies, and pursue collaborative opportunities to enable effective regional adaptation planning.

This strategy has been endorsed by Northland's Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee; a formal standing committee set up under the Local Government Act 2002. Each council has independently contributed to, reviewed and formally adopted this strategy.



# Foreword

There is no longer any doubt our climate is changing – we are facing a climate crisis. The question now is what will the impacts be, and how can we best prepare our people, places and industries?

New Zealand's government declared a climate emergency on 2 December 2020 and holds the lead responsibility for Aotearoa's transition to a low-emissions society and economy. Local government has a supporting role in this climate change mitigation mahi, to assist and enable the required transitions in districts and regions.

Climate change adaptation, however, must be led by councils, iwi, hapū, industry stakeholders and the wider community. This strategy represents a first step by Northland councils towards a collaborative, region-wide response to the impacts of climate change. We are already living with the effects of a changing climate, and many communities in Te Tai Tokerau have been using their own resources and networks to develop plans to prepare and adapt. Through this strategy, Northland councils and tangata whenua are building on these plans, seeking integration and alignment across the region, and working to create meaningful partnerships to help us all adapt together.

This strategy is the foundation that sets out our commitment to taking action, to aligning with our communities, to listening, understanding, and working together. We expect the strategy will evolve and actions will change as this adaptation kaupapa progresses and our understanding grows.

Through this strategy, we are asking these important questions of ourselves and of Te Tai Tokerau. What do our communities need to effectively adapt to the impacts of our changing climate? What can councils do to support local initiatives? Where are the areas that are most at risk, who are the most vulnerable? What information should we be guided by and what flow-on effects should we be planning for? How does the climate change kaupapa fit with tangata whenua whakaaro, and how can councils integrate and honour that whakaaro in future planning cycles?

These questions need to be carefully worked through; bringing representatives from Northland councils and tangata whenua to the same table to develop this strategy has been an important first step. The scale and complexity of the climate challenges ahead provide an opportunity for inclusive, progressive and creative solutions. Our actions and decisions from now must be focused on the future we want for our children's children.

Together, we can adapt and thrive.

**Amy MacDonald – Chair**

**“If fear is on one end of the scale, then complacency is on the other.”**

– Delaraine Armstrong, Te Orewai hapū of Ngāti Hine, Deputy Chair of Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau

As a tangata whenua descendent of 31 generations from Kupe arriving in Aotearoa, through my earliest Ngāpuhi whakapapa to Rahiri, to a further 20 more generations till I feature, I am anchored firmly to Te Ao Māori through my Ngāti Hinetanga, through the hapū of Te Orewai. As such, I am typically representative of iwi Māori.

Before Kupe, we tātai through the cosmic creation of the universe, to the creation of ngā Atua followed by the common physical world where tangata have evolved. Change is dynamic in this holistic world view. The view and responsibility for tangata whenua and climate change is physical, spiritual and social across generational relationships from the long past and into the distant future.

The ethnocentric lens of Te Ao Māori is fundamentally different to the dominant cultural view of the natural world in which tangata whenua live and interact. The differences between the indigenous world view and the prevailing world view creates systemic differences which divide us and, in many instances, create inequities for tangata whenua, including and beyond climate change. The definition of tangata whenua, as people of the whenua, personifies the spiritual relationship between tangata whenua and the natural world. This world view is difficult to capture and genuinely have regard for in the current structural practice and implementation of local government bureaucracy, including climate change adaptation.

We must work hard to rebalance the systemic framework, and co-design new, relevant tools and practices to ensure tangata whenua are resourced to work in genuine partnership to reduce the gaping inequities for Māori communities who are kaitiaki of the previous generations of sovereign rights and responsibilities over wahi tapu, whenua Māori and the broader landscape of Aotearoa. The concept of property rights is in direct conflict with tangata whenua relationships to the whenua, ngā awa, ngā maunga, te ngāhere. This is the challenge confronting the development of climate adaptation and the many other reforms that are interactive in addressing natural resource management in the future.

The rhetoric of tangata whenua involvement must be genuinely enabled and supported. However, this responsibility doesn't sit only with non-Māori. Tangata whenua must step into the space we demand and provide clear advice and structural options for a new framework to work with councils. The beginning of this journey in Tai Tokerau is reflective of the willingness to do that, but far more resource is needed to build capability and capacity with tangata whenua, communities and workforces.

**Delaraine Armstrong – Deputy Chair**

# Executive summary

Our planet is on an undeniable climate change trajectory. We now know more about the causes and implications of climate change than ever before, and our timeframes have shifted from imminent to immediate. Effects are already being felt across Te Tai Tokerau. It is our responsibility to identify ways in which the councils can help communities adapt to the localised impacts of a changing climate.

The main, and most urgent, response to the causes of climate change is mitigation through reducing greenhouse gas emissions. While central government controls the main policy and economic levers to drive emissions reductions nationally, the councils can and should help the transition towards net-zero emissions. However, this will not resolve the need to address the impacts of climate change that are already locked in.

This strategy focuses on adapting to the impacts of climate change in Te Tai Tokerau. It is not a solution to climate change impacts and risks. It indicates the strategic and practical direction our local councils need to take to create equitable, lasting adaptation approaches that have positive outcomes for our communities and natural environment.

The strategy outlines the key ways climate change will affect council functions and services, lists some of the councils' current adaptation actions, and proposes future actions that are likely to be required. Affected council services cover a wide range of activities, and are presented as seven broad themes:

1. governance and management
2. impacts on Māori
3. coastal communities
4. water availability
5. natural hazards
6. ecosystems and biosecurity
7. public infrastructure.

The strategy also outlines a comprehensive programme of actions covering four areas where the councils can improve their response to climate change (see Part 5):

1. building stronger relationships and partnerships
2. improving how the councils understand climate impacts and the risks they pose to communities and the natural environment
3. taking concrete actions to reduce existing and projected risks
4. building capacity to respond.

These actions are divided into short-, medium- and long-term categories. Short-term actions are the immediate priority. Te Tai Tokerau is already experiencing the effects of a changing climate. These impacts will continue to increase in the coming decades. Some changes, such as sea level rise, will take centuries to slow or reverse, and some may be irreversible. Te Tai Tokerau councils need to understand and prepare for climate risks to reduce the impacts of these changes.

Climate impacts compound existing factors that reduce well-being and have a large and potentially disproportionate effect on Te Tai Tokerau's tangata whenua. Climate change affects their relationship with te taiao and ngā whenua (the natural world and the land), cultural and whānau values, and iwi/hapū taonga.

Tangata whenua hold evidence-based knowledge of Te Tai Tokerau's history, natural environment and communities, which is integral to addressing climate impacts. Developing strong and lasting partnerships with tangata whenua is key to a successful long-term response to climate change.

Councils have an important role to play to support the resilience of communities and natural systems as we adapt to climate impacts. They possess tools that can help address climate impacts, such as planning frameworks and the provision of infrastructure. Given the complexity of climate change's challenges, it is essential for the councils to work alongside iwi/hapū, communities and stakeholders to co-develop flexible solutions that address existing limitations on wellbeing, respond as the climate shifts, and recognise opportunities for betterment.

This strategy, including its recommended priority actions, is a living document. Our responses to climate change need to be dynamic, so significant changes in evidence, community context and legislation can inform how our adaptation approaches evolve. Ongoing engagement with tangata whenua and communities is likely to highlight new evidence and perspectives that may result in changes to how the councils approach, resource and implement adaptation.

There are also significant changes in government legislation currently in development, including Resource Management Act reform, a new Climate Change Adaptation Act, Three Waters Reform and the creation of a national adaptation plan. These will lead to a greater focus on climate change, and new tools for local government to carry out adaptation actions.

Case law is also developing apace. Councils are now being challenged in the courts on planning decisions, both for being overly restrictive and for not taking sufficient precautions. In addition, new law in Aotearoa requires the mandatory disclosure of financial risks associated with climate change by financial institutions. This new law is likely to affect local government, as insurance and banking organisations seek to reduce risk exposure.

Given this rapidly evolving physical, social, legislative and legal environment, councils need to be extremely attentive and agile in developing climate change programmes and policy. This strategy has an inbuilt review function that enables it to respond to changes as needed, allowing future adaptation approaches to progressively build on the foundations currently being developed.

The purpose of creating a regional strategy is to ensure the approach to climate change adaptation by Te Tai Tokerau councils is robust, consistent and coordinated. The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee and the Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau working group provide a platform to support this coordinated approach and ensure the effective use of resources. While this is a team effort, each council will need to take responsibility for individual actions as part of realising the joint approach.

If councils, iwi/hapū and communities work together flexibly across Te Tai Tokerau, we can be resilient in the face of climate change.

# Foundations

## WHAKATAUKĪ

**Te amorangi ki mua, te hapai o ki muri.**

The leader at the front and the workers behind the scenes.

This is about everyone having a role, playing a part. It is a reference to marae protocol where the speakers are at the front of the meeting house and the workers are at the back making sure everything is prepared and that the guests are well looked after. Both jobs are equally important, and without one, everything would fail.

## SCOPE AND PURPOSE

Mitigating climate change through emissions reduction and carbon removal is the urgent, primary response we must adopt to address climate change. Central and local governments have roles in mitigation, providing information and support, setting rules and policy, and making operational decisions. All Northland councils are working on reducing greenhouse gas emissions through complementary strategies and plans.

Given a certain amount of warming is locked in, the necessary, secondary council response to climate change is to implement measures that ensure our people and environment can adapt to current and future climate impacts. This can include limiting the exposure to climate hazards and increasing resilience and adaptive capacity.

This strategy is intended to ensure positive long-term outcomes for Northland. We can do this by embracing a robust, collaborative approach to developing local government adaptation responses to the impacts of climate change. Building a foundation for effective local action also involves acknowledging the need to remain agile in a changing legislative environment.

## Vision

The people and the environment of Te Tai Tokerau thrive and are resilient in a changing climate.

## Mission statement

Across Te Tai Tokerau, we work together with iwi/hapū partners, communities and stakeholders to proactively understand, plan for, and respond to the impacts and opportunities of climate change.

## Principles

- **Treaty of Waitangi and Te Tiriti o Waitangi:** work collaboratively with tangata whenua, demonstrating the principles of partnership, participation and protection.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Local government has responsibilities under the LGA and RMA in relation to the Treaty of Waitangi. The Treaty is referenced as 'the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)' in the definition of the RMA and has the same definition as in the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975, being that the 'Treaty' means the Treaty of Waitangi as set out in English and in Māori in Schedule 1 (*of the Act*). For hapū in Te Tai Tokerau, He Whakaputanga o nga Rangatira o Nui Tireni and Te Tiriti o Waitangi need to be read together and Te Tiri o Waitangi forms the basis for the relationship between hapū and local government.

- **Whanaungatanga:** work together to build relationships and a sense of connection across the region, enabling sincere partnerships and collaborative working relationships.
- **Western science and mātauranga Māori:** alongside Western science, enable mātauranga Māori (Māori knowledge) to help understand climate change and inform decisions.<sup>2</sup> The right answers for the future are best found by first understanding the mātauranga left to us by our tūpuna.<sup>3</sup>
- **Equitable:** empower communities and ensure ‘no one is left behind’ through fair and tika processes, resourcing and outcomes.
- **Considered:** use research-led, evidence-based, values-driven policy and decision-making to proactively manage risks and identify opportunities.
- **Ka mua, ka muri:** walking backwards into the future – balance present-day needs and responsibilities with the rights of future generations, learning from the past using guidance from our ancestors.
- **Transformative:** use innovation to take advantage of opportunities to build a better future.
- **Transition:** address and reduce transition risks.
- **Holistic:** strengthen the four wellbeings – enhancing social wellbeing, regenerating mauri and environmental systems, supporting cultural values, and promoting economic resilience.
- **Integrated:** embed a climate change lens across all council activities and align adaptation with emissions reduction.

## Objectives

- Improve and broaden our understanding of the risks of climate change in Te Tai Tokerau, especially in relation to local government activities.
- Clarify adaptation needs and responsibilities.
- Identify opportunities to improve local government adaptation responses.
- Recommend priority actions for local government.
- Outline a process by which the strategy will be responsive to feedback and changing circumstances.

The principles and objectives of this strategy align with the vision of all four councils, and iwi and hapū member reference groups.<sup>4</sup> The objectives and priority actions also align with the strategic goals identified by Northland Regional Council’s Te Tai Tokerau Māori and Council Working Party that relate to climate change (goals 10, 11 and 12).

# What are we doing and why is it important?

## Climate change will increasingly affect Northland’s wellbeing

A changing climate affects our social and cultural wellbeing, our businesses and economy, our homes, buildings and infrastructure, and the ecosystems and natural world that surround us. We are seeing and experiencing effects on these realms now. From a te ao Māori perspective, the environment can be understood as the

<sup>2</sup> Te Iwi o Ngātiwai, Iwi Environmental Policy Document, 2007.

<sup>3</sup> Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.

<sup>4</sup> Far North District Council’s Climate Change Roadmap, Kaipara District Council’s Kaipara Ki Tua: Climate Smart Strategic Framework, Whangarei District Council’s Sustainability Strategy and Climate Action Plan, and Northland Regional Council’s climate change strategy *Ngā Taumata o te Moana*.

embodiment of generations of whakapapa from ngā atua.<sup>5</sup> Hapū and iwi report that the realms of ngā atua and kaitiaki are degraded, mauri has been destroyed and there is potential for detrimental environmental, cultural and social effects.<sup>6</sup> Generations to come will continue to experience the impacts of climate change.

Adaptation is the response to change. Adaptation helps us cope with the effects of climate change and reduces potential negative impacts. When we adapt, we reduce our exposure and vulnerability. We grow capacity in our communities, economies, and natural environment so we can keep adapting to whatever climate impacts are on the horizon.

Most importantly, adaptation offers opportunities for betterment. The legacy of our ancestors and the lives of our future generations are linked to the relationship we have with the natural environment. Adaptation is an opportunity to improve this relationship.

In meetings with elected members, opportunities such as the following were identified:

“What does going proactive on carbon banking look like?”

“What does it mean for tourism when we really become the winterless north? We keep telling people we are when actually we're not.”

“You can sell a product and have a carbon negative label on it.”

## **Responding to climate change impacts will affect how local government operates**

Northland councils have an important role to play in adaptation, including providing education and advice, as well as planning and implementing adaptation responses at a local and regional level. Together with hapū and iwi partners, our communities and central government, Northland councils need to plan for and manage impacts on the things we value to help local communities become more resilient.

This is a new, challenging space for Northland councils and for many communities. To best facilitate adaptation and assist communities, Northland councils will continually work to improve our information and approaches.

This strategy sets out a vision for how Northland councils can improve their ability to prepare for and adapt to the impacts of climate change. It sets out clear steps to position Northland councils to respond to climate change, and to support community responses as well as possible. Adaptation will increasingly be part of our core business.

## **A strategy that evolves**

Climate change is dynamic, and our understanding of its causes and consequences continues to evolve. Likewise, this strategy needs to be a living document so it can develop and adapt as Northland does. We will update this strategy as required, to respond to new evidence from mātauranga Māori and Western science, the changing needs of communities and iwi/hapū partners, and changes in the legislative and legal environment.

---

<sup>5</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. Pg 12, 13.

<sup>6</sup> Te Iwi o Ngātiwai, Iwi Environmental Policy Document, 2007. Pg 11.

Ngāti Hau, Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2016.

Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.

Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust Environs Holdings, Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao, 2011.

Upcoming legislation, including the Climate Change Adaptation Act, may change the legal landscape and the tools the councils use to implement adaptation. There is some uncertainty around the details, but leading legal research<sup>7</sup> suggests councils should continue to follow best practice to ensure we are acting on our knowledge of climate impacts. The express aim of this strategy is to identify gaps and take advantage of opportunities to improve the councils' current capacity for adaptation decision-making, in preparation for new legislation.

This strategy also needs to respond to the voices of our communities and of tangata whenua. As Northland councils continue on this journey, feedback from iwi and hapū partners, communities, businesses and other stakeholders will continue long after the first version of this strategy is published. In particular, engagement with tangata whenua has so far been limited to feedback from iwi and hapū partner representatives. Actions within this strategy include a process to expand engagement across iwi and hapū to marae and whānau, to better reflect the understanding, experiences and aspirations of tangata whenua.

The strategy has six parts:

**Part 1. 'Background and context'** explains the rationale and context for the strategy.

**Part 2. 'Key adaptation issues, responses and opportunities'** provides detail on issues of concern, including governance and management, impacts on Māori, coastal communities, water availability, natural hazards, ecosystems and biosecurity, and public infrastructure.

**Part 3. 'Enabling effective adaptation'** outlines four areas for action to help improve adaptation responses in Northland: 1) improving knowledge and understanding, 2) growing relationships, 3) reducing risk and vulnerability, and 4) building capacity.

**Part 4. 'An evolving strategy'** outlines how the strategy will develop over time, in response to feedback and legislative changes.

**Part 5. 'Priority actions'** contains a list of 46 recommended actions for the councils.

**Part 6. 'Climate risk overview'** (technical report) provides an overview of different perspectives on climate change impacts and implications in Northland, and approaches to risk management.

---

<sup>7</sup> Iorns, Catherine and Stoverwatts, J, Adaptation to Sea-Level Rise: Local Government Liability Issues (July 1, 2019). Victoria University of Wellington Legal Research Paper No. 62/2020, Available at SSRN: <https://ssrn.com/abstract=3685492> or <http://dx.doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.3685492>





Enviroschools planting at Lake Waiporohita. See <https://enviroschools.org.nz/>

# Part 1. Background and context

## The need for adaptation

Adaptation is about responding to the impacts of climate change. Adaptation does not replace the need for urgent greenhouse gas emissions reductions; it acknowledges that the climate is changing and that, in the words of the United Nations, we need to “develop adaptation solutions and implement actions to respond to the impacts of climate change that are already happening, as well as prepare for future impacts”.<sup>8</sup>

Adaptation is a key component of the long-term global response to climate change, to protect people, livelihoods and ecosystems. Regardless of the success or speed of programmes to reduce global emissions, greenhouse gases already in the atmosphere have a ‘locked in’ warming potential. Additional warming is ‘virtually certain’<sup>9</sup> to keep exacerbating climate change and its impacts in coming decades.

The Climate Change Adaptation Technical Working Group, established by central government,<sup>10</sup> described effective adaptation as reducing the risks of climate change on two fronts:

- reducing the exposure and vulnerability of our social and cultural systems, natural and built environment (including physical assets), and economy
- maintaining and improving the capacity of our social, cultural, environmental, physical and economic systems to adapt.

There is an urgent need to understand, prepare for and respond to present-day and projected climate impacts. While local government will play a prominent leading role, we will also learn with and from our communities and mana whenua partners. Local knowledge, support and leadership will be vital for successful adaptation responses.

## Understanding and communicating about climate change

The impacts and implications of climate change are complex and can be challenging to understand and communicate. Different knowledge systems, perspectives, objectives, worldviews and values can bring very different approaches for engaging with climate risks and framing the issues. While these different ways of understanding the impacts of climate change can be complementary, they can also be confusing and can get in the way of developing solutions that work for everyone.

This strategy attempts to use a systems approach to draw on both a Western scientific understanding of climate impacts (which tends to compartmentalise issues, then look at relationships between them), as well as Māori perspectives (guided by the core principle of whanaungatanga connecting everything<sup>11</sup>). The Climate Risk Overview in Part 6 of this strategy (which is a technical report) explores this in more detail.

---

<sup>8</sup> <https://unfccc.int/topics/adaptation-and-resilience/the-big-picture/what-do-adaptation-to-climate-change-and-climate-resilience-mean>

<sup>9</sup> IPCC AR6 Climate change 2021 - the physical science basis. <https://www.ipcc.ch/report/ar6/wg1/#SPM>

<sup>10</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/adapting-to-climate-change-in-new-zealand-stocktake-report-from-the-climate-change-adaptation-technical-working-group/>

<sup>11</sup> Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust Environs Holdings, Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao, 2011.

In thinking about risks from climate change, the National Climate Change Risk Assessment for New Zealand<sup>12</sup> report adopted a Western scientific approach. It grouped societal values into five broad value domains (natural environment, built environment, human, economy and governance domains). Value domains of this nature can be a practical way to create high-level summaries of climate change impacts from multiple hazards, but can also compartmentalise and separate social values.

This framing of climate risks into separate domains can create practical problems when trying to develop adaptive solutions for interacting or compounding climate hazards that cut across different value domains. The systems approach for mapping climate risks, which is explored in the Climate Risk Overview (in Part 6), attempts to overcome this issue by using a causal diagram to show interactions between hazards and affected areas of society and the environment. Nonetheless, neither approach reflects or incorporates Māori values, and ongoing work is needed to build a shared understanding of climate risks.

From a te ao Māori perspective, the environment can be understood as the embodiment of generations of whakapapa from ngā atua.<sup>13</sup> Whanaungatanga describes genealogical relationships between people, between people and natural resources, even between related bodies of knowledge. Relationships of importance in mātauranga Māori are explained through kinship. Māori relationships with the cultural landscape are explained through whakapapa. The first step in understanding the Māori relationship with the landscape is to understand that descent from it is an essential Māori belief.<sup>14</sup>

#### **What is whanaungatanga and why is it important?**

Whanaungatanga: the principle of kinship. As explained in *Ko Aotearoa Tenei*, “In te ao Māori, all of the myriad elements of creation – the living and the dead, the animate and inanimate – are seen as alive and inter-related. All are infused with mauri (that is, a living essence or spirit) and all are related through whakapapa. Thus, the sea is not an impersonal thing but the ancestor-god Tangaroa, and from him all fish and reptiles are descended. The plants of Aotearoa are descendants of Tāne-mahuta, who also formed and breathed life into the first woman, and his brother Haumia-Tiketike. The people of a place are related to its mountains, rivers and species of plant and animal, and regard them in personal terms. Every species, every place, every type of rock and stone, every person (living or dead), every god, and every other element of creation is united through this web of common descent, which has its origins in the primordial parents Ranginui (the sky) and Papa-tu-ā-nuku (the earth). This system of thought provides intricate descriptions of the many parts of the environment and how they relate to each other. It asserts hierarchies of right and obligation among them.”

Pūrākau (stories, legends) and mātauranga passed down through generations describe the relationships with and between ngā atua, which help tangata whenua understand what practices need to be followed to tiaki (protect) the environment, to understand why certain effects and changes occur, and to identify the responses needed to address or adapt to the effects. Pūrākau also remind us that tūpuna (ancestors) Māori faced similar situations.

<sup>12</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/national-climate-change-risk-assessment-for-new-zealand-main-report/>

<sup>13</sup> Ngati Hau, Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2016

<sup>14</sup> Waitangi Tribunal Report, *Ko Aotearoa Tenei: A Report into Claims Concerning New Zealand Law and Policy Affecting Māori Culture and Identity*, 2011.

Discussing climate risks from these starting points could be more relevant for Māori communities, and the solutions that are identified may offer options for application in other locations.

## Central and local government adaptation: roles and responsibilities

Central and local government have different roles in adapting to climate change. Central government responsibilities are primarily delivered through functions set out in the Climate Change Response Act; and the key tools for adaptation are National Climate Change Risk Assessments and National Adaptation Plans. Once developed, these will set out government priorities and strategies for adaptation. The first national climate change risk assessment is complete, and the first National Adaptation Plan will be delivered before the end of 2022. Both are likely to have implications for local government, and influence adaptation at a regional and district level. We will need to review this strategy once the National Adaptation Plan is available.

Central government has also signalled its intention to reform the resource management system. This includes repealing New Zealand's core planning law, the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), and replacing it with three new statutes. Among the reform's key objectives are to better prepare for adapting to climate change and risks from natural hazards, and to better mitigate emissions contributing to climate change. The government has indicated that climate change adaptation and mitigation will be central themes in all three new statutes developed through the reforms.

The reforms will affect local government and could change the functions and roles of the councils in climate change adaptation. It is very likely, though, that there will remain a strong role for local government in planning for and implementing adaptation at community and regional levels. This will include undertaking risk assessments for council-owned and maintained community assets.

The Waitangi Tribunal report following Wai 262, the most comprehensive of all government claims, included recommended changes to the Crown's laws, policies and practices – including

but not limited to intellectual property, indigenous flora and fauna, resource management, conservation, science, education and health. The objective of many of the proposed reforms was to establish genuine partnerships.<sup>15</sup> In response, central government is aiming to develop a whole-of-government approach to consider the issues raised by claimants and the Waitangi Tribunal in the Wai 262 enquiry. Direct and indirect changes for local

### New climate change legislation

The Ministry for the Environment is currently drafting new legislation and guidance as part of the RMA reform, which includes a Climate Change Response Act. These will change how local government is able to respond to climate change impacts.

Items specifically related to climate change include:

- Climate Change Adaptation Act: to address the legal and technical issues associated with managed retreat and adaptation.
- Adaptation funding mechanism: creating a national funding mechanism for proactive adaptation and risk mitigation.
- National Adaptation Plan: to determine the approach for climate change, including the measures and indicators required.

In response, we will need to review this strategy. A review process is laid out in Part 4 – 'An evolving strategy'.

<sup>15</sup> Te Pae Tawhiti: Wai 262 (tpk.govt.nz)

government are likely to result from this approach. These will need to be embedded in local government responsibilities, including climate change adaptation responses.

At a local government level, regional and district councils have different roles in adaptation which reflect their different functions. The Local Government Act 2002 states that the purpose of local government is (a) to enable democratic local decision-making and action by, and on behalf of, communities, and (b) to promote the social, economic, environmental and cultural wellbeing of communities in the present and for the future.

Regional councils are primarily concerned with environmental and coastal resource management and planning, flood management, water quality and quantity, pest control, and public transport. District councils (also known as territorial authorities) are responsible for a wide range of local services, including district planning, roads, stormwater, water reticulation, sewerage and refuse collection, libraries, parks, recreation services, cemeteries, local regulations, and community and economic development.

Councils need to plan for adaptation to manage the risks posed by climate change. Much of this responsibility relates to managing risks from natural hazards (such as coastal erosion or flooding) under the Resource Management Act 1991. Responsibility also extends to providing and managing infrastructure, obtaining technical information, managing natural resources and facilitating community adaptation processes. Adaptation, especially as it relates to increasing risks posed by natural hazards and climate change, is necessarily 'local' – hazards and values vary widely, as do response options.

Climate change mitigation (managing greenhouse gas pollution by reducing emissions and carrying out activities that capture and store carbon) is also a responsibility of local government. In New Zealand, the main mechanisms to enable broad emissions reductions lie with central government through the Climate Change Response Act 2002 and the Emissions Trading Scheme. However, the councils should work to reduce their own organisational emissions, and help enable the reduction of district and regional emissions through activities such as urban planning and public transport. Beginning in 2022, regional consents must also consider greenhouse gas emissions under the RMA.

As decision-making authorities delegated by the Crown, local government has a responsibility to uphold Treaty guarantees. Local government has legislated Treaty of Waitangi/Te Tiriti o Waitangi<sup>16</sup> (Treaty) responsibilities that are applicable in all our activities, including responding to climate change and local government's adaptation responsibilities. A Waitangi Tribunal precedent signals local government requirements and the enforcement of Treaty duties. While there are no Waitangi Tribunal claims specifically related to climate change adaptation, there are claims such as Wai 262 and enough relevant cases to demonstrate that Treaty principles of "active protection and partnership, especially the facilitation of consultation, will apply no matter what the process is".<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>16</sup> Local government has responsibilities under the LGA and RMA in relation to the Treaty of Waitangi. The Treaty is referenced as 'the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)' in the definition of the RMA and is stated to have the same definition as in the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975, being that the 'Treaty means the *Treaty of Waitangi as set out in English and in Maori in Schedule 1 (of the Act)*'.

The LGA does not provide an interpretation or definition of the Treaty, but it does reference responsibilities to meet commitments from other enactments, which of course includes the RMA. The absence of the LGA specifically referring to one text or the other does not give us the option of choosing which text we think it is referring to – but in any case, the *contra proferentem* principle applies and the indigenous language text takes preference.

<sup>17</sup> Iorns Magallanes, 2019, p.62. Deep South Challenge, *Treaty of Waitangi duties relevant to adaptation to coastal hazards from sea-level rise* research is the most comprehensive and up-to date work covering coastal hazards adaptation and Treaty duties.

## What can the councils do?

While the legislated functions of local government for managing the risks of natural hazards and providing infrastructure are well established, Northland councils are at an early stage in developing focused climate change adaptation responses. To date, these responses have broadly focused on capacity and relationship building, information gathering and analysis, and preparation and planning.

Councils have an important function in developing knowledge by investigating and collating locally relevant information on current and future climate change risks, and by undertaking ongoing monitoring and evaluation. They provide adaptation support to communities through leadership and guidance; and they can help enable co-designed solutions through community engagement and adaptation planning. Councils also manage climate risks, such as through land-use planning rules, providing public infrastructure, supporting emergency responses, and enhancing the resilience of natural systems.

While councils face many challenges as they begin climate adaptation journeys, there are many areas of strength and opportunity. Northland councils have developed strong inter-council working relationships and have background knowledge and information to support an ambitious works programme. All four councils and our hapū and iwi partners have collaborated to establish a joint governance committee on climate change adaptation. This group's existence is a milestone, and demonstrates the energy, commitment, knowledge, trust and networks characterising the partnership.

A growing awareness of climate change's significance and increasing support from council leadership enables the councils to take a stronger stand on adaptation planning. Widespread community buy-in and a desire for action to address climate change impacts also contribute to this approach. Public feedback through Long-Term Plan consultation processes has supported all four councils to significantly increase climate change adaptation funding in their 2021–2031 Long-Term Plans.

Tangata whenua have a strong interest in climate change adaptation. There is a significant opportunity for the councils and tangata whenua to build on the existing relationships formed at governance and staff levels, to partner in this mahi and achieve outcomes that everyone desires. Within hapū and iwi planning documents, reports to the councils and other government reporting, hapū and iwi within Tai Tokerau have articulated the challenges that local government processes and decision-making have created within the taiao (natural world) and their relationship with the taiao.<sup>18</sup> Engagement with tangata whenua has highlighted the need to consider legacy relationship challenges between local government and tangata whenua, as well as issues and other socio-economic drivers when understanding and planning for climate risks with Māori communities. Te Tai Tokerau councils have committed to working- and governance-level relationships with hapū and iwi in this mahi. This is positive, and reflects a shift in council thinking to heal relationships and work towards genuine partnership.

Te Tai Tokerau councils can also support other highly affected communities, such as our farming communities, to build resilience and plan for adaptation. We can build on existing local government and community initiatives and carry out targeted engagement to identify needs and opportunities unique to agriculture and horticulture. These opportunities extend beyond responsibilities specific to local government but are important for the wider

---

<sup>18</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014.

Waitangi Tribunal Report, *Ko Aotearoa Tenei: A Report into Claims Concerning New Zealand Law and Policy Affecting Māori Culture and Identity*, 2011. Chatham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Nga Hapū o Whangārei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

economic and social wellbeing of Northland's places and people and add momentum to the positive work already underway.

Part 2 of this strategy explores the key local government activities that are affected by climate change, what the current local government adaptation responses are, and highlights where opportunities have been identified as future actions by the four Northland councils. While the focus is on local government, we acknowledge a whole-of-community response to climate change will include activities and initiatives that are the responsibility of other agencies and parties. This could mean some local adaptation responses are led by non-council parties, such as iwi/hāpu or community groups.

# Part 2. Key adaptation issues, responses and opportunities

A wide range of issues regarding local government's response to climate change risks have been raised by iwi and hapū, elected members, council staff, and community members. These issues involve seven themes:

1. Governance and management
2. Impacts on Māori
3. Coastal communities
4. Water availability
5. Natural hazards
6. Ecosystems and biosecurity
7. Public infrastructure

The seven themes are discussed in detail here, with insight into relevant issues, current responses, and future opportunities specific to local government. The insights in this section also inform Part 3 – 'Enabling effective adaptation' which outlines future directions and areas for action. Reference is made within this section to related actions in Part 5 – Priority actions'.

While the grouping of the issues makes sense in a local government context, it may not align with the integrated and interconnected approach of Māori. There are other more relevant groupings to Māori such as the four pou: wai (from which everything emerges<sup>19</sup>), kai, whenua and whare (as used by Te Hau Ora o Ngāpuhi and others in the health sector). It is likely that the four pou will be a more effective approach to engage with Māori communities.

---

## 1. Governance and management

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Councils across Northland have started to acknowledge their role in developing climate change adaptation responses in recent years. There are still opportunities to improve. There are external and internal risks for the councils relating to governance and management of climate change adaptation. External risks include those arising from the uncertainty of climate projections and the lack of clear guidance from central government. Internal risks include those arising from inadequate internal council policies, processes and capabilities.

Despite these risks, not doing anything to adapt to climate change is considered to be the biggest risk of all.

---

<sup>19</sup> Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.



## External issues

Effective adaptation by local government is inhibited by external barriers. For example, the complexity of climate impacts, and the uncertainty in projections of those impacts, can lead to hesitancy to take action. National policy and guidance can be poorly defined or non-existent, which makes it challenging to align local government responses. Existing legislation does not enable pre-emptive actions to reduce climate risks. It provides only partial guidance for local government on how to integrate complex adaptation plans into local regulations. At the time of writing, central government is working on new legislation that may help to address these issues.

## Internal issues

Local government approaches to adaptation can be fragmented. There is often a lack of clarity about roles, responsibilities, and legal obligations. Internal policies and strategies can be poorly aligned. There is a risk that council responses to climate change will remain ad hoc, inconsistent, siloed, and potentially deferred. This could result in inadequate and inconsistent policy and strategic direction, leading to inappropriate infrastructure planning and poor community outcomes. For example, government approaches to environmental management are based on Euro-centric perspectives, which exclude Māori values. There is a risk that maintaining environmental management based on these perspectives may result in continued worsening environmental outcomes. This is expanded on in the next focus area, Part 2 – Impacts on Māori.

The relationships between the councils and communities is complex. In some places the two are disconnected or strained by historic issues. This is particularly evident in council relationships with Māori communities. The need for sincere engagement is acknowledged as a high priority. There are many opportunities for the councils to nurture ongoing relationships and incorporate a wider range of community views in decision-making processes. To be effective, adaptation planning will require building trust with communities. This will involve purposeful and resource-intensive engagement with communities across a range of areas.

Capacity to undertake effective adaptation actions will be an ongoing issue for the councils. There will be pressure on staff resourcing because there is a limited pool of adaptation expertise in the country and hiring and developing staff skills can be challenging. Furthermore, operational costs are high for risk assessments and adaptation planning, and funding of adaptation implementation actions is not secured.

Climate change adaptation requires shared understanding of climate risks across the organisation(s). At present there is no consistent approach to the integration of adaptation objectives into the councils' planning processes. For example, climate risk assessments in infrastructure asset management plans are not standardised. This is due to the emerging nature of the issue and the fact there is no policy to require consistent consideration of climate change in planning and decision-making. Climate change risks may not be sufficiently acknowledged, monitored, or disclosed. The ownership of mitigation actions is not clearly reflected in organisational KPIs across departments or articulated in job descriptions.

Implementation of adaptation actions can be expensive and contentious. The Hawke's Bay councils' experience with adaptation implementation illustrates the costs and complexities involved in proactively managing risks.<sup>20</sup> There is currently no central government or EQC funding for pre-emptive climate change risk reduction, and communities may not be willing or able to fund the costs of adaptation. Roles and responsibilities for

---

<sup>20</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/challenges-with-implementing-the-clifton-to-tangoio-coastal-hazards-strategy-2120-case-study/>

management and funding of adaptation responses between district and regional councils are also unclear, which impedes implementation.

## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

Councils are building the foundations for the necessary leadership, relationships, internal processes, knowledge base, capability and capacity, and required funding to plan and implement effective adaptation actions.

The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee is a governance group comprising elected members from each council and equal tangata whenua representation from each council boundary (as distinct from hapū and iwi boundaries). This Committee has been established to provide governance oversight and consistency between Northland councils. It is supported by the joint staff group Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau, which has been collaborating since 2018 to develop shared approaches and resources to enable a consistent adaptation response. All Northland councils have recently committed funds to support adaptation planning activities, by creating new staff positions and/or allocating operational funding in their Long-Term Plans.

Priority action 2 is to embed Māori values in council processes. This involves co-design with iwi and hapū representatives of a decision-making framework for Northland councils based on Te Ao Māori concepts and values. It is hoped this framework will assist council staff to understand and consider mātauranga Māori when making decisions on projects, policies or plans that may impact on the cultural values of iwi and hapū. It is also proposed that the decision-making framework will support Māori and technical specialists to better understand council systems and processes in the context of decision-making. The framework must recognise that there are regional and local differences within Te Tai Tokerau that affect how local authorities operate.

The process of developing the framework is an opportunity to build better relationships between the councils and hau kainga, marae, hapū, iwi and Māori practitioners. The framework will be developed by engaging with those on the ground within Māori communities. Relationships built through this work could form the foundations for the community adaptation planning that the councils intend to start over the next 12 months, within priority action 1.

The councils have yet to review their policies to understand the gaps and conflicts between internal documents and adaptation needs. These reviews are in the planning stage at each council. A proposal for a regionally consistent climate change policy is in development.

Current council adaptation funding allows for a small number of community adaptation planning pilot projects to be delivered across the region in the next three years. Existing funds will also support a small number of iwi/hapū-led adaptation planning projects. Investigation into some priority issues, such as the impacts of climate change on biosecurity and biodiversity, are not yet funded.

There is poor understanding of, or planning for, the capital infrastructure funding required to reduce climate risks such as coastal hazards and flooding. There are already places where the current flood management infrastructure does not provide adequate protection for the required planning horizon. For example, some property owners in Ruawai are unable to obtain resource or building consents because they are located within a mapped hazard zone. This is causing widespread community concern. Central government is working on funding mechanisms for climate change adaptation, but the details and timeframes remain unclear. Many infrastructure costs will continue to be the responsibility of local government and communities for the foreseeable future.

## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

Our adaptation approach must be comprehensive and consistent. This requires coordination between the councils, and across council departments (e.g. civil defence, strategy, infrastructure, community engagement, RMA planning and consents teams). Such coordination requires leadership, dedicated staff, appropriate management structures and internal capacity-building. This should be supported by consistent internal strategies and policies. Many of the priority actions recommended in this strategy are designed to improve region-wide consistency.

Better processes to disclose climate risk, including the setting of KPIs and targets, will assist the councils to establish clear priorities for actions and risk reduction (priority action 40). A 'climate change maturity assessment' of policies will inform an improvement programme to support alignment and consistency within the councils. The development of an overarching regional policy framework will embed consideration of climate change impacts in council processes. Regular review and alignment with changes to central government legislation and guidance will be necessary. These issues are addressed in priority actions 38 and 39.

### Priority actions #38 and #39

#### 38 Joint climate change policy framework

**Aim:** Ensure consistent consideration of climate change issues across individual councils.

**Description:** Develop consistency between climate change policies that embed consideration of climate change impacts and adaptation responses in all council decision-making (which may also include council emissions reduction). This framework should define approaches and principles on data/information, definitions, reporting, standards and criteria.

#### 39 Policy review and improvement plan

**Aim:** Embed climate change objectives across individual council policies, strategies, plans and processes.

**Description:** 1) Identify improvement opportunities by undertaking a maturity assessment for each council of all relevant policies, strategies, plans and processes (may also include council emissions reduction), and 2) develop and deliver a climate change policy improvement plan that outlines a programme of policy updates to embed climate change objectives within a defined timeframe.

We will increase interaction with central government initiatives, such as input into the National Adaptation Plan or nationwide forums such as the Iwi Chairs Forum climate workstream. This will help us share resources and knowledge and improve alignment between national and regional/local scales. Ongoing advocacy and engagement to ensure Northland's voice is heard in the development of new government legislation or funding streams is essential. Where there are multiple agencies and organisations addressing adaptation issues (e.g.

drought response), better coordination between funding avenues and supporting agencies will make the process simpler and more efficient, with improved outcomes. This is addressed in priority actions 4–6 and 36.

### Priority actions #4, #5, #6 & #36

#### 4 Advocacy

**Aim:** Promote Northland's voice in central government policy and legislation development.

**Description:** Targeted advocacy with central government, regarding the development of new funding mechanisms and legislation.

#### 5 Central government engagement

**Aim:** Ensure Northland has input into central government adaptation policy and legislation development.

**Description:** Prioritise engagement and advocacy with MfE on development of new legislation including RMA reform, the National Adaptation Plan and the Climate Change Adaptation Act.

#### 6 National partnerships

**Aim:** Develop partnerships and knowledge sharing with regional and sector groups.

**Description:** Contribute to collaborative projects and partnerships, and leverage existing knowledge from other regions and internationally.

#### 36 Water resilience funding coordination

**Aim:** Improve coordination between agencies/organisations to improve water resilience outcomes.

**Description:** Improve coordination between agencies to build collaborative, aligned water resilience responses including: tangata whenua, CDEM, district councils (Four Waters Advisory Group), and agencies (FENZ, MPI, TPK, DIA).

Reducing greenhouse gas emissions is not the focus of this strategy. However, the transition to a zero-carbon society is important to Northland communities. The risks associated with this transition may need to be considered at the same time as adaptation planning. This is an opportunity for the councils to develop models that integrate transition risks (associated with emissions reductions and the move to a zero-carbon economy) with climate risk assessments and planning, including at the community scale. This consideration is likely to influence a number of priority actions (e.g. 9, 10, 16, 23, 24 and 39). Further participation in national research initiatives will enhance the councils' abilities to address transition risks (priority action 24). Northland Regional Council is planning a regional multi-sector approach to support the transition to a zero-carbon economy in Northland.

Effective adaptation requires ongoing investment in staff resources, training, operational funding and implementation. We could establish and resource a climate change management structure, with identified teams and roles, to develop organisational resilience and capacity. We could also work with hapū or iwi to develop

partnership structures to support the emerging requirements of climate change adaptation. Priority actions 43, 44 and 46 address these matters.

### Priority actions #43, #44 & #46

#### 43 Climate change teams

**Aim:** Establish appropriate portfolio, programme and project governance and management structures to build organisational capacities.

**Description:** Establish appropriate teams to deliver organisation-wide climate change implementation at each council, reporting to an appropriate level of management and given sufficient support.

#### 44 Staff resources

**Aim:** Ensure sufficient staff resourcing and capacity.

**Description:** Ensure sufficient staff resources are allocated to enable ongoing organisation-wide climate change response, including climate change focused roles and professional development and training.

#### 46 Inter-council collaboration

**Aim:** Continue to develop collaborative inter-council programmes and shared services.

**Description:** Continue to support and invest in the regional collaborative adaptation work programme, including establishing a process for sharing of resources between councils on specific projects, acknowledging the significant benefits and efficiencies of collaboration. Expand group to include Northland Transport Alliance.

Councils need to identify funding opportunities for the implementation of adaptation plans. These plans will be varied and may involve activities such as large infrastructure projects, nature-based solutions, changes to planning rules, property purchases, and increases in monitoring requirements. Potential funding options could include targeted rates, lease-back arrangements, low-interest loans, private-public partnerships, or alternative revenue streams. As the experience from Hawke's Bay shows, it is essential to define the adaptation management and funding responsibilities between the councils prior to implementation. Councils will need to identify existing funding streams and advocate for new, external sources, such as government grants and philanthropic trusts. Developing 'shovel-ready' infrastructure projects ahead of time allows the councils to take advantage of intermittent funding opportunities. Priority actions 4, 42 and 45 are relevant responses.

## Priority actions #4, #42 & #45

### 4 Advocacy

**Aim:** Promote Northland's voice in central government policy and legislation development.

**Description:** Targeted advocacy with central government, regarding the development of new funding mechanisms and legislation.

### 42 Alignment of adaptation plans

**Aim:** Ensure community adaptation planning processes are aligned with council funding processes.

**Description:** Develop processes to ensure alignment of community adaptation plans with council plans and policies, including long-term plans, infrastructure strategies and financial plans.

### 45 Adaptation funding

**Aim:** Identify and pursue adaptation funding avenues.

**Description:** Investigate and prioritise potential funding opportunities to enable the implementation of adaptation responses.

## 2. Impacts on Māori

Conversations about climate change between the councils and Māori are beginning to yield shared understanding and agreements. However, as the councils listen more closely to the voices of iwi and hapū, knowledge and insights about the real impacts of climate change from a Māori perspective will emerge. It is vital for the success of adaptation in Northland that the strategy evolves in an ongoing manner in response to insights from Māori.

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Hapū report that the realms of ngā Atua are degraded, the mauri has been destroyed and there is potential for detrimental environmental, cultural and social effects.<sup>21</sup> Some contend that local government decision-making (based on Euro-centric perspectives) has contributed to this environmental degradation.<sup>22</sup> Environmental management practices have not required the restoration of mauri, which is necessary for survival and a key part of future adaptation responses.

<sup>21</sup> Iwi and Hapū Environmental Management Plans: Patuharakeke, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Hine, Ngāti Hau, Ngāti Kurī (2018), Ngāti Rēhia (3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018) Whatitiri Resource Management Plan, Te Uriroro Hapū Environmental Management Plan & Whatitiri Hapū Environmental Plan, 2016. Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust Environs Holdings, Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao, 2011.

<sup>22</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 21. Royal, Te Ahukaramu Charles (Ed), *The Woven Universe: Selected Writings of Rev. Maori Marsden*, 2003. Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008. Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Nga Hapu o Whangarei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

Iwi and hapū representatives say their ability to successfully adapt is intimately connected with how local government decision-making over current and future environmental management takes place, and whether Māori are partners in that decision making.<sup>23</sup> Currently, local government decision-making does not give sufficient voice to the specific needs of tangata whenua.<sup>24</sup> There is inequity in the information local government relies on, from whom the information is sought, the resourcing of data collection, and how the information is valued. If we do not address how local government makes decisions, council responses to climate change may limit the ability of tangata whenua to adapt to climate change. If the ability of tangata whenua to participate in decision making is limited there is increased risk of maladaptation; and a perpetuation of existing inequalities and breaches of Treaty obligations.

For some time, iwi and hapū representatives and kaimahi have highlighted the pressure on their capacity to participate within local government processes and operations,<sup>25</sup> although the aspiration and necessity remains. The need to be involved in climate change responses by local government adds further pressure. There is an opportunity to build relationships between the councils and Māori and to enable tangata whenua to take the lead on adaptation planning for Māori communities. The complex and sometimes strained relationship between Māori and the councils creates a playing field that is not equal between Māori and Pākehā. This work presents a real opportunity for Māori to participate in council decision-making processes.

For many Māori, climate change is not an isolated risk but one that is intrinsically connected to other issues such as social development needs, housing, environmental degradation, and poverty. We have heard from hapū that climate change poses an existential risk and may result in an inability to enjoy the customary use of their whenua. Climate impacts on ecosystems have implications for spiritual connection to taonga and to whakapapa, as well as for practical issues such as food security.

Some hapū say climate change could exacerbate inequalities already faced by Māori and is likely to have disproportionately large impacts on Māori cultural values and community wellbeing.<sup>26</sup> This is because many Māori communities are exposed to physical climate effects, both geographically and economically. As expressed by Ngāti Rēhia, “the economic future of Ngāti Rēhia is linked inextricably to our natural and heritage resources.”<sup>27</sup>

## Exposure

There are many factors which indicate high levels of exposure for Māori communities. Due to land confiscation, land remaining in Māori ownership often has some form of natural hazard limiting development potential and increasing risk. Many hapū have strong cultural and historic affiliations with coastal areas projected to be impacted by climate change. This means that flooding, coastal erosion, storm surge and regular tidal inundation may disproportionately affect Māori communities. There are likely to be impacts on cultural infrastructure such as marae and urupā, places for food gathering such as mahinga mataitai, and places of cultural significance such

---

<sup>23</sup> Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau Risk Assessment Workshops with Māori, Feb 2020.

<sup>24</sup> Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Ngā Hapū o Whangarei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

Whatitiri Resource Management Plan, Te Uriroro Hapū Environmental Management Plan & Whatitiri Hapū Environmental Plan, 2016.

<sup>25</sup> Key issue raised in the Te Karearea Standing Committee of Whangarei District Council

Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Ngā Hapū o Whangarei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

Thomas Hohaia and Delaraine Armstrong, Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau meeting, 4 November 2021.

<sup>26</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 37.

<sup>27</sup> Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018

as wāhi tapu and archaeological sites.

Climate change will impact people's homes and incomes. Housing unaffordability and global pandemics contribute to greater numbers of whānau returning to their tūrangawaewae from other regions and nations, increasing the number of people exposed. Adaptive responses may be limited under current regulatory provisions because of natural hazard notations or high amenity notations, such as Significant Natural Areas, over land most suitable within their rohe for retreat.

Rural Māori are often not connected to reticulated secure and safe drinking water supplies and can be more susceptible to the effects of drought. Other less-visible effects may involve health impacts in rural areas; for example, an increase in mosquito-borne pathogens due to higher temperatures.

Indirect economic impacts may affect hapū and iwi. There may be changes to agricultural productivity. There is likely to be a loss of transport connectivity for settlements serviced by roads at risk of regular inundation due to sea level rise. In Whangaruru, for example, some school children are frequently unable to attend school because of flooding. The impacts this has on their education has been raised with elected members by local schools and by the children themselves.

### **Sensitivity and vulnerability**

Iwi and hapū in Te Tai Tokerau are vulnerable to climate change from a socio-economic and infrastructure services perspective. Across Tai Tokerau, Māori experience significant disparities in incomes and public services received. This disparity increases for Māori communities/whānau living in more geographically isolated places. Income disparity can reduce Māori communities' capacity to afford the costs of protecting against, avoiding, and recovering from droughts and extreme weather events. In terms of infrastructure vulnerability, services in outlying areas are more often affected by drought or weather events. For example, transport infrastructure in outlying areas tends to be more prone to flooding and slips.

Māori in Te Tai Tokerau are also largely employed in primary industries, a sector which is affected by weather extremes. Projected climate impacts such as extended droughts, fluvial flooding, salinisation of water tables, and tidal inundation of coastal land are likely to have direct impacts on the incomes of many whānau.

Risks related to the transition to a low-carbon economy are not often discussed alongside adaptation. However, emissions reduction policies have the potential to disproportionately affect Māori in Northland. Councils need to keep this in mind when working with Māori communities on adaptation planning, and should aim for the integration of adaptation, emissions reduction and carbon removal goals together.

Finally, climate change impacts are likely to threaten the taonga and natural systems that iwi and hapū whakapapa to. The inseparable links between Māori and the environment will mean that projected climate change impacts on natural systems, including on individual species, biodiversity, invasive pests and pathogens, ecosystem function, waterways, and coastal systems, will have cultural and personal impacts on Māori.



## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

For Māori, mātauranga was developed from the need to live sustainably and in harmony with the environment and seasons to avoid ‘severe and drastic consequences’.<sup>28</sup> Successful management was reliant on the strength of whānau and hapū to work together for the collective good. It was reliant on the relationships forged by whanaungatanga and kotahitanga. These are relevant starting points for discussions with Māori communities so they can draw on their kōrero tuku iho, or traditions, to guide their pathways planning.

Hapū and iwi aspire to reaffirm their mātauranga, tikanga and pūrākau – their own frameworks of reference – as they consider and plan for climate change.<sup>29</sup>

Hapū and iwi are well-known for intergenerational thinking when planning – looking to the guidance of their ancestors to plan for the wellbeing of their mokopuna and generations not yet born. This is reflected in how indigenous knowledge systems adapt to the changing world. Further to that, hapū and iwi environmental planning documents articulate the expectations that hapū and iwi have of local government responses to climate change.<sup>30</sup> These include:

- not increasing vulnerability and risk through council operations
- planning for and providing adequate infrastructure to cope with climate change (community-based, minimal-impact design solutions being preferred)
- ensuring communities are prepared for the negative impacts of climate change and doing effective adaptation planning, while being placed to take advantage of the opportunities
- recognising the impacts of climate change that will affect hapū and iwi, and incorporating that into strategic planning
- moving toward an integrated catchment-based management approach
- providing resourcing to enable hapū planning and responses
- incorporating mātauranga into local government strategies and plans.

Hapū and iwi are also taking action themselves. They use mechanisms such as iwi and hapū management plans to present policy positions and work with regional councils, crown research institutes, government departments, universities and other organisations to contribute to regional, national and international climate change policies and processes.

Northland councils want to listen to, and learn from, iwi and hapū to reach agreement on respectful and appropriate ways to be guided by Māori perspectives in adaptation responses, both at a strategic governance level and operationally. Hapū and iwi have indicated support for the collaborative adaptation approaches being developed. At the time of writing, a hapū-based kairangahau (researcher) is reviewing examples of successful adaptation engagement processes with Māori across the country. This work will add to the repository of information and tools that support hapū and iwi adaptation responses and assist the councils to engage with Māori communities in meaningful ways when planning.

---

<sup>28</sup> Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018

<sup>29</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 37.

<sup>30</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 39; Ngāti Hine Environmental Management Plan, 2008. Page 82; Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018; Te Aupōuri (DRAFT)(2018).

In section 2.1 – ‘Governance and management’ we refer to the development of a decision-making framework for local government that is based on Te Ao Māori, which addresses priority action 2. The intention is to build an understanding of cultural differences into council climate change adaptation processes. The framework will be accompanied by a suite of tools to support its implementation.

Relationships between the councils and iwi and hapū are at different stages of maturity. Influences include the quality of legacy relationships, multiple overlapping hapū and iwi interests where Treaty Settlement processes add complexity, and the quality of current relationships with staff and leadership.

### Priority actions #1 & #2

#### 1 Tangata whenua involvement

**Aim:** Ensure tangata whenua are appropriately involved in adaptation decision-making.

**Description:** Ensure inclusive processes for tangata whenua representation at all stages of adaptation decision-making, including providing appropriate resourcing, supporting training and developing targeted programmes.

#### 2 Embed Māori values in council processes

**Aim:** Ensure Māori values and worldviews are included in council processes and decision-making relating to climate change.

**Description:** Co-design with iwi and hapū representatives of a decision-making framework based on Te Ao Māori concepts and values. The framework will include implementation tools and will recognise that there are regional and local differences within Te Tai Tokerau that inform how local authorities operate.

The establishment of the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee is a significant step forward in collaborative co-governance, with equal numbers of elected and tangata whenua representatives from each council. Te Ao Māori decision-making frameworks draw on kōrero tuku iho and pūrākau to guide engagement with Māori communities. This work responds to priority actions 1 and 2 and should enable stronger foundations to undertake other priority actions, including 7–10 and 32–36.

Through whakapapa and whanaungatanga, the close social ties and cultural networks of Māori communities enable whole-of-community responses to build resilience, such as those shown during the Covid-19 response. In terms of kaitiakitanga, kotahitanga and whanaungatanga, some hapū see opportunities for collaboration within and between hapū for the collective good.<sup>31</sup> These values, and priority actions 9 and 10, will support Māori-led adaptation responses.

<sup>31</sup> Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018

## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

For Te Tai Tokerau councils to address the consequences of climate change, we must acknowledge issues specific to Māori. The stresses and hazards climate change bring are part of a changing array of challenges threatening Māori cultural integrity and continuity. Councils need to work alongside Māori to develop a response to climate change that respects the diverse needs and aspirations of Māori. This might be through establishing inclusive structures and processes to enable co-design of adaptation planning programmes, as well as supporting Māori communities to develop their own responses. We understand that for some Māori communities, there is anticipation and openness toward the opportunities that climate change might present, as their histories tell examples of their tupuna successfully adapting to and using change for their betterment.<sup>32</sup>

### Priority actions #9 & #10

#### 9 Māori adaptation impact assessment

**Aim:** Improve bi-cultural understanding of climate risks and consequences.

**Description:** Work with tangata whenua to undertake iwi- and hapū-focused risk assessments, including communicating risks from Te Ao Māori perspectives, identifying risks associated with climate hazards, impacts of adaptation responses and limits to Māori adaptive capacity. This may include direct impacts on cultural values such as wāhi tapu; as well as compounding risks, such as interactions between councils and government legislation resulting in unintended consequences, or barriers for Māori adaptation responses.

#### 10 Iwi/hapū-focused adaptation

**Aim:** Enable iwi/hapū-led adaptation planning at appropriate scales.

**Description:** Work with tangata whenua to develop a programme to facilitate hapū or iwi-led holistic climate change adaptation plans to integrate multiple climate risks as well as other community objectives. Draw on approaches to adaptation engagement with Māori that have been successful in the past. This may include provisions to support iwi/hapū with risk assessments and technical analysis as well as enabling data sovereignty.

Locally appropriate risk assessments underpinned by tikanga Māori will enable Māori perspectives on change, risks, vulnerabilities and consequences to be incorporated into adaptation decisions. Councils also need to acknowledge the role of planning rules and connecting infrastructure (e.g. roads and water networks) to enable successful adaptation for Māori communities. These are outside the control of iwi and hapū. Better involvement of Māori in infrastructure planning would help to bridge this gap.

At different stages of developing this strategy, hapū and iwi reiterated the need for tools to consider climate risks and impacts on resources, papakāinga, and marae under threat. They want to be able to develop appropriate responses that navigate a changing legislative environment. As part of the wider programme of adaptation, we

<sup>32</sup> Ngāti Hine Environmental Management Plan, 2008. Page 81. Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. Page 37.

should develop a toolkit and resources to enable hapū-led adaptation at the local scale. This will help communicate climate risk in meaningful ways to Māori communities. Councils can work with local knowledge-holders to combine Western science and risk analysis with indigenous knowledge, and apply this in appropriate planning contexts. There is opportunity to support iwi and hapū to develop their own adaptation plans with tools, hazards advice and other support, while ensuring data sovereignty. Councils could support the development of these tools and their application in priority actions 9 and 10.

The inability to fund implementation of adaptation plans or other adaptation responses is an ongoing issue. The impact of this is exacerbated in small rural Māori communities, which may be unable or unwilling to pay for the costs of the long-term measures required to protect community values exposed to climate hazards. Advocacy and engagement with central government is essential to secure funding for equitable and proactive adaptation measures. Addressing the inability of smaller Māori communities to finance adaptation measures is essential, and alternative approaches such as philanthropic or international funding may be an option.

---

### 3. Coastal communities

#### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Northland has a coastline of over 3,200km. Many towns, settlements and cultural sites are located on the coastal fringe.

Sea level rise is projected to result in ongoing permanent loss of land, through coastal erosion and tidal inundation. It will also increase the frequency and severity of periodic storm surge events.

An initial coastal hazard risk screening study identified about 70 towns and localities where properties and assets are projected to be significantly affected by coastal flooding, erosion, and permanent inundation due to sea level rise. Both Māori and non-Māori coastal communities will be highly impacted. Many Māori communities, particularly in the Far North, occupy land nearby or on coastal floodplains, with several Marae projected to be directly impacted by coastal hazards. Farming communities will be highly impacted as a significant amount of agricultural and horticultural land is in low-lying, coastal flood areas. There are also rural areas under pressure from development within coastal hazard zones.

Council infrastructure such as roads, water supply, stormwater and wastewater networks, and coastal stopbanks, will be impacted by sea level rise. In many places the road network is located on estuarine fringes, such as in the Hokianga. Road connectivity will be increasingly impacted by inundation at high tide. The location of large council infrastructure, such as wastewater treatment plants, within the coastal environment will be increasingly impacted by rising groundwater levels. This will impact on the effectiveness of land disposal systems.

Coastal protection infrastructure operated by the councils, such as sea walls, will become increasingly difficult and expensive to maintain. In some places, sea walls and stopbank systems have been funded privately or directly by communities, and the increasing cost to maintain and/or upgrade them is becoming unaffordable. Higher tidal boundaries mean that the impact of river flooding is exacerbated, resulting in more days where roads are impassable. This impact is already being experienced in places like Punuruku and Panguru.

Most coastal communities do not have town water supplies, with households relying on tanks and shallow bores. Both of these sources of water will come under pressure with climate change due to increased drought and sea level rise. These communities are also often reliant on septic systems. Rising groundwater levels could impact on the effectiveness of waste disposal systems. Sea level rise will impact coastal agricultural areas as groundwater salinity impacts the ability to draw water for stock or irrigation, and low-lying land is affected by salinity.



**Tasman Heights, Ahipara**

## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

There is a comprehensive programme of mapping coastal inundation and completing erosion hazard assessments across the region. These are being used to develop climate risk assessments and plan adaptation programmes. Councils are working together to develop an aligned region-wide programme, working with communities to develop local adaptation plans in at-risk areas (see ‘Coastal adaptation programme’ in the box below).

### **Coastal adaptation programme (see priority actions 29 and 30)**

Northland councils are developing a work programme to address climate change risks to coastal communities. The programme will set out guidance on ways councils, communities, tangata whenua and key stakeholders can co-develop community adaptation plans.

The preferred, best-practice engagement and decision-making approach to be used in the coastal adaptation programme is adaptive pathways planning, which is described in the 2017 Ministry for the Environment document ‘Coastal hazards and climate change guidance for local government’. This process enables communities to be intimately involved in developing adaptation plans for their own communities through a structured process. It uses community panels to collaboratively determine adaptive pathways using risk assessments, engineering designs, options assessments, and prioritisation processes.

The result will be a flexible, long-term adaptation plan for each community, signed off by a governance body and the relevant councils. While this approach will be appropriate for larger communities, we will also work with smaller communities to develop and implement community-led adaptation plans at the local or hapū scale. Funding for pilot community engagement projects has been allocated in the 2021–31 Long-Term Plans for all Northland councils.

Following the endorsement of community adaptive pathways plans, councils will be responsible for monitoring environmental indicators and delivering actions when specific trigger points are reached, such as changing land-use zoning or delivering new infrastructure. To ensure the plans are consistent with other organisational activities, councils will also need to embed community adaptive pathways

Current responses to coastal erosion and inundation by councils are guided by the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, which states a preference for nature-based solutions. Private landowners are responsible for building and maintaining coastal protection for their individual properties, which can give rise to a patchwork of consented and unconsented coastal management approaches. Sea walls are generally only constructed by councils where infrastructure is at risk from coastal erosion, although there are situations where councils have constructed coastal protection on behalf of private landowners. Beach nourishment has been undertaken at a small number of sites, including recent work at Matapouri. Nature-based solutions, such as the Northland Regional Council’s CoastCare coastal restoration programme, can help reduce the immediate risk of coastal erosion while providing additional biodiversity benefits.

## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

There is an opportunity to develop an integrated approach to coastal management to ensure the long-term success of coastal adaptation responses. If we improve knowledge of coastal hazards and processes, particularly in complex systems like estuaries and agricultural drainage areas, we will improve our ability to understand and plan for future coastal impacts.

Working with coastal communities to plan how to reduce the risks posed by climate change is an emerging role for local government. The ways the councils work with communities, tangata whenua and key stakeholders to develop community adaptation plans will evolve. Community coastal adaptation plans are flexible plans that outline short-, medium-, and long-term actions and transitional pathways for the coastal community area. An adaptive pathways approach, similar to the 'dynamic adaptive policy pathways' (DAPP) process suggested in government guidance<sup>33</sup>, is our preferred engagement, decision-making and planning approach. The programme of region-wide coastal adaptation planning is included in priority actions 29 and 30.

### Priority actions #29 & #30

#### 29 Coastal adaptation programme

**Aim:** Develop a programme of coastal adaptation planning projects aligned with community needs.

**Description:** Develop a region-wide coastal adaptation programme, identifying key locations, timeframes and engagement methodologies, using recommended considerations in *Coastal Community Profiles* and *Adaptation Engagement Framework* reports.

#### 30 Coastal adaptation planning projects

**Aim:** Enable flexible, planned adaptation responses to coastal hazards by co-developing adaptation plans with communities.

**Description:** Deliver projects in the coastal adaptation programme. Undertake community pre-engagement to confirm site selection and appropriate engagement methodology. Work alongside communities to understand, plan and implement adaptation responses by co-developing community adaptation plans in at-risk areas, following the recommendations in *Coastal Community Profiles* and *Adaptation Engagement Framework* reports.

The resulting community adaptation plans will need to integrate with council processes and the regulatory environment. Implementation of these plans may challenge existing council processes. Councils will need to assess integration issues when the adaptation actions are identified, and the preferred pathways are decided. For example, some adaptation actions may require rules and policies to enable land-use planning changes or to provide for or change infrastructure. Where climate change risks require changes to operational council activities (such as infrastructure plans or environmental management programmes) the implementation of adaptation

<sup>33</sup> Ministry for the Environment (2017) <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/coastal-hazards-and-climate-change-guidance-for-local-government/>

plans will need to be embedded in each council's Long-Term Plan funding models, financial and infrastructure strategies, and work programmes.

## 4. Water availability

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Climate projections indicate that periods of low rainfall combined with high temperatures and evapotranspiration rates<sup>34</sup> are likely to result in droughts of increasing regularity and severity in Northland. Reductions in spring and winter rain are also likely to impact communities and the primary sector.

Fifty per cent of Northlanders are not connected to a municipal water supply (in the Kaipara this is closer to 70%, and in the Far North this is around 65%). Many homes and marae also have outdated or poorly functioning water collection, storage, and treatment facilities. Some council water supply networks are vulnerable to extended dry periods, especially those that rely on run-of-river sources or shallow bores. Climate change-related reductions in the reliability of summer rainfall will impact the already limited water resilience of affected properties. Increased volumes of rain falling during high-intensity weather events will also make it more difficult to catch and store water offline, as a larger holding capacity will be required. Heavy rainfall can create sedimentation and erosion issues, impacting on the quality for both rural and town water supplies.

Surface water and groundwater extraction is already highly- or over-allocated in several catchments, with little head room for increased water takes by the primary sector or by industry. Competing interests for water, such as new horticulture, alongside new minimum environmental flow requirements and allocation limits, mean that opportunities to extract freshwater from natural systems for use by the primary sector and by industry will become increasingly limited. Some groundwater supplies, such as the Aupōuri aquifer, are now supplying large quantities of bore water for horticulture crops – the science to support allocation of water from such sources can be very complex and this is compounded by the uncertainty around future effects of climate change.

In many coastal communities water is supplied via rainwater tanks with back-up bores which are reliant on shallow aquifers over summer. The impact of over-extraction during dry periods already creates significant salinity issues in shallow bores. With drier conditions and increased demand, water availability limits are likely to be reached more often. This effect also applies in places where irrigation is affected by groundwater salinity.

### WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

Water flow monitoring is conducted across the region as part of resource consent and state of the environment monitoring. Drought forecasting models have been developed to help predict drought in the near-term. As an emergency response, civil defence teams may provide backup water supplies in the event of droughts. Iwi and hapū networks have provided essential services by supplying emergency water to outlying communities.

District councils are responsible for the provision of drinking water to communities. Town water supplies have varying levels of reliability under drought conditions. Some supplies, such as Whangārei, have large storage facilities, dedicated catchments and plans in place for alternative supply options. However, other town supplies which rely on river takes or bores experience water shortages more regularly under drought conditions. While

---

<sup>34</sup> Evapotranspiration is the process where water held in the soil is gradually released to the atmosphere through a combination of direct evaporation and transpiration from plants (NIWA, <https://niwa.co.nz/climate/information-and-resources/drought/charts>).



the Three Waters Reform process will significantly change the management arrangements for water supply (and wastewater), the risk of prolonged drought conditions under climate change scenarios is unresolved.

Building long-term water resilience for communities outside areas with council water supplies has been largely uncoordinated. Numerous government agencies provide funding assistance, including the Ministry of Business Innovation and Employment (MBIE), the Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) and the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA), as well as philanthropic trusts. Many of these agencies assist with funding for improved water collection, storage and treatment facilities at the household or marae scale. Northland Regional Council has allocated funding to help improve water resilience at the household level by funding improvements to private water collection, storage and treatment. More must be done. A government-funded programme is also operating that will see the construction of at least two large reservoirs to enable irrigation for horticultural use.

### WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

There is an opportunity to support early drought responses and long-term water resilience by providing better information, and through the use of models such as drought forecasting. We could include research on the interaction between population growth, water extraction demand, groundwater recharge, and sea level rise to improve understanding of water availability in coastal townships and agricultural regions. Ongoing investments in infrastructure to improve the reliability of town water supplies will be necessary to mitigate drought risk. In addition, demand reduction measures, including community education, are likely to be required.



**Drought, Takou Bay area**

It is a priority to assist rural communities and marae to establish water resilient infrastructure. Existing efforts to enable appropriate and equitable water supply solutions will be more effective with better coordination of multiple funding sources. These actions relate to priority actions 23, 35 and 36.

### Priority actions #23, #35 & #36

#### 23 Community drought adaptation opportunities

**Aim:** 1) Improve understanding of the impacts of drought on rural and community water supplies, and 2) identify opportunities to support community adaptation to drought.

**Description:** Collate data on drought vulnerability, and develop community vulnerability assessments. (N.B. The responsibility for this item may be impacted by the Three Waters Reform process.) Investigate priority hapū and community needs and existing adaptation/water resilience programmes/actions; and clarify opportunities for the Councils to add value in facilitating adaptation planning.

#### 35 Water tank assistance

**Aim:** Improve community water resilience through water tank programmes.

**Description:** Provide assistance to communities to install water collection, storage and treatment with a focus on community resilience, e.g. NRC's water tank programme.

#### 36 Water resilience funding coordination

**Aim:** Improve coordination between agencies/organisations to improve water resilience outcomes.

**Description:** Improve coordination between agencies to build collaborative, aligned water resilience responses including: tangata whenua, CDEM, District Councils (Four Waters Advisory Group), and agencies (FENZ, MPI, TPK, DIA).

Councils may be able to assist primary producers through water supply. Potentially, they can support research and provide advice on alternative, drought-resilient crops and livestock, and on incorporating alternative irrigation designs and additional supportive land-use practices. This support could involve targeted engagement and seeking external funding with farming communities and primary industries stakeholders to identify opportunities. Kaipara District Council's Kaipara Kai and Kaipara Water projects (resourced by MBIE's Provincial Growth Fund) are examples of these opportunities in action.

If rural fires become more commonplace, it is likely that increased volumes of dedicated firefighting water storage will be needed on rural properties.

## 5. Natural hazards

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Flooding due to heavy rain is one of the region's most commonly experienced natural disasters. Climate change projections indicate that heavy rain events are likely to become more frequent and intense, potentially resulting in increased damage to homes, properties and livelihoods. Flood management infrastructure is largely managed by the councils, including urban stormwater systems, river flood protection works such as stopbanks and spillways, and agricultural flood management schemes. All of these services will be impacted by increases in heavy rainfall events, effectively reducing the levels of service provided, and requiring further investment in risk management responses.

Sea level rise will also exacerbate river flooding in coastal communities, and future coastal protection works may create drainage problems behind coastal structures. Other hazards that may be influenced by climate change, that we have very little information for, include extreme windstorms and tornados, geotechnical stability and slips, and wildfire.

Landslides and slips regularly have major impacts on regional transport routes, with a number of key state highways cut due to slips in recent years (e.g. Mangamuka Gorge and Kawakawa). Projected higher intensity rainfall is likely to result in higher likelihoods of geotechnical failures, as were seen following the July 2020 floods across Northland.

While few serious wildfires have impacted Northland in recent years, future climate projections show an increased likelihood of fire weather due to the combination of prolonged drought, extended high temperatures and heatwaves, high pressure systems and strong winds. Northland's exposure to risk from wildfires may be increasing due to the expansion in fire-prone land-uses such as exotic forestry, alongside urban expansion into at-risk areas.

### WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

Flood risk has been modelled and mapped across the entire region using new LiDAR data. This can be used to understand risk, help prioritise work programmes, and inform land-use planning rules. Local flood models are being developed to inform stormwater planning and long-term adaptation infrastructure, such as the Whangārei Blue/Green Network Strategy. Flood warnings are informed by river monitoring data and flood models, with emergency responses coordinated by civil defence teams.

The district councils manage urban and road flooding through the provision of stormwater infrastructure. When planning and designing new or replacement infrastructure, design specifications need to factor in the climate change projections for rainfall and sea level rise. However, additional solutions to address shortfalls in existing infrastructure will be required if climate projections are realised.

A large flood management programme will increase flood protection for priority at-risk townships including Kaitiāia, Ōtiria/Moerewa, Kawakawa, Kāeo and Whangārei. The programme involves community consultation,

and the planning, designing, and construction of river management structures such as stopbanks, flood walls and spillways.

### Priority actions #18 & #19

#### 18 River flood risk assessment

**Aim:** Improve understanding of river flood risk under climate change and plan future river flood management programmes.

**Description:** Undertake risk assessments for communities exposed to flooding using region-wide flood model projections, and use this information to prioritise future flood management programmes. Ensure all river flood models include consistent climate change factors, including rainfall intensity and sea level rise.

#### 19 Coastal hazards

**Aim:** Improve understanding of coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.

**Description:** Continue to improve coastal hazards assessments, including methods for understanding impacts, considering the combination of river and coastal flooding, sea level rise and ex-tropical cyclones, and coastal erosion.

The Northland Transport Alliance is working on a transport resilience project to identify key sections of the roading network at risk from slips and landslides. This will inform forward work programmes to reduce risk at sites across the region.

### WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

Using risk assessments to better understand flood risk to communities across the region will help the councils to plan future work programmes for river flood management. We also need to better understand the interaction of river and coastal flooding in estuaries to anticipate the potential impacts of ex-tropical cyclones (priority actions 18 and 19).

There are opportunities to reduce exposure to flood risk by adopting different approaches, such as ‘making room for the river’ and ensuring floodplains are free from inappropriate urban development. In some areas, investment in river management infrastructure will be required to reduce flood risk to existing communities (priority action 33). For large urban areas such as Whangārei, a multi-hazard, strategic approach will be required to address coastal inundation and river flooding concurrently. This might be achieved by working together to implement the Blue-Green Network Strategy (see priority action 34).

### Priority actions #33 & #34

#### 33 River flood management

Aim: Reduce flooding risk to communities through river management.

Description: Continue to deliver prioritised river flood management projects, and plan and secure funding for future flood management implementation across the region.

#### 34 Coordinated flood risk management

Aim: Improve coordination between the District and Regional Councils in pluvial and fluvial flood management.

Description: Work together to promote projects with multiple partners and co-benefits (e.g. the Blue-Green Network involving WDC and NRC).

We can improve our ability to reduce risks and improve community resilience by building a more comprehensive database of hazards (e.g. landslides and wildfires) under climate change scenarios (priority actions 20 and 21). We can use downscaled national models (such as the Crown Research Institute Scion's assessment of wildfire risk under climate change scenarios) to enable more detailed assessment of potential exposure and key sites of concern. This can support setting of informed policy (e.g. vegetation setbacks, fire-fighting access, and water storage on properties) alongside emergency preparedness and planning with Fire and Emergency New Zealand. Close work with civil defence teams can also help bridge the gap between forward adaptation planning and hazard event responses (priority action 31).



**We will work with Fire and Emergency New Zealand to manage increased wildfire risk.**

### Priority actions #20, #21 & #31

#### 20 Land hazard data

**Aim:** Improve understanding of land hazards under climate change scenarios.

**Description:** Collate existing information on geotechnical instability and slips in a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. GNS, Waka Kotahi, NTA) to further develop information and data.

#### 21 Wildfire hazard data

**Aim:** Improve understanding of wildfire risk under climate change scenarios.

**Description:** Collate information on projected fire hazards and at-risk landscape information into a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. FENZ, Scion) to further develop information and data.

#### 31 Civil defence

**Aim:** Integrate civil defence and community adaptation planning objectives.

**Description:** Ensure alignment of civil defence response plans, climate risk assessments and adaptation planning.

## 6. Ecosystems and biosecurity

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

It is expected that a shift towards a more extreme, hotter climate will bring profound and lasting changes to the ecological composition and character of Northland's natural environment. Northland's indigenous ecosystems have not evolved to cope with projected environmental changes such as extreme heat, drought, and wildfire. The resulting impacts on endemic temperature-sensitive species, such as altitude-limited plants and animals, may result in localised extinctions in the absence of human intervention. The rate of change also means species have limited ability to adapt, migrate or evolve response mechanisms.

Past environmental degradation worsens the impacts of these changes. The resilience and mauri of the indigenous ecosystems has deteriorated for generations due to wetland and swamp drainage, deforestation and vegetation clearance, intensifying coastal development and invasive species damage.

In 2020, the Department of Conservation released a five-year Climate Change Adaptation Action Plan<sup>35</sup>, alongside a supporting science plan<sup>36</sup>. The science plan notes the paucity of data to assist understanding and

<sup>35</sup> <https://www.doc.govt.nz/our-work/climate-change-and-conservation/adapting-to-climate-change/>

<sup>36</sup> <https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/our-work/climate-change/climate-change-adaptation-science-plan.pdf>

planning for climate impacts on natural heritage: “There are significant gaps in knowledge that limit our ability to both adapt our management and understand how climate change will affect the resources we manage. This is both in terms of current state, but also future risk. Amongst other effects, this includes how climate change will alter native species distributions, timing of phenology, prevalence and distribution of animal and plant pests...”.

Specific impacts of climate change on ecosystems in Northland are not well documented in the scientific literature. The resulting scientific uncertainty makes it difficult to prioritise adaptation responses such as monitoring, pest control and conservation interventions, given the burden of existing biosecurity and conservation threats and the limited resources available. While there is an urgent need to protect and restore remaining habitat, there is a corresponding need to be aware of future threats. We must prioritise our efforts to ensure future risks are managed alongside current issues.

Other relevant policies and plans addressing the impacts of climate change on ecosystems and biodiversity include the upcoming National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity, and the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy Te Mana o te Taiao (2020)<sup>37</sup>. The latter includes actions to ensure that potential impacts from climate change have been integrated into ecosystem and species management plans and strategies. It also calls for improved understanding of the potential for carbon storage from the restoration of indigenous ecosystems. While the Department of Conservation (DoC) has a central role to play, regional councils will have an important function to implement and monitor actions, particularly for ecosystems that fall outside the national conservation estate. Northland councils will also need to improve understanding and set strategic direction around support for ecosystem restoration under their respective emissions mitigation and carbon sequestration targets and work programmes.

## Biosecurity

Being at the northern tip of an island nation means many species of indigenous flora and fauna are likely to migrate southwards to cooler climates, leaving voids that may be filled by exotic invasive species. These pests are likely to expand via new overseas introductions and the expansion of existing ranges. Impacts may include terrestrial (e.g. heat- and drought-tolerant invasive plants, insects and other animals, and pathogens), aquatic (e.g. aquatic weeds, parasites of native fish) and coastal/marine ecosystems (e.g. invasive crustacea and smothering algae). Climate-induced reduction in species resilience may also see a rise in the impacts of plant and animal pathogens, parasites, and insect infestations.

## Coastal

Northland's coastal ecosystems are unique in the country. They are sensitive to climate impacts such as atmospheric and marine heatwaves, disturbance events from coastal storms and rising sea levels. Intertidal species have been shown to suffer high mortality in heatwaves, such as the massive shellfish die-offs seen in recent summers. These events are projected to increase in frequency. Marine heatwaves are likely to have significant impacts on near-shore habitats such as coral reefs and macroalgal communities.

Open coast areas are likely to suffer increased storm damage. This is already an issue for vulnerable ground-nesting birds such as fairy terns. Northland also hosts important migratory bird nesting sites including the sandy Eastern beaches and numerous estuarine and harbour environments, including the Kaipara and Rangaunu harbours. These coastal floodplains are likely to see a gradual change in vegetation and ecology due to sea level

---

<sup>37</sup> [doc.govt.nz/nature/biodiversity/aotearoa-new-zealand-biodiversity-strategy/](https://doc.govt.nz/nature/biodiversity/aotearoa-new-zealand-biodiversity-strategy/)

rise, affecting available habitat for birds such as the Australasian bittern. Higher rates of sedimentation due to higher intensity rain events will impact estuarine and near-coast habitats, as well as freshwater systems.

Coastal squeeze is a real issue for Northland's coastal habitats. In many cases the need for ecological communities to migrate landward due to sea level rise may be restricted by existing land uses and coastal stopbanks. It is likely that the construction of new coastal protection structures and floodgates will further prevent re-establishment of coastal ecosystems such as mangroves, saltmarsh and tidal habitats, including inanga spawning sites on private land. Many of these ecosystems play critical roles as habitats and are important carbon sinks.

## Freshwater

Northland freshwater ecosystems are extremely sensitive to climate change, given the current state of water quality and ecological health. Freshwater and riparian habitats are already extensively degraded, with water extraction during dry periods, eutrophication, high summer temperatures and high sediment loads currently affecting ecological communities. These impacts are expected to worsen given projected increases in mean temperatures, the frequency of heatwaves, and extended dry periods. Stratification<sup>38</sup> of water bodies can lead to extreme oxygen cycles, which can lead to ecological shifts from macrophyte to cyanobacterial/algal dominated communities. This is made worse by eutrophication caused by runoff from surrounding land use, impacting a wider range of ecological communities. More high intensity rainfall events could also worsen the impacts of sedimentation, which is already one of the region's most serious water quality issues.

Wetland habitats in Northland are adapted to periodic dry conditions. However, the increasing frequency and severity of drought is likely to place additional pressures on species which require permanent moisture. Wetland habitats are currently restricted by existing pressures from grazing and land conversion. This reduces resilience to weather events. Northland's diverse dune lakes are also threatened, and many of these host rare species which are especially vulnerable to changes in temperature and rainfall patterns.

## Forests

New climatic conditions are likely to have significant impacts on forest ecosystems, including taonga species like kauri. The impacts of drought have been documented to affect kiwi food foraging and kauri snail mortality. However, measures to improve the resilience of native forests through control of browsing pests are reported to reduce the impact of drought on vegetation. This results in better food access for kiwi than in forests with higher pest loads.

The southwards migration of many indigenous forest species due to gradual mean temperature rise is likely to occur. This will lead to changes in ecosystem dynamics and open the way for a shift in ecological composition, favouring exotic and invasive species. Vegetation communities limited to higher altitudes may face localised extinction due to the limited availability of cool mountain climates to migrate toward.

---

<sup>38</sup> When water bodies, such as lakes, 'divide' into different layers of density due to differing temperatures.



Disturbance events through wildfire and severe windstorms may accelerate the shift in forest community composition, with fast-growing warm-adapted exotic species potentially dominating. An increase in extended dry periods and wildfires is also likely to impact the distribution of species and may ultimately affect the composition of vegetation communities.

#### **Creating resilient Kiwi habitat through pest control**

A Whangārei Heads biosecurity programme helped create a positive outcome for its resident kiwis. During the 2020 drought, when many kiwi populations elsewhere in Northland were suffering due to poor foraging conditions, kiwi in a Whangārei Heads reserve showed improved foraging and access to water. This shows that improving the resilience of our forests through pest control will provide direct, positive benefits for native fauna.

### **WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?**

Councils already face huge challenges managing and monitoring existing pressures on ecosystems. There is a need to provide better resourcing to investigate, plan for, and deliver programmes to address climate impacts on the environment.

While climate change risks to the natural environment are acknowledged as being regionally significant, little is known of the detailed impacts on specific habitats and ecosystems. This knowledge gap means we do not have pre-emptive monitoring programmes in place to assess ongoing changes due to climate impacts. Nonetheless, existing environmental monitoring programmes such as state of the environment reporting, targeted monitoring of water quality, flow regimes in rivers and aquifers, and assessments of wetlands and coastal habitats all provide important data to assess long-term trends.

Northland has a well-established biosecurity programme that monitors and responds to ongoing threats. However, little is known of potential biosecurity risks under future climate change scenarios for terrestrial, freshwater or marine environments. In some open ecosystems such as marine environments, border controls are difficult or impossible to impose, making monitoring and control challenging.

Existing regional and district planning aims to reduce further environmental degradation and ensure the gradual restoration of natural values. However, the current planning structure does not effectively address the threats to natural values due to climate change.

## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

Investigations and research will improve the baseline understanding of climate change risks to the natural environment and ecosystems. This will reduce uncertainty and assist the councils in prioritising at-risk species and developing intervention plans. Possible investigations include the identification of potential biosecurity threats, hotspots and key indicator species. This would enable the development of targeted monitoring and early interventions (priority action 16). Investigations are required to identify at-risk species and ecosystems to help develop monitoring and response plans across a wide range of ecosystems (priority action 17). Modelling of potential impacts on the ecological parameters of at-risk species is needed to understand which species are likely to face increasing threats due to climate change. This would enable the councils to build ecological resilience and protect and establish refuge locations which will be critical to threatened species. In extreme cases in the future, it may be necessary to translocate species and establish genetically viable populations in southern locations.

### Priority actions #16 & #17

#### 16 Biosecurity risk assessment

**Aim:** Improve understanding of climate change-driven biosecurity threats and develop monitoring and response programmes.

**Description:** Undertake preliminary high-level investigations into future biosecurity threats (both sleeper and offshore), aligned with national research programmes and information from agencies (e.g. MPI and MoH). The scope may include: human pathogens, primary industry pests and pathogens (agriculture, horticulture and aquaculture) and environmental pests (freshwater, terrestrial and marine). Develop prioritised monitoring and response programmes for relevant target species.

#### 17 Ecosystem and biodiversity risk assessment

**Aim:** Improve understanding of climate change impacts on biodiversity and ecosystem function and develop monitoring and response programmes.

**Description:** Undertake preliminary high-level investigations identifying major at-risk species and ecosystems, followed by targeted research into key ecosystems. Develop monitoring and response plans for key species, habitats and ecosystems, including wetland/peat, terrestrial, marine, freshwater, lakes, coastal dunes, and foreshore and estuarine ecosystems.

Increased use of nature-based solutions to address coastal erosion is an example in which ecological and aesthetic co-benefits can occur while achieving short and medium-term hazard mitigation. The existing Northland Regional Council CoastCare programme supports communities to undertake dune restoration in places subject to coastal erosion, while protecting the nesting habitat of migratory birds. Alignment of these projects with adaptation plans using recent coastal erosion data would help improve adaptation outcomes (priority action 32).

Better understanding of potential species migration requirements would assist planning of landscape-scale management such as establishing habitat corridors. Improved use of spatial planning tools may assist with the development of planning rules to build the resilience of natural systems; for example, land-use rules to maintain viable populations of saltmarsh habitat where this is threatened by coastal squeeze (see priority action 26).

### Priority actions #26 & #32

#### 26 Spatial planning

**Aim:** Embed climate change risks and adaptation planning into strategic spatial plans.

**Description:** Undertake region-wide spatial planning to highlight risks and opportunities for strategic land-use planning that enables adaptation responses and enhances wellbeing. (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)

#### 32 Nature-based solutions

**Aim:** Promote nature-based solutions as interim hazard-reduction options for coastal impacts.

**Description:** Continue to support community dune restoration and enhancement projects such as the Coast Care programme in line with regional adaptation planning, and as alternative interim measures in place of hard protection structures.

The carbon-storage function of coastal blue carbon ecosystems (mangroves, saltmarsh and seagrass) also needs to be considered, with the potential for habitat expansion and restoration to be funded through carbon credits (Northland Regional Council has an action to investigate this in its climate change strategy).

Northland councils can develop clear policy on how to account for the carbon-storage and offset potential of ecosystem restoration activities to guide decision-making and encourage nature-based solutions. Where coastal stopbanks impede the landward migration of coastal habitat, infrastructure adaptation planning should consider habitat and carbon storage values in options assessments.

## 7. Public infrastructure

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Public infrastructure managed by the councils provides many of the basic functions that enable our communities to function. It includes a wide range of built assets such as: stormwater, wastewater and water supply (e.g. reticulation, storage, pump stations, treatment plants, devices and ponds); roads, culverts and bridges; flood management schemes and assets; agricultural drainage schemes; and coastal management structures. Other associated 'natural assets' include open drains, waterways, buffering, receiving environments and protective reserves. Non-council-owned infrastructure such as electricity distribution and supply networks form an essential part of the supply chain for some council assets such as pump stations and wastewater treatment plants.

Significant climate change hazards and stressors which are likely to impact infrastructure include: increased rainfall intensity, higher temperatures/heatwaves, permanent tidal inundation and groundwater salinity due to sea level rise, coastal erosion, coastal flooding, severe windstorms, and increased drought frequency and severity. Impacts can also compound across hazards and infrastructure types, creating further unexpected issues. An example of this is the impact of high sedimentation on water treatment plants due to high intensity rainfall after drought.

The level of the councils' understanding of climate change impacts on infrastructure varies between infrastructure types and hazards. There are many opportunities for improvement. In some cases there is good information on climate hazards, but the consequences are poorly understood (e.g. the impact of higher tides with sea level rise on stormwater drainage). Where there is uncertainty in the hazard data (e.g. the relationship between increased rainfall intensity and the geotechnical stability of roads) understanding is further limited.

Requirements for infrastructure upgrades to address climate change projections can be difficult to calculate given the high levels of uncertainty. This makes it difficult to develop cost projections. Balancing future planning requirements against the need to maintain current levels of service and replace aging infrastructure can be challenging in the absence of adequate climate risk information and planning tools.

Key risks for some major infrastructure groups are described below.

### Water supply

Northland traditionally has a high mean annual rainfall spread over the entire year with a peak in winter, which allows urban water supplies to rely on consistent rainfall to maintain dam storage and extraction from river flows. Under climate projections, seasonal variations and increases in the frequency and severity of drought conditions are expected to create issues for water supply infrastructure.

A demonstration of Northland's sensitivity to prolonged periods without significant rainfall occurred in the 2020 drought, during which all three Northland districts imposed restrictions, and emergency water provisions were required in the Far North, including in the towns of Kaitiāia and Kaikohe. Following the flooding events that broke the drought, large amounts of sediment entered water treatment plants, resulting in cuts to water supplies in some areas. Drought can also affect non-council supplies, with many households running out of tank or spring water during the 2020 drought, resulting in prolonged waiting times for rural tanker supplies. Marae and rural communities were particularly affected, and a coordinated effort was required to provide emergency water supplies to communities.

Coastal communities relying on shallow groundwater to supplement tank supply (e.g. Matapouri and Russell) have experienced saline intrusion due to high levels of extraction during low rainfall periods, and limited groundwater recharge. Sea level rise is likely to exacerbate this occurrence and could potentially render the groundwater permanently undrinkable in some areas. Continued impacts on communities without council water supplies may result in increased requirements to provide a reticulated supply, or to improve emergency supply facilities.

### **Wastewater, stormwater and flood management**

As rainfall intensity increases with climate change, what are currently infrequent minor flooding events are projected to become more regular events. This will affect councils' ability to provide expected levels of service for stormwater and wastewater. Other impacts related to rainfall intensity include the increase in sediment entering stormwater networks, causing pipe blockages, and an increase in the frequency of stormwater ingress into wastewater pipes systems, causing overloading of networks and exceeding the capacity of treatment systems.

While climate change projections are built into specifications for new assets, the existing stock of aging infrastructure is unlikely to be able to cope with the combined pressures of climate change, population growth and urban redevelopment. Retrospective upgrades of urban wastewater and stormwater networks to meet future needs are often prohibitively expensive.



**Turntable Hill flooding**

Stormwater services are also impacted by sea level rise. In some Northland townships (e.g. Whangārei and Dargaville), stormwater networks are located on low-lying coastal plains, with tidal tailwater conditions restricting drainage even at current day high tides. This can result in surface flooding at high tide, causing significant damage to property, which will be worsened with sea level rise. In townships where coastal flood protection is required, investment in stormwater pumping infrastructure may be necessary to remove ponded stormwater behind stopbanks. Ongoing investment in short to medium-term adaptation solutions such as sea walls can create the risk of incentivising development in areas that face future exposure to sea level rise. This may result in higher long-term risk for communities.

### **Raupo land drainage scheme**

Since 1905 the Raupo land drainage scheme and stopbank system in Kaipara District has managed river and coastal flooding and catchment drainage for 8,200ha of highly productive land, including the township of Ruawai and settlements of Raupo and Naumai. Once Kahikatea and Kauri forests and swampland, the majority of this land is well below sea level. The drainage scheme consists of 130 kilometres of drains, 70 kilometres of stopbanks, 52 saltwater floodgates, three flood detention dams, and one pumping station (as the system relies mostly on gravity). Management of the scheme is predominantly funded by a targeted rate for farmers and residents residing in the drainage district.

Even with the flood management and drainage system in place, coastal hazards mapping shows extreme exposure for Ruawai, Raupo and Naumai residents and for public infrastructure. A high proportion of the roading network, wastewater systems, and water reticulation systems is exposed to 50 year and 100 year coastal flooding and permanent tidal inundation. Kaipara District Council and the Ruawai community are limited in their ability to fund future costs to upgrade the stopbanks and drainage systems to continue to manage coastal flooding, river flooding and permanent tidal inundation.

Most Northland councils operate flood management and/or agricultural drainage schemes that may be affected by increased rainfall intensity and sea level rise. For example, Kaipara District Council operates and maintains 30 drainage districts. Major schemes in Northland include the Raupo land drainage scheme (Kaipara District Council), the Hikurangi flood management scheme (Whangārei District Council), and the Awanui flood protection scheme and coastal stopbanks (Northland Regional Council). The ability of these schemes to continue functioning efficiently in future climate scenarios is poorly understood. Climate change impacts will likely make overtopping events more regular, which reduces the economic value of the schemes and requires investment. Urban flood protection schemes (e.g. Whangārei, Kaitiāia and Kāeo) will also be impacted, with further infrastructure likely to be required to maintain current levels of service.

### **Roading**

Northland's roads are already affected by hazards such as river flooding (e.g. SH1 Whakapara), slips and geotechnical instability (e.g. SH1 Mangamuka gorge), coastal erosion (e.g. SH12 Ōpononi) and frequent coastal flooding (e.g. West Coast Rd, Panguru). In some areas local roads are also affected by tidal inundation, which impedes drainage from rain events (e.g. Punuruku).

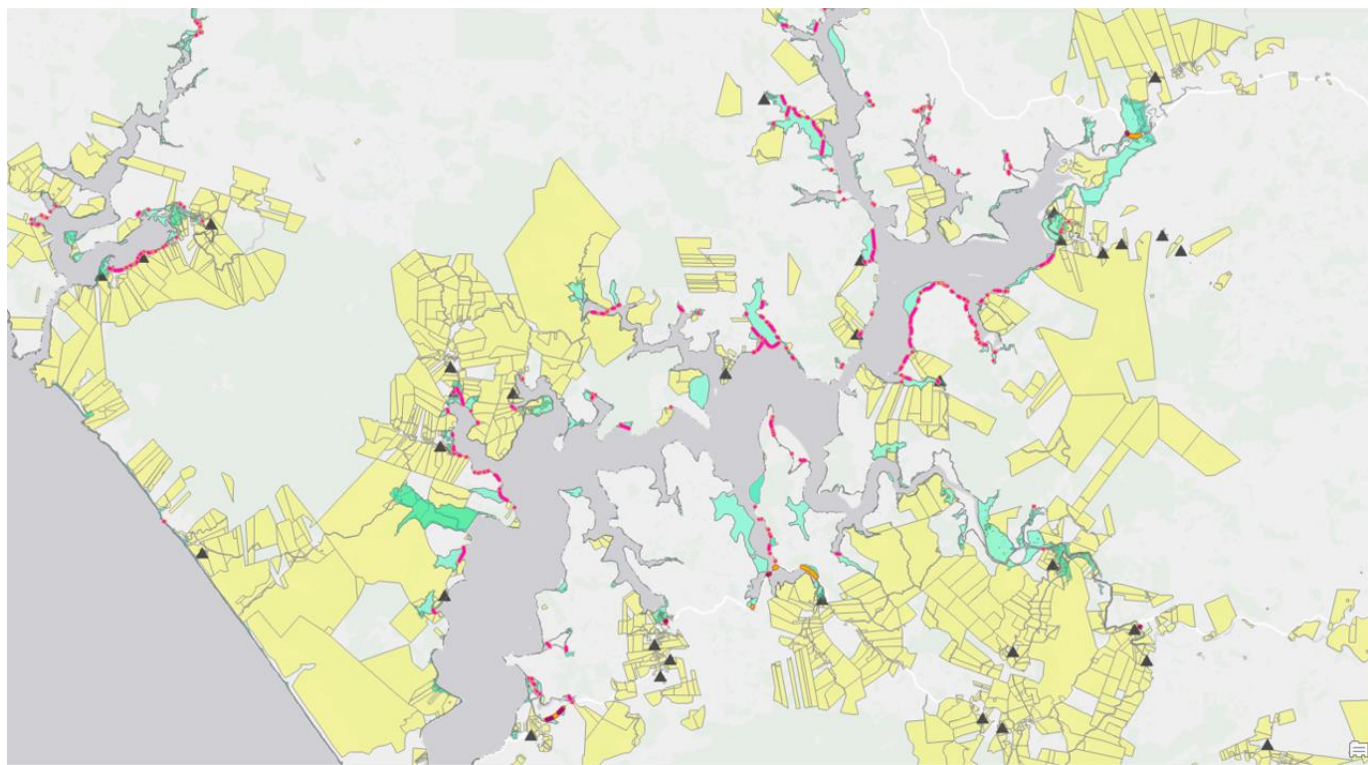
Climate projections indicate that these impacts will all increase in frequency and severity over time. A 2019 study by NIWA showed that Northland has around 10% of the total length of roads across New Zealand which are

projected to be exposed to coastal flooding under sea level rise scenarios<sup>39</sup>. Analysis of existing roads in the northern Kaipara using recent modelling shows that up to 80km of roads could be inundated by regular high tides due to sea level rise by 2130. In a 100-year coastal flooding event, nearly 100km of roads are projected to be flooded to a depth of more than one metre. This indicates that interruptions to road connectivity, especially in outlying areas, are likely to become more regular and prolonged.

Mapping of permanent tidal inundation with sea level rise shows that many sections of Northland's roads will require raising or relocation. In some areas such as the Hokianga, roads are already affected by spring tides, so the projected impacts of sea level rise will affect the connectivity of communities over time. The costs of implementing effective adaptation solutions may be unaffordable for the councils, and poses a risk that these communities, which have high Māori populations, are likely to be disproportionately affected.

## Waste disposal

### Road inundation due to sea level rise – Hokianga



The map above shows Māori freehold land (yellow) and marae (black triangles), overlaid by projected extents of high-tide inundation by 2130 – land (green) and roads (pink/orange). Connecting infrastructure (such as roading) is likely to play a major part in climate adaptation responses for remote communities in this and similar areas.

<sup>39</sup> <https://deepsouthchallenge.co.nz/wp-content/uploads/2021/01/Exposure-to-Coastal-Flooding-Final-Report.pdf>

There are several landfill sites in Northland that may be subject to coastal or river flooding and erosion. These include both formal landfills (often operated and maintained by the councils) and informal sites (e.g. illegal or ad-hoc dumps), as well as unidentified sites. While some obvious coastal sites such as Pohe Island (Whangārei Harbour) are assessed to have a low risk, a number of historic landfills have been mapped as higher risk due to their proximity to areas prone to coastal hazards.

## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

### Information and planning

Detailed region-wide and catchment-specific models and information on river flooding and coastal hazards have been developed and are continually refined by Northland Regional Council. This information helps inform the specifications for new infrastructure, such as road levels and drainage requirements for subdivisions. The district councils are investing in models to help understand climate risks. For example, Whangārei District Council is developing a stormwater network model that will enable the development of engineering adaptation options. This information will aid community adaptation planning for the delivery of the Blue-Green Network Strategy, which aims to reduce river and coastal flood risk and provide transport connectivity and waterway restoration outcomes.

Councils are now using hazard information to undertake high-level climate risk assessments on infrastructure assets. The coastal adaptation programme (which is currently being developed) uses recent coastal hazard assessments to document at-risk three waters and roading infrastructure in coastal communities. The Northland Lifelines group is conducting a lifelines infrastructure risk assessment, and the Northland Transport Alliance is developing resilience assessments for roads. Nonetheless, infrastructure risk assessments in Northland largely remain at a relatively low ('risk screening') level of resolution. Mostly they do not consider multiple hazards, impacts on network connectivity, differential consequences across infrastructure types, or estimated costs of mitigation or risk management.

### Risk management actions

Engineering designs for new council infrastructure generally incorporate design guidance requiring allowance for climate change, for instance stormwater drainage capacity (extreme rainfall), or tailwater levels and road surface height (sea level rise). Adaptation responses for existing infrastructure are generally limited to improvements during asset replacements and upgrades, such as bridge soffit levels.

Water supply infrastructure is in different stages of adaptation maturity. In Whangārei district, an adaptive planning approach has been taken to anticipate future drivers of demand for the city's water supplies. While this has largely been to address anticipated population growth, demand level indicators have been used to trigger different programme requirements. These include increasing efficiency of the current system, demand management, planning for future needs through engineering assessments, and obtaining resource consents for water takes and land purchases for water storage. In other areas, the focus has been on addressing immediate needs and reducing the risk of water shortages. The Three Waters Reform process should address some of the existing shortfalls in water supply infrastructure.



The region has a 30-year programme of river flood management work, focusing on priority at-risk locations (e.g. Awanui catchment/Kaitiāia, Moerewa, Kāeo and Whangārei). The programme will reduce risk for communities through the design and construction of stopbanks, spillways, benching and stream maintenance. Continuing this programme into the future is vital to reduce risks to communities at risk from flooding under climate change scenarios (priority action 33).

### Priority action #33

#### 33 River flood management

**Aim:** Reduce flooding risk to communities through river management.

**Description:** Continue to deliver prioritised river flood management projects, and plan and secure funding for future flood management implementation across the region.

Risk mitigation of coastal flooding and erosion includes the use of sea walls, rock revetments and stopbanks. In general, the councils do not build coastal protection unless council-owned assets are at risk, and the adoption of nature-based solutions, like those promoted by Northland Regional Council's CoastCare programme, are often favoured due to the many co-benefits provided. In some areas such as Ruawai and Awanui, flood management schemes originally designed for agricultural purposes protect small rural townships from regular coastal inundation, although coastal hazard assessments indicate that the level of protection will not continue with future sea level rise.



Tangowahine flooding



## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

### Information and planning

Infrastructure planning is a significant council responsibility that has a major role in enabling communities to adapt. It is essential that infrastructure climate response plans are developed in alignment with community needs and adaptation aspirations (priority actions 15 and 28).

#### Priority actions #15 & #28

##### 15 Infrastructure planning

**Aim:** Ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning.

**Description:** Develop and implement processes/policy to ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning, activity management plans and infrastructure strategies, including a monitoring and evaluation plan. This should include consistent application of climate risk assessments and adaptive management approaches. (N.B. This should also include emissions reductions considerations – see priority actions 11 and 12.)

##### 28 Embed community adaptation plans

**Aim:** Ensure community adaptation plans are embedded in regulatory instruments.

**Description:** Investigate and develop methodologies to embed adaptive pathways plans into planning regimes, including using environmental cues to trigger changes to planning rules. (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)

There is an opportunity for the councils to invest in regionally consistent infrastructure climate risk assessments using improved information on climate hazards and infrastructure assets. High resolution data, such as stormwater pipe invert levels, can enable the development of accurate models that inform engineering options assessments and forward planning. Good understanding of the impacts of climate change hazards and stressors on assets will help asset planners develop potential infrastructure solutions under climate change scenarios, which are aligned with community needs and other socio-economic factors (e.g. population growth).

A good first step will be to develop aligned climate risk assessments across all infrastructure departments that demonstrate expected costs and damage loss assessments (priority actions 11–14). Further investigations into the interactions of multiple hazards and stressors on infrastructure is also required.

### **Priority actions #11, #12, #13 & #14**

#### **11 Consistent infrastructure risk assessment criteria**

**Aim:** Improve consistency and quality of climate risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure.

**Description:** Develop consistent standards and processes for undertaking risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure (e.g. agreed criteria, hazard scenarios and damage functions).

#### **12 Infrastructure risk assessments**

**Aim:** Improve knowledge of climate risk for council assets and infrastructure.

**Description:** Undertake infrastructure climate risk assessments for each council and include documented climate risks in infrastructure and financial strategies.

#### **13 Roding risk assessments**

**Aim:** Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to roading infrastructure.

**Description:** Develop a regional roading network resilience plan, assessing critical roads at risk from landslides and slips, with the potential for future assessment of flooding and coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.

#### **14 Lifelines risk assessments**

**Aim:** Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to lifelines infrastructure.

**Description:** Develop a lifelines utilities infrastructure risk assessment, working with Northland Lifelines Group members' spatial data.

Planning appropriate infrastructure to cope with climate impacts will require a focus on risk management approaches for existing infrastructure. This requires scenario planning to anticipate future needs and avoid over-investment in short-term solutions. For example, this could involve moving from a risk elimination strategy (e.g. coastal stopbanks with stormwater pumping) towards a risk acceptance and avoidance strategy (e.g. long-term changes to land use, reduced levels of service and/or managed infrastructure withdrawal). Infrastructure planning approaches should limit reactive or business-as-usual investments that ignore long-term trends due to climate change. This is particularly relevant when climate hazards are experienced as rare events, such as coastal flooding due to cyclones.

## Risk management actions

Once a reasonable understanding of risks is achieved, pre-feasibility investigations for cultural, engineering, and consenting limitations, alongside cost analyses, can help inform options analyses. These can be used in community engagement for decision-making, either through a community adaptation planning process or on a project basis.

Improved funding models will help embed adaptation in infrastructure planning. These models should include the benefits of proactive risk management in business cases and allow for flexibility in timing of implementation. Improved processes for cost forecasting and inclusion in financial and infrastructure strategies will also be required. Better understanding of the risks to infrastructure will improve the councils' ability to disclose their financial risks and better consider climate change when developing funding applications and business cases (priority actions 40 and 41).

### Priority actions #40 & #41

#### 40 Climate risk disclosure

**Aim:** Ensure transparent monitoring and reporting of climate risks and responses.

**Description:** Clear disclosure and reporting of climate risks, policy maturity, and progress on response actions in alignment with the recommendations of the Taskforce on Climate-related Financial Disclosure. This may include actions such as ensuring climate change is included in council risk frameworks, financial reports and infrastructure strategies; regularly reporting to auditors; and establishing KPIs for senior managers and CEOs.

#### 41 Climate change in business cases

**Aim:** Embed climate change considerations in business cases and procurement policies.

**Description:** Ensure disclosure of climate change risks in business cases, proposals and procurement documents, including long-term risks such as sea level rise.

Examples of future infrastructure adaptation planning projects may include the following.

#### Roading

- Develop options to resolve long-term permanent tidal inundation issues, including a prioritisation plan/methodology and costings for road relocation or raising.
- Complete a comprehensive coastal erosion assessment detailing required protection for hotspots, and likely impacts on cultural, community and environmental values.
- Determine requirements for bridge and culvert upgrades, considering the impact of sea-level rise on coastal floodplains.

### **Wastewater**

- Research the impact of higher temperatures on wastewater treatment, especially open ponds (including methane emissions).
- Investigate the impacts of increases of higher intensity rainfall on network and treatment plant capacity.

### **Stormwater and flooding**

- Develop models to show the impact of tidal inundation on drainage in urban areas.
- Improve the integration of compound coastal and river flooding data, including a worst-case cyclone flooding model.
- Undertake better modelling of increased rainfall intensity on urban stormwater networks.



**Coastal slip at Kerikeri Basin, below pā site**

# Part 3. Enabling effective adaptation

## Future directions

Responding to the impacts of climate change will affect many activities the councils carry out, so it is vital to have widespread commitment and alignment across (and between) organisations. Climate change acts as a ‘risk multiplier’ and will likely create the need for different types of adaptation responses, depending on a wide range of activities. Some responses, such as regulatory policy development and environmental management programmes, may require major changes or entirely new activities. Others, such as infrastructure planning, will need to adjust risk management settings.

We have assessed adaptation needs across council activities with the aim of prioritising adaptation actions based on a) the level of understanding of climate risk and impacts, and b) the level of responsibility for the councils to manage the risk. The assessment highlighted areas that urgently required further investigation (such as impacts on biosecurity and biodiversity, and infrastructure assessments); areas where the councils need to do planning and engagement, such as coastal adaptation planning and impacts on Māori; and areas where continued action is required, such as river flood management works.

One recurring theme in adaptation is the need to bring communities along on the journey. This is consistent with the purpose of local government. Developing good relationships and trust with communities is a necessary condition for doing adaptation planning work, particularly where the impacts on communities may be big, or perceived negatively – for example, where adaptation involves progressively restrictive planning rules, or large costs to pay for infrastructure. Using appropriate community engagement processes, as well as decision-support tools that enable community ownership of the process, can help resolve complex and controversial issues.

Working collaboratively with Māori as tangata whenua – and demonstrating the principles of partnership, participation and protection – at all stages of adaptation is vital for the councils. Co-developing holistic adaptation responses to climate change presents an opportunity for the councils to work with Māori on a broad range of environmental, social and cultural issues, across many council functions.

## Four areas of action

We have identified priority actions to enable local government to carry out effective adaptation in Northland. These are grouped into four areas:

1. Grow relationships (priority actions 1–8)
2. Improve knowledge and understanding (priority actions 9–24)
3. Reduce risk and vulnerability (priority actions 25–36)
4. Build capacity (priority actions 37–46).

Recommended actions are summarised below, and are described in detail in Part 5 – ‘Priority actions’, with additional information on lead organisations, delivery timeframes and funding status.

## 1. Grow relationships

- Partner with tangata whenua at all stages of adaptation planning, ensuring Māori voices are included in decision-making, including supporting hapū and iwi to lead local adaptation planning.
- Facilitate collaborative planning with local communities, by developing trust and long-term relationships and by helping residents and businesses pursue opportunities for resilience.
- Communicate with communities about adaptation information and processes, and listen to their feedback, particularly from farming and coastal communities.
- Work across departments in each council to integrate climate change priorities and ensure alignment between activity areas.
- Continue to coordinate adaptation programmes between the councils and share resources.
- Work together across different levels of government, and sectors including Māori, communities, businesses and research institutes.
- Advocate and engage with central government agencies on adaptation funding, legislation, policy and support.

## 2. Improve knowledge and understanding

- Identify key knowledge gaps and develop targeted investigations and research.
- Expand the existing knowledge base through research, assessments and investigations.
- Work with iwi and hapū to enable Māori traditional knowledge to guide the councils' climate change approaches.
- Work with communities to understand risks and the range of potential solutions, and to pursue current and future opportunities.
- Monitor, evaluate and report on climate risks, community vulnerability and environmental indicators.
- Develop research partnerships with institutes and collaborate on externally funded research.

## 3. Reduce risk and vulnerability

- Pre-emptively plan adaptation responses at the local scale, working with communities, tangata whenua, infrastructure providers, government agencies and stakeholders, using appropriate engagement processes and decision-support tools.
- Use adaptation planning engagement and education processes to empower communities to proactively pursue new opportunities, increase resilience and build adaptive capacity.
- Develop rules and policies that reduce risk and enable appropriate and flexible adaptation responses.
- Plan for, and invest in, long-term risk management infrastructure and solutions for a wide range of climate risks.
- Adopt appropriate nature-based responses and interim measures.



#### 4. Build capacity

- Demonstrate leadership through effective and collaborative governance.
- Build internal staff capacity and resources, through specialist teams and across/between organisations.
- Develop consistent climate change policy between the councils, and integrate climate change objectives across council policies, strategies and processes.
- Provide sufficient funding for adaptation activities, including investigations, planning, engagement, and implementation where appropriate.
- Identify collaborative and external funding opportunities.



Riparian planting by a dune lake

# Part 4. An evolving strategy

## The need to respond to change

This strategy needs to be a living document to remain flexible and responsive to new information, feedback, and changes in the legislative and legal environments, or other major events.

We acknowledge that engagement with tangata whenua and our communities will take time. As we have wider and deeper conversations with those affected by climate change, our understanding of the consequences of climate change and the challenges of adaptation will improve. Updates to the strategy and projects in Part 5 – ‘Priority actions’ will need to be made as required.

The strategy will also need to be reviewed after the release of new government legislation or guidance, such as the upcoming National Adaptation Plan and RMA reform, including the Climate Change Adaptation Act, or other major changes such as local government reform. New scientific evidence or case law may also prompt the need for a review, as might regular updates aligned with the councils’ long-term planning processes. Changes could range from minor alterations to major overhauls, and these will require different approaches.

## Review process

Below we outline an ongoing process for the strategy and priority actions to be updated in response to changing needs. Reviews are grouped into three categories.

1. **Technical:** new technical reports or updates to existing reports.
2. **Minor:** operational and minor updates to the strategy and/or priority actions.
3. **Major:** substantive review and major changes to the strategy and/or priority actions.

Reviews can be triggered by different events or requests, with varying levels of permitted changes, and corresponding engagement and approval processes as needed. At a minimum, the strategy will be reviewed at three-yearly intervals prior to Long-Term Plan consultation. Other reviews will occur in response to feedback, legislative change and other events. Updates to the priority actions will be made as required. Where possible, reviews will be combined for efficiency.

Below is an anticipated timeframe for required reviews.

YEAR	TRIGGER	REVIEW TYPE
As required	New technical reports or changes to existing ones	Technical reports
As required	Updates and additions to priority actions	Minor
As required	Tangata whenua and community feedback	Minor
		Major
2022	National Adaptation Plan	Minor
2023–24 (estimated)	Climate Adaptation Act Built and Natural Environments Act Spatial Planning Act	Major
2024	Long-Term Plan review	Major
2024 (estimated)	Three Waters Reform	Major
2026	Second National Climate Change Risk Assessment	Major
(Uncertain)	Local government reform/amalgamation	Major
2027	Long-Term Plan review	Major
2028	Second National Adaptation Plan	Minor

Details of the three review types are listed in the table below.

1. Technical reports	
<b>Intent:</b>	Provide new technical reports or updates to existing technical reports
<b>Triggers:</b>	Iwi/hapū or community feedback Joint committee requests Staff recommendation (e.g. new information)
<b>Changes permitted:</b>	Updates as and where required New technical reports and data
<b>Out of scope:</b>	Changes impacting scope, intent or direction of strategy and priority actions
<b>Engagement required:</b>	Relevant tangata whenua representatives Must be evidence based
<b>Approval:</b>	Approval by relevant sponsoring GMs Presentation to Joint Committee
2. Minor updates	
<b>Intent:</b>	Operational and minor updates to strategy and/or priority actions
<b>Triggers:</b>	Iwi/hapū or community feedback Joint committee requests Staff recommendation New or updated information (strategy) Changes in project scope, details or timeframes, additional funding for new projects (priority actions)
<b>Changes permitted:</b>	Minor editorial changes Addition of paragraphs, sentences or other minor elements (strategy) Alterations to details in descriptions or timeframes (priority actions) Addition of new projects (priority actions)
<b>Out of scope:</b>	Removal of actions Alterations to structure or foundational elements
<b>Engagement required:</b>	Relevant tangata whenua representatives
<b>Approval:</b>	Approval by relevant sponsoring GMs Presentation to Joint Committee (approval by individual councils not required if changes are operational)
3. Major review	
<b>Intent:</b>	Allow for substantive review and major changes to strategy and/or priority actions
<b>Triggers:</b>	Long-Term Plan process New government legislation or guidance New case law Additional scientific or other evidence Local government reform Three Waters reform Iwi/hapū or community feedback Joint committee request Staff recommendation
<b>Changes permitted:</b>	Major editorial changes Alteration to structure or foundational elements

### 3. Major review (cont.)

<b>Changes permitted contd:</b>	<p>Addition of new sections and headings</p> <p>Addition of new text, diagrams, photos</p> <p>Removal or alteration of existing text</p>
<b>Out of scope:</b>	N/A
<b>Engagement required:</b>	<p>Wide engagement with tangata whenua (initially via representative groups, but in some cases wider engagement may be required)</p> <p>LTP review to be completed in year prior to LTP adoption, in conjunction with community consultation</p> <p>Elected members of all councils</p> <p>Relevant council staff and management</p>
<b>Approval:</b>	<p>Approval of review process by joint committee required</p> <p>Approval by sponsoring GMs of all councils</p> <p>Endorsement by joint committee</p> <p>Adoption by all Northland councils</p> <p>All exceptions to be noted in strategy and priority actions</p>

## Reporting

### Governance

Progress on priority actions will be reported at each Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee meeting. Progress will also be reported to individual councils and committees where relevant.

### Iwi and hapū

Reporting to iwi and hapū will be via existing council representative groups, unless otherwise requested. A process for iwi and hapū engagement will be developed as part of priority actions 1, 2 and 10.

### Public communications

A joint regional communications group has been formed to help support the ongoing, public-facing nature of the strategy and the collaborative adaptation work programme. A communications plan for the strategy, as well as for ongoing region-wide adaptation, is being developed as part of priority actions 7 and 8.



# Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy Appendix One

## Part 5 – Priority actions by Tai Tokerau Councils

The Priority Actions list below sets out Northland council actions. It is important to note that there will be other parties involved, who may sometimes lead the delivery of actions. This could include our hapū and iwi partners, government agencies and other sectoral groups such as farmers, insurance providers, civil defence teams, social support providers and landowners.

A number of resourcing commitments have already been made by Northland councils, which address the majority of actions. This is indicated by the term ‘Existing funding’ in the Funding status column below. Funding decisions will be made by individual Councils where actions need more resourcing. Timeframes are an indication of urgency and relative priorities, reflecting interdependencies between activities. Priority statuses are subject to review pending external community engagement through the Long Term Plan and Annual Plan processes.

‘Indicative resources required’ column shows estimated total cost per annum (p.a.) and staff resourcing.

Estimated total costs p.a.: \$=<\$10k, \$\$=\$10-100k, \$\$\$=\$100-500k, \$\$\$\$=\$500k-1M, \$\$\$\$\$=\$1M+

Staff resourcing: P =low, PP=moderate, PPP=large staff effort required

Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
Grow Relationships	Tangata whenua	1	Tangata whenua involvement	Ensure tangata whenua are appropriately involved in adaptation decision-making.	Ensure inclusive processes for tangata whenua representation at all stages of adaptation decision-making, including providing appropriate resourcing, supporting training and developing targeted programmes.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		2	Embed Māori values in council processes	Ensure Māori values and worldviews are included in council processes and decision-making relating to climate change.	Co-design with iwi and hapū representatives of a decision-making framework based on Te Ao Māori concepts and values. The framework will include implementation tools and will recognise that there are regional and local differences within Te Tai Tokerau that inform how local authorities operate.	Led by Whangarei District Council	In progress	Mar 2022	\$\$ P	Existing funding
	Governance	3	Clarify funding responsibilities	Clarify adaptation management and funding responsibilities between councils.	Develop shared understanding on clear responsibilities for the funding and management of adaptation responses, especially between regional and district councils (e.g. for coastal structures).	Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee	Feb 2022	End 2022	P	Existing funding
		4	Advocacy	Promote Northland's voice in central government policy and legislation development.	Targeted advocacy with central government, regarding the development of new funding mechanisms and legislation.	Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee	Feb 2022	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
		Nation-wide engagement	5	Central government engagement	Ensure Northland has input into central government adaptation policy and legislation development.	Prioritise engagement and advocacy with MfE on development of new legislation including RMA reform, the National Adaptation Plan and the Climate Change Adaptation Act.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	P
	6		National partnerships	Develop partnerships and knowledge sharing with regional and sector groups.	Contribute to collaborative projects and partnerships, and leverage existing knowledge from other regions and internationally.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
	Communications		7	Community awareness	Ensure widespread community awareness and interaction on adaptation issues.	Develop a communications and engagement plan to address the needs of the Te Tai Tokerau Adaptation Strategy, including media releases, publication of key documents, and internet and social media presence.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	End 2021	P
		8	Public access to adaptation documentation	Improve public access to adaptation planning processes, information and documents.	Establish a facility to enable community access to adaptation information, such as reports, research, interactive maps, strategy documents, programme details, and community meeting minutes, etc.	All Councils collaboration	Jan 2022	End 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
	Improve knowledge and understanding	Impacts on Māori	9	Māori adaptation impact assessment	Improve bi-cultural understanding of climate risks and consequences.	Work with tangata whenua to undertake iwi- and hapū-focused risk assessments, including communicating risks from Te Ao Māori perspectives, identifying risks associated with climate hazards, impacts of adaptation responses and limits to Māori adaptive capacity. This may include direct impacts on cultural values such as waahi tapu; as well as compounding risks, such as interactions between councils and government legislation resulting in unintended consequences, or barriers for Māori adaptation responses.	All Councils collaboration	May 2022 depending on tangata whenua capacity	TBA	\$\$ PP

Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
	Public infrastructure	10	<b>Iwi/hapū-focused adaptation</b>	Enable iwi/hapū-led adaptation planning at appropriate scales.	Work with tangata whenua to develop a programme to facilitate hapū or iwi-led holistic climate change adaptation plans to integrate multiple climate risks as well as other community objectives. Draw on approaches to adaptation engagement with Māori that have been successful in the past. This may include provisions to support iwi/hapū with risk assessments and technical analysis as well as enabling data sovereignty.	All Councils collaboration	Dec 2021	Ongoing	\$\$ P	Existing funding (NRC – but additional funding may be required from other councils)
		11	<b>Consistent infrastructure risk assessment criteria</b>	Improve consistency and quality of climate risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure.	Develop consistent standards and processes for undertaking risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure (e.g. agreed criteria, hazard scenarios and damage functions).	All Councils collaboration	Jun 2022	Dec 2022	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		12	<b>Infrastructure risk assessments</b>	Improve knowledge of climate risk for council assets and infrastructure.	Undertake infrastructure climate risk assessments for each council and include documented climate risks in infrastructure and financial strategies.	Individual Councils	Aug 2021	TBA	\$\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
<b>Improve knowledge and understanding</b>	Public infrastructure	13	<b>Roading risk assessments</b>	Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to roading infrastructure.	Develop a regional roading network resilience plan, assessing critical roads at risk from landslides and slips, with the potential for future assessment of flooding and coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.	Northland Transport Alliance	In progress	Jun 2022	\$\$ P	Existing funding
		14	<b>Lifelines risk assessments</b>	Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to lifelines infrastructure.	Develop a lifelines utilities infrastructure risk assessment, working with Northland Lifelines Group members' spatial data.	Northland Lifelines Group	Aug 2021	Mar 2022 (?)	\$ P	Existing funding
		15	<b>Infrastructure planning</b>	Ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning.	Develop and implement processes/policy to ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning, activity management plans and infrastructure strategies, including a monitoring and evaluation plan. This should include consistent application of climate risk assessments and adaptive management approaches. (N.B. This should also include emissions reductions considerations – see priority actions 11 and 12.)	Individual Councils	TBA	Medium-term	\$ PP	Existing funding
	Natural environment	16	<b>Biosecurity risk assessment</b>	Improve understanding of climate change-driven biosecurity threats and develop monitoring and response programmes.	Undertake preliminary high-level investigations into future biosecurity threats (both sleeper and offshore), aligned with national research programmes and information from agencies (e.g. MPI and MoH). The scope may include: human pathogens, primary industry pests and pathogens (agriculture, horticulture and aquaculture) and environmental pests (freshwater, terrestrial and marine). Develop prioritised monitoring and response programmes for relevant target species.	Northland Regional Council	TBA	Medium-term	\$\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
	Natural hazards	17	<b>Ecosystem and biodiversity risk assessment</b>	Improve understanding of climate change impacts on biodiversity and ecosystem function and develop monitoring and response programmes.	Undertake preliminary high-level investigations identifying major at-risk species and ecosystems, followed by targeted research into key ecosystems. Develop monitoring and response plans for key species, habitats and ecosystems, including wetland/peat, terrestrial, marine, freshwater, lakes, coastal dunes, and foreshore and estuarine ecosystems.	Northland Regional Council	TBA	Medium-term	\$\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		18	<b>River flood risk assessment</b>	Improve understanding of river flood risk under climate change and plan future river flood management programmes.	Undertake risk assessments for communities exposed to flooding using region-wide flood model projections, and use this information to prioritise future flood management programmes. Ensure all river flood models include consistent climate change factors, including rainfall intensity and sea level rise.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$\$ PP	Existing funding
		19	<b>Coastal hazards</b>	Improve understanding of coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.	Continue to improve coastal hazards assessments, including methods for understanding impacts, considering the combination of river and coastal flooding, sea level rise and ex-tropical cyclones, and coastal erosion.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$ P	Existing funding
		20	<b>Land hazard data</b>	Improve understanding of land hazards under climate change scenarios.	Collate existing information on geotechnical instability and slips in a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. GNS, Waka Kotahi, NTA) to further develop information and data.	Northland Regional Council	Jun 2022	Dec 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
		21	<b>Wildfire hazard data</b>	Improve understanding of wildfire risk under climate change scenarios.	Collate information on projected fire hazards and at-risk landscape information in a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. FENZ, Scion) to further develop information and data.	Northland Regional Council	Jun 2022	Dec 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
	Water resilience	22	<b>Coastal aquifers</b>	Improve understanding of the impacts of sea level rise on coastal aquifers.	Further develop groundwater models to predict aquifer responses to sea level rise and over extraction from coastal aquifers.	Northland Regional Council	TBA	Medium-term	\$\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required



Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
	Water resilience	23	<b>Community drought adaptation opportunities</b>	1) Improve understanding of the impacts of drought on rural and community water supplies, and 2) identify opportunities to support community adaptation to drought.	Collate data on drought vulnerability, and develop community vulnerability assessments. (N.B. The responsibility for this item may be impacted by the Three Waters Reform process.) Investigate priority hapū and community needs and existing adaptation/water resilience programmes/actions; and clarify opportunities for the Councils to add value by facilitating adaptation planning.	All Councils collaboration	Feb 2022	Dec 2023	\$\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
	Research	24	<b>Research participation</b>	Improve local adaptation knowledge through local programmes and national and international research.	Support and participate in adaptation research programmes, and collate relevant information to enhance local understanding and adaptation response options.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
<b>Reduce risk and vulnerability</b>	Resource management planning and policy	25	<b>District plans</b>	Avoid increasing risk from new development and redevelopment in areas exposed to projected hazards.	As required by legislation, ensure new river and coastal hazard maps are included in district plans, with adequate rules and policies to avoid increasing risk associated with new development and redevelopment. (N.B. RMA reforms may impact this item and review may be required.)	Individual Councils	In progress	End 2022	PP	Existing funding
		26	<b>Spatial planning</b>	Embed climate change risks and adaptation planning into strategic spatial plans.	Undertake region-wide spatial planning to highlight risks and opportunities for strategic land-use planning that enables adaptation responses and enhances wellbeing. (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)	All Councils collaboration	2024	ongoing	\$ PP	Existing funding
		27	<b>Region-wide coastal management policy</b>	Ensure integrated coastal management and adaptation objectives are met in region-wide policy.	Investigate and apply a coordinated and integrated approach to coastline management in regional policy. For example, include a requirement to develop adaptation plans where significant hard coastal protection works, major development or infrastructure is being considered, (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)	All Councils collaboration	2024??	Long-term	P	Existing funding
		28	<b>Embed community adaptation plans</b>	Ensure community adaptation plans are embedded in regulatory instruments.	Investigate and develop methodologies to embed adaptive pathways plans into planning regimes, including using environmental cues to trigger changes to planning rules (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)	All Councils collaboration	2024	ongoing	P	Existing funding
Coastal communities		29	<b>Coastal adaptation programme</b>	Develop a programme of coastal adaptation planning projects aligned with community needs.	Develop a region-wide coastal adaptation programme, identifying key locations, timeframes and engagement methodologies, using recommended considerations in the <i>Coastal Community Profiles</i> and <i>Adaptation Engagement Framework</i> reports.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Mid 2022	P	Existing funding
		30	<b>Coastal adaptation planning projects</b>	Enable flexible, planned adaptation responses to coastal hazards by co-developing adaptation plans with communities.	Deliver projects in the <i>coastal adaptation programme</i> . Undertake community pre-engagement to confirm site selection and appropriate engagement methodology. Work alongside communities to understand, plan and implement adaptation responses by co-developing community adaptation plans in at-risk areas, following recommendations in the <i>Coastal Community Profiles</i> and <i>Adaptation Engagement Framework</i> reports.	Individual Councils	2022	ongoing	\$\$\$ PPP	Existing funding
		31	<b>Civil defence</b>	Integrate civil defence and community adaptation planning objectives.	Ensure alignment of civil defence response plans, climate risk assessments and adaptation planning.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Mid 2022	P	Existing funding
		32	<b>Nature-based solutions</b>	Promote nature-based solutions as interim hazard-reduction options for coastal impacts.	Continue to support community dune restoration and enhancement projects such as the Coast Care programme in line with regional adaptation planning, and as alternative interim measures in place of hard protection structures.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$ PP	Existing funding
River flooding		33	<b>River flood management</b>	Reduce flooding risk to communities through river management.	Continue to deliver prioritised river flood management projects, and plan and secure funding for future flood management implementation across the region.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$\$\$ PPP	Existing funding
		34	<b>Coordinated flood risk management</b>	Improve coordination between the District and Regional Councils in pluvial and fluvial flood management.	Work together to promote projects with multiple partners and co-benefits (e.g. the Blue-Green Network involving WDC and NRC).	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
Water resilience		35	<b>Water tank assistance</b>	Improve community water resilience through water tank programmes.	Provide assistance to remote communities to install water collection, storage and treatment with a focus on community resilience, e.g. NRC's water tank programme.	All Councils collaboration	Early 2022	Ongoing	\$\$\$\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		36	<b>Water resilience funding coordination</b>	Improve coordination between agencies/organisations to improve water resilience outcomes.	Improve coordination between agencies to build collaborative, aligned water resilience responses including: tangata whenua, CDEM, District Councils (Four Waters Advisory Group), and agencies (FENZ, MPI, TPK, DIA).	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
<b>Build capacity</b>	Governance	37	<b>Communication to elected members</b>	Enable governance focus and oversight of climate change issues.	Ensure clear reporting of organisational and regional climate change risks and progress on adaptation/response actions to decision-makers, including mandatory disclosure of climate change implications to elected members in reports.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding

Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
Internal policy and processes	Internal policy and processes	38	<b>Joint climate change policy framework</b>	Ensure consistent consideration of climate change issues across individual Councils.	Develop consistency between climate change policies that embed consideration of climate change impacts and adaptation responses in all council decision-making (which may also include council emissions reduction). This framework should define approaches and principles on data/information, definitions, reporting, standards and criteria.	All Councils collaboration	2022??	2023	PP	Existing funding
		39	<b>Policy review and improvement plan</b>	Embed climate change objectives across individual council policies, strategies, plans and processes.	1) Identify improvement opportunities by undertaking a maturity assessment for each council of all relevant policies, strategies, plans and processes (which may also include council emissions reduction), and 2) develop and deliver a climate change policy improvement plan that outlines a programme of policy updates to embed climate change objectives within a defined timeframe.	Individual Councils	2023	TBC	PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		40	<b>Climate risk disclosure</b>	Ensure transparent monitoring and reporting of climate risks and responses.	Clear disclosure and reporting of climate risks, policy maturity, and progress on response actions in alignment with the recommendations of the Taskforce on Climate-related Financial Disclosure. This may include actions such as ensuring climate change is included in council risk frameworks, financial reports and infrastructure strategies; regularly reporting to auditors, and establishing KPIs for senior managers and CEOs .	Individual Councils	2022	2023	P	Existing funding
		41	<b>Climate change in business cases</b>	Embed climate change considerations in business cases and procurement policies.	Ensure disclosure of climate change risks in business cases, proposals and procurement documents, including long-term risks such as sea level rise.	Individual Councils	2022	2023	P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		42	<b>Alignment of adaptation plans</b>	Ensure community adaptation planning processes are aligned with council funding processes.	Develop processes to ensure alignment of community adaptation plans with council plans and policies, including long-term plans, infrastructure strategies and financial plans.	Individual Councils	2022	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
Organisational capacity	Organisational capacity	43	<b>Climate change teams</b>	Establish appropriate portfolio, programme and project governance and management structures to build organisational capacities.	Establish appropriate teams to deliver organisation-wide climate change implementation at each council, reporting to an appropriate level of management and given sufficient support.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		44	<b>Staff resources</b>	Ensure sufficient staff resourcing and capacity.	Ensure sufficient staff resources are allocated to enable an ongoing organisation-wide climate change response, including climate change focused roles and professional development and training.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$\$	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		45	<b>Adaptation funding</b>	Identify and pursue adaptation funding avenues.	Investigate and prioritise potential funding opportunities to enable the implementation of adaptation responses.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
		46	<b>Inter-council collaboration</b>	Continue to develop collaborative inter-council programmes and shared services.	Continue to support and invest in the regional collaborative adaptation work programme, including establishing a process for sharing of resources between the Councils on specific projects, acknowledging the significant benefits and efficiencies of collaboration. Expand group to include Northland Transport Alliance.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding

# Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy

## Appendix Two Technical report Climate risk overview

Version: 2.2  
Date: 23 September 2021  
Author: Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau

# Climate risk overview

## Climate risks

### Climate change effects

Driven by increased concentrations of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere and oceans, climate change **effects** first manifest in the physical environment as hazards and stressors, such as increased mean temperatures, longer periods without rain, higher intensity rainfall events and sea level rise. Effects of climate change already detected in New Zealand include increases in mean temperature, marine heatwaves, sea level rise and more extreme weather events. These have consequences for people, property, taonga, the natural environment and eventually our entire society.

Scientific evidence for climate change and its impacts continues to accumulate and increase in certainty. The release of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Sixth Assessment Report IPCC AR6 report documents widespread scientific consensus that climate change impacts will continue to increase into the foreseeable future, with the level of change depending on the rate at which greenhouse gases continue to be released into the atmosphere globally. A certain amount of further warming of the planet is almost certain to occur regardless of global emissions reductions efforts, and is likely to bring widespread disruption to Northland's climate and weather.

### Climate change impacts and implications

Climate change effects on physical systems result in consequences for the environment and people. Te Taitokerau is likely to experience physical **impacts** from climate change such as increases in coastal inundation and erosion, more regular river flooding and sedimentation, extended periodic dry periods, increased fire danger weather, and alterations to seasonal weather conditions such as frosts and spring rainfall decline. These will increasingly create **implications** for our region, by disrupting our water, land and ecosystems, our people, culture and economy, and will fundamentally influence the way local government provides services to the community.

We have heard from **Māori** that climate change impacts have the potential to create an existential threat to their cultural taonga and values.<sup>1</sup> We have heard from **hapū** that their ability to successfully adapt is intimately connected with how local government decision making over current and future environmental management takes place and whether Maori are partners in that decision making.<sup>2</sup> Some hapū have expressed that climate change could exacerbate inequities already faced by Maori.<sup>3</sup>

Sea level rise, storm events and flood risk combined with historic patterns of occupation and existing patterns of land ownership mean in some places, traditional uses of the land will come under increased pressure. In other places, whakapapa and whanaungatanga, close social ties and cultural networks will help Māori communities develop adaptation responses and improve resilience.

Our **ecosystems** are vulnerable and currently degraded. Being at the northern tip of an island nation means many of our indigenous taonga species and habitats will naturally move southwards to cooler regions, leaving voids that are likely to be filled by invasive exotic species. Our marine habitats are ranked as being among the best in the world, and the impact of warmer waters may threaten taonga like the Poor Knights reef ecosystems. Coastal ecosystems and habitats for endemic species are likely to experience increased disturbances from heatwaves and flood events as well.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ngā Hapū o Te Wahapū o Te Hokianga nui a Kupe (Ngāti Wharara & Te Pouka) (2008); Te Aupōuri (DRAFT) (2018); Te Roroa (last reviewed 2011)

<sup>2</sup> Climate Change Adaptation Workshop – Maori and Climate Risk, February 2020.

<sup>3</sup> Patuharakeke Hapu Environmental Management Plan, 2014. Page 37.

Northland **communities** are particularly exposed to climate change. Many of our settlements, town centres and roads sit on coastal floodplains, exposed to sea level rise and increased flooding. Some communities, already isolated, will face further pressure from frequent river and coastal flooding. Droughts, already a significant issue for Northland, are projected to become more frequent and severe. Negative human health impacts due to climate change will also affect our communities. Council infrastructure that supports community well-being and connectivity, such as roading assets and three waters infrastructure which provides drinking water and manages stormwater and wastewater may be at risk.

Our **economy** relies on primary-industry exports that are susceptible to drought, floods, pests and diseases. Water supply systems are vulnerable to prolonged droughts, which are predicted to become more common and more extreme with climate change.

Table 1. Climate change projections for Northland<sup>4</sup>

<b>CLIMATE CHANGE PROJECTIONS AND EFFECTS (based on high emissions scenario RCP8.5)</b>	
<b>Temperature increase</b>	<p><b>Average temperature will rise</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0.7 to 1.1°C by 2040</li> <li>• Up to 3.1°C hotter by 2090</li> </ul> <p><b>More very hot days (greater than 25°C)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 more 25°C+ days per year by 2090 (+120%)</li> <li>• Worst case 74 more hot days by 2090 (+260%)</li> </ul>
<b>Changing seasons</b>	<p><b>Seasonal change in temperature</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greatest temperature increase in northern part of Te Taitokerau in summer and autumn</li> <li>• Worst case scenario warming is uniform across region although winters in southwest experience more warming</li> </ul> <p><b>Fewer frosts per year</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• reduction in number of days with frost to 1 day in 10 years</li> </ul>
<b>Rainfall decline</b>	<p><b>Seasonal Change in Rainfall patterns.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No clear signal for change in total rainfall</li> <li>• Up to 20% less rainfall for eastern parts in spring</li> <li>• 10% increase in summer and autumn</li> </ul> <p><b>Longer dry periods</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More intense and frequent drought (increase in frequency by up to 10% by 2090)</li> <li>• Increase in drought risk greatest on east and west coasts and southern inland areas</li> </ul>
<b>Extreme rainfall and storms</b>	<p><b>Extreme rainfall</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No clear signal for change in total rainfall</li> <li>• more frequent and more extreme rainfall events</li> </ul> <p><b>Cyclones</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase in severity (and possibly frequency) of ex-tropical cyclones reaching Northland - likely to bring heavier downpours coinciding with storm surge and damaging winds</li> </ul> <p><b>Wind</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular wind speeds are likely to increase by up to 10% by 2100</li> </ul>
<b>Changes to sea level and coastal hazards</b>	<p><b>Permanent Sea level rise:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0.6m by 2080 and up to 1.5m by 2130</li> <li>• Expansion of areas inundated by high tides</li> </ul> <p><b>Saltwater intrusion</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• saline intrusion into coastal aquifers</li> <li>• expansion of salt-water wedge further upstream in rivers and tidal floodplains</li> </ul> <p><b>More frequent storm surge</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• more frequent and intense coastal flooding</li> <li>• Increase in coastal erosion events</li> </ul>
<b>Marine effects</b>	<p><b>Ocean chemistry</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increasing acidification of the ocean</li> </ul> <p><b>Ocean heating</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gradual increase in sea temperature.</li> <li>• More intense and frequent marine heatwaves</li> </ul>

<sup>4</sup> NIWA (2017) [https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/i3qnklo/northland-region-climate-change-projections-and-implications-summary-report\\_niwa.pdf](https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/i3qnklo/northland-region-climate-change-projections-and-implications-summary-report_niwa.pdf); also see NIWA (2016) <https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/lr3e1fxc/northlandregionclimatechangeandimplicationsself16102niwa.pdf>

# Different perspectives on climate risk

Climate change impacts and implications are complex and can be challenging to communicate. Depending on one's perspective or objectives, different approaches for engaging with climate risks bring different types of meaning or insight. Three approaches are presented below, each appropriate for different purposes.

The overview presented above adopts a **value domain** approach, as was used in the National Climate Change Risk Assessment (REF MfE 2020). This approach groups societal values into five domains (natural environment, built environment, human, economy and governance domains). Value domains can be a practical way to create high-level summaries of climate change impacts from multiple hazards, but tend to compartmentalise and separate social values, and has shortcomings from a risk management perspective (due to the grouping of disparate hazards and stressors) and does not reflect Māori values.

**Māori perspectives** see the world in a very different light to Pākehā, and climate impacts on Māori are felt on a Wairua (spiritual) level. Te Ao Māori, a Māori worldview, is often underpinned by the interconnectedness to the natural world through whakapapa to Ranginui and Papatuanuku and multi-generational perspectives based on responsibility to their tūpūna and generations yet to be born. Māori perspectives are also defined by relationships, and in terms of working with councils on addressing the consequences of climate change, are underpinned by legacy issues relating to colonisation, loss of land and the at times fractured relationships with the crown and councils (some hapū in Northland do not recognise the authority of the crown or councils).

The 'Impacts on Māori' section in Part 2 of the strategy explores these issues further.

Using **systems diagrams** is a way to conceptualise climate risks that can help show the connectivity between different climate impacts and 'value domains'. Local government is tasked with managing a large range of activities that will potentially require adaptation to climate impacts, requiring an understanding of how climate risks will propagate across value domains and hazards. Systems diagrams can illustrate cascading and accumulating interactions of risks, showing some of the complexity driven by feedback loops that needs to be considered when making risk management decisions. Systems diagrams were used to collate the rich textual data collected in a series of workshops with council staff and hapū representatives (p8) in February 2021.

As our understanding of the complexities of climate change develop, our conceptual models of climate impacts will need to evolve and improve. We need to remember that climate risks accumulate over time, achieving critical thresholds beyond which current approaches to risk management will no longer work. Climate risks can also be non-linear in their onset or consequences, or have surprising interactions with other risks, increasing uncertainty and making time-bound projections of impacts extremely challenging.

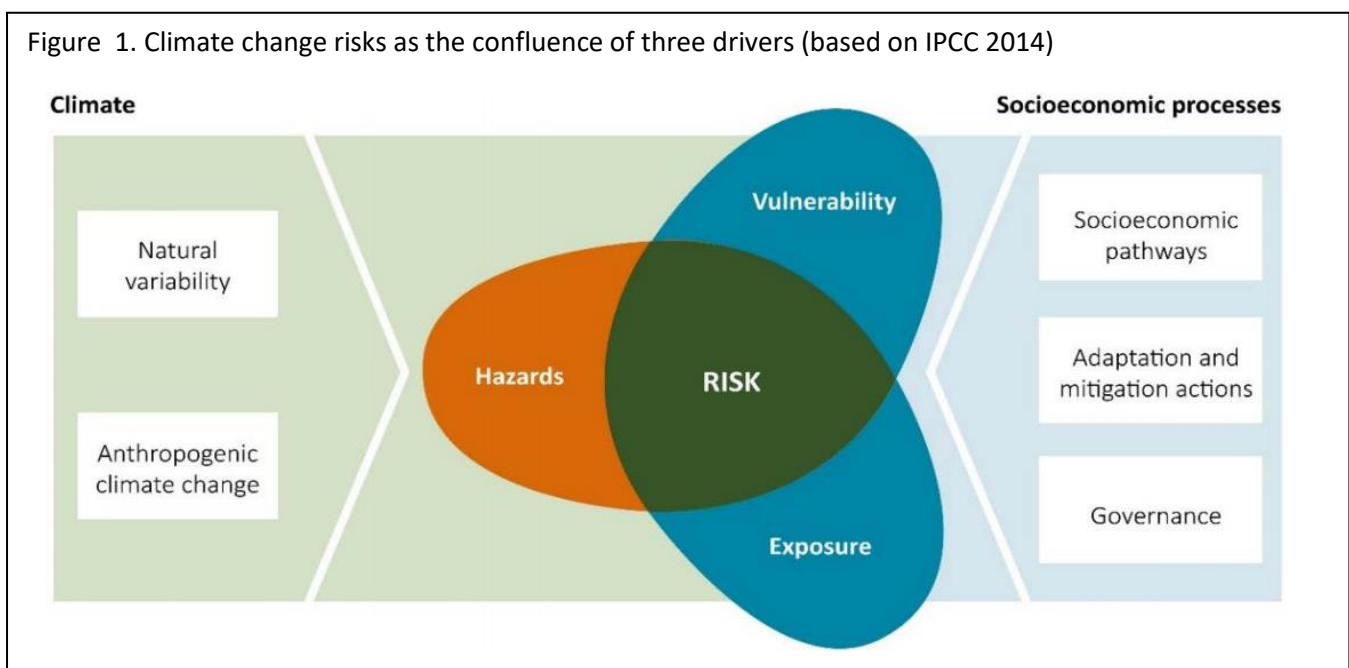
In addition, adaptation responses themselves can carry risks, and developing plans and policy requires nuanced foresight to anticipate unintended consequences. Uncertainty in the form of knowledge gaps also limits our ability to accurately describe and respond to climate risks.

# Managing climate risks

## Risk management

Effective adaptation means good risk management, requiring planning which draws on the knowledges from our past that we have available to us, responds to the changing portfolio of risks facing our region and works with the needs of both current and future generations. Different approaches to managing climate change risks need to consider the three factors contributing to risk: a) hazard, b) exposure and c) vulnerability (see Fig 1). These might include a) consequences of a hazard or stressor, and if the risk is due to a slow-onset stressor (e.g. tidal inundation), or an episodic hazard event (e.g. flood); b) how likely and widespread the exposure is; and c) the vulnerability of the community or ecosystem being impacted.

A key challenge of managing climate change risks is that risks are constantly changing, creating uncertainties in our ability to project accurate timeframes, for instance the rate of sea level rise, the frequency and severity of drought, or the spread of novel environmental pests. This requires councils to develop programmes that are responsive to changing risks and flexible in the type and timing of risk management responses and do not commit to a particular irreversible course of action.





## Risk management explained

**Risk avoidance** approaches are used where exposure to potential climate risks can be circumvented. This could be where exposure to risks has not yet occurred, such as rules restricting new development and infrastructure in high-risk hazard zones, or preventing the establishment of new invasive pest species.

Where exposure already exists, **risk elimination** may be possible, for example through the planned relocation of services and infrastructure, managed retreat of urban areas from coastal hazard areas, or the translocation of temperature-sensitive species to cooler climates.

However, in some instances climate risks will be unavoidable. **Risk reduction** actions can help minimise the probability or consequences of exposure to hazards or stressors. This might include interventions such as providing flood or erosion protection for properties in coastal or river hazard zones, changing to less vulnerable land uses, or by improving the reliability of local water supplies during drought.

While some interventions may not eliminate risk altogether, they may enable the current system to operate until the risks become too large to manage. **Improving the resilience**, or ability of communities or ecosystems to continue functioning and prepare to adapt, is another risk management approach where exposure to risk is inevitable. This might involve improving the ability of a native ecosystem to cope with drought by managing pollution or pests, or by helping develop community response plans to enable towns to recover quickly following floods.

Finally, situations exist where it is necessary to **accept risks** and adapt to change. Such approaches might include adopting different building practices (e.g. flood shutters to deal with regular flood events), acknowledging a lower 'level of service' will be provided by infrastructure, or by managing populations of established invasive species.

# Climate impact diagrams

Climate risks are likely to interact in complex ways, creating compound effects that cascade between and across our environment, society and economy over time. A systems approach is useful to appreciate and communicate the complexity of interacting and cascading elements when trying to understand climate impacts.

Describing the web of potential risks can be difficult due to difficulties in communicating complicated related climate impacts that traverse different ways of understanding risk and value, including cultural, social, financial, economic, biological and engineering perspectives. In addition, as the number of logical steps increases, so does the degree of uncertainty involved in the assessment of risk.

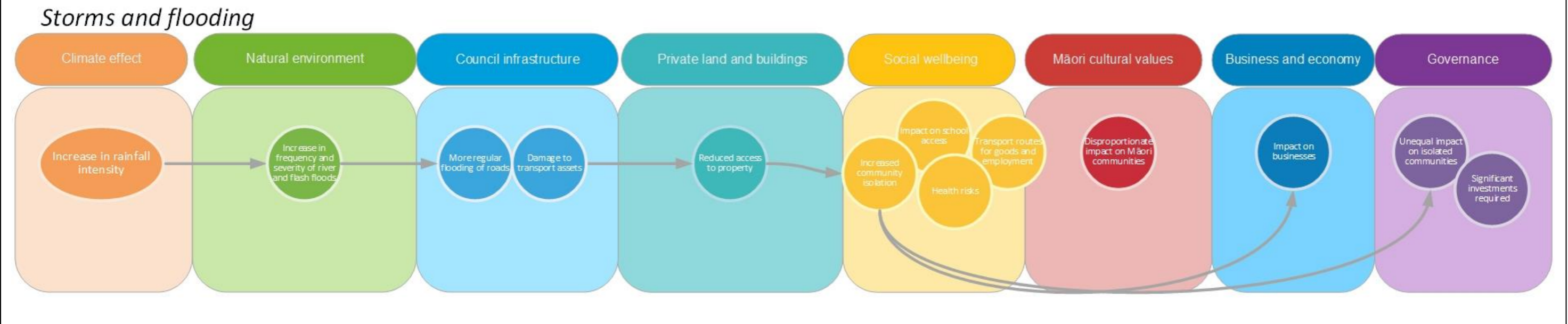
Climate impact diagrams are a type of 'systems map' that attempt to show the complex inter-relationships between the effects of climate change hazards and stressors on the things we value (value elements). Interconnecting arrows show the flow of causality between value elements, and how impacts cascade across different groups of elements. In this case we have used value domains to group 'value elements', but other groupings could be used, such as those developed with hapū or local communities.

## Methodology

Perceived climate impacts on local government activities were discussed during a series of six participatory workshops held with local government staff and Tangata whenua representatives during February 2020. Workshop attendees discussed and brainstormed climate risks to local government responsibilities and Māori cultural values based on their areas of expertise. Attendees acknowledged the difficulty in separating out different hazards and elements of concern and were encouraged to use creative means to document their thoughts. A variety of methods were used in the workshops including lists, pictures and systems diagrams.

Information from the workshops was collated in tables, arranged with climate hazard and stressor categories in the vertical axis, and 'value domains' in columns. We used impact chain diagrams to display the causal interaction of climate impacts across the different value domains. Using this technique, we could summarise multifaceted information from the workshops into a straightforward diagram and avoid large sections of text.

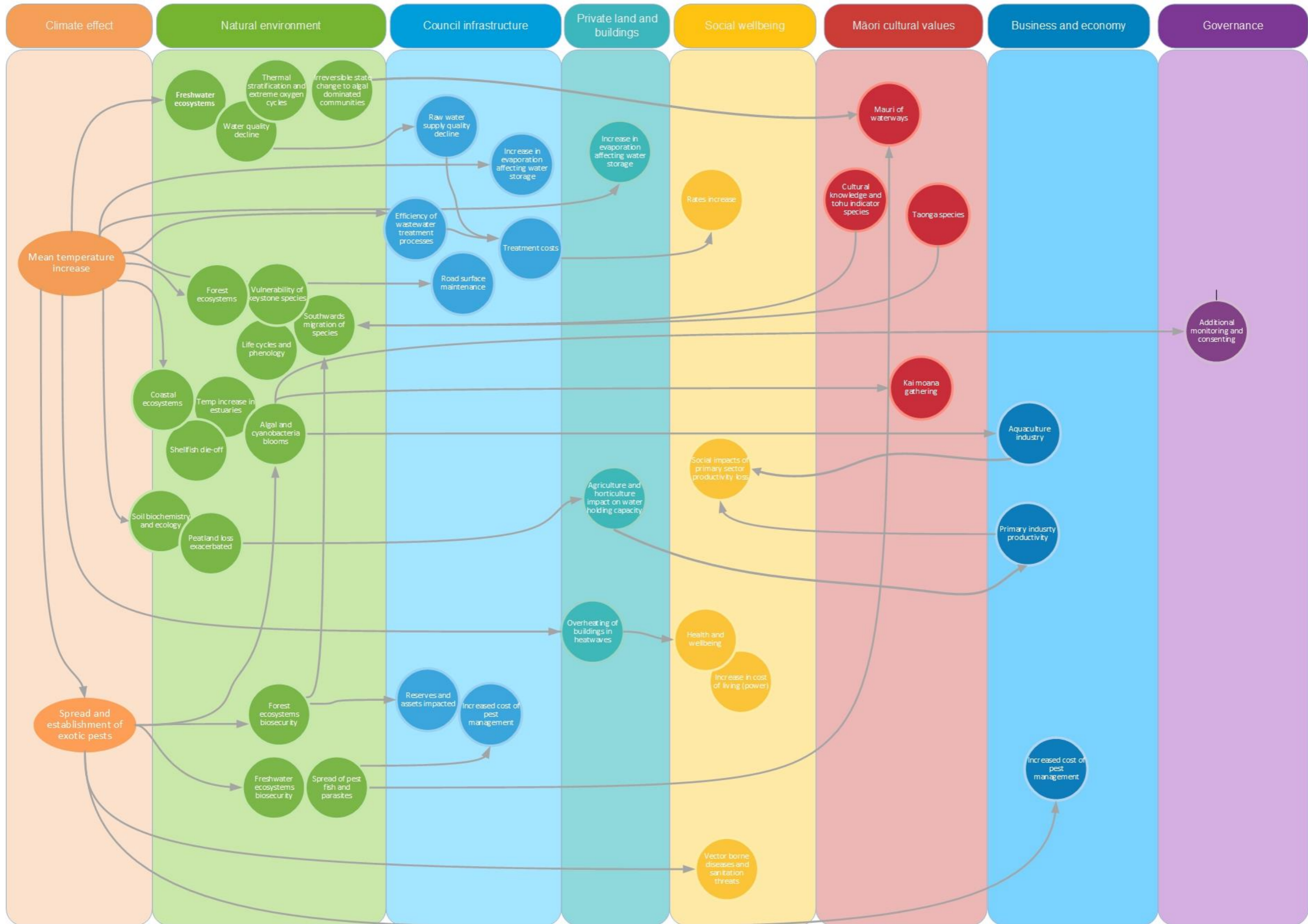
An example of the logic of a simple impact chain diagram is shown below:



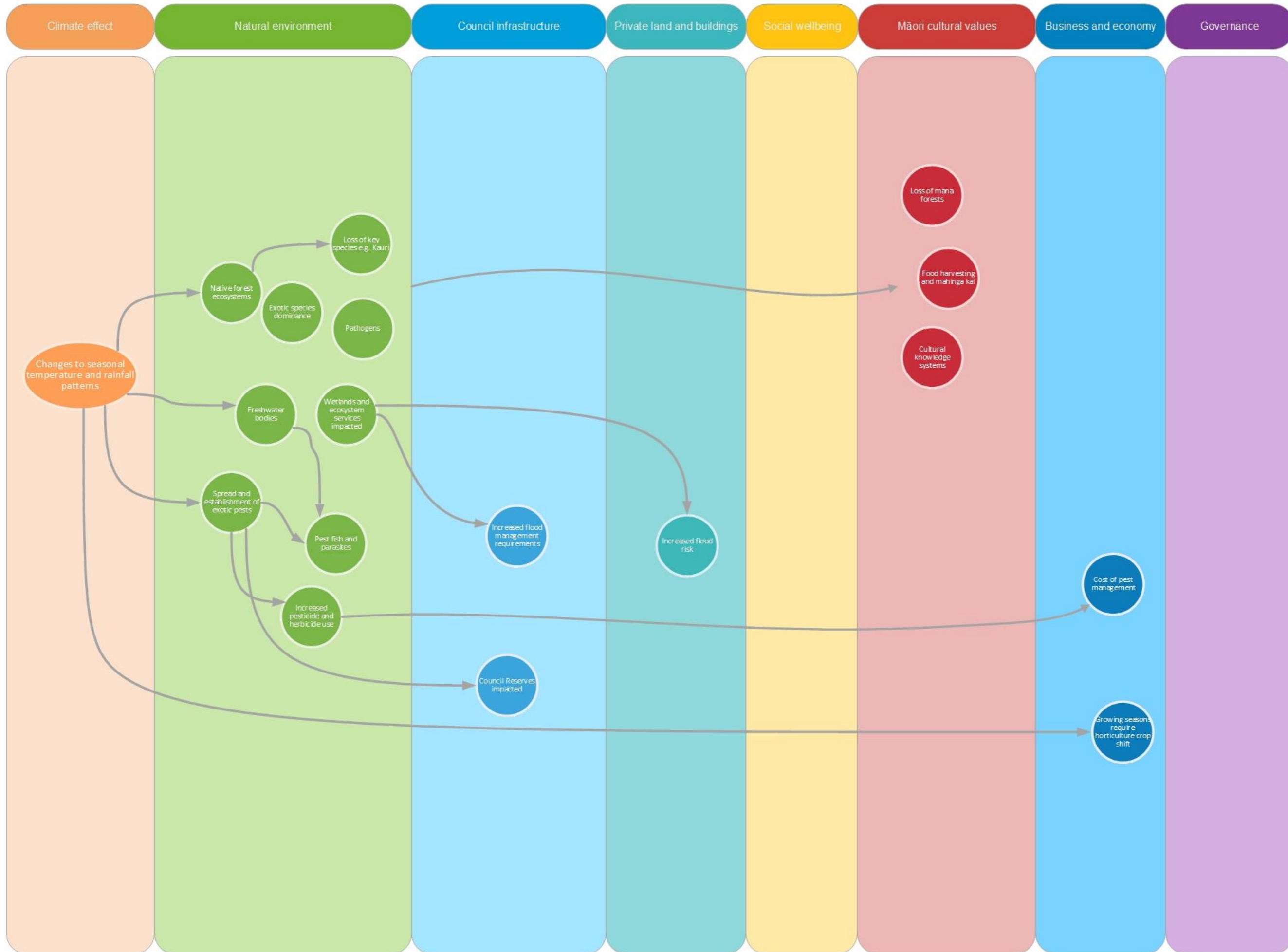
Impact chain diagrams are grouped by climate hazard and presented below as A3 foldouts:

1. Mean temperature increase and heatwaves (p.9)
2. Changing seasons (p.10)
3. Drought and mean rainfall decline (p.11)
4. Wildfire (p.12)
5. Extreme rainfall and storms (p.13)
6. Coastal flooding and erosion (p.14)
7. Permanent tidal inundation due to sea level rise (p.15)
8. Marine impacts (p.16)

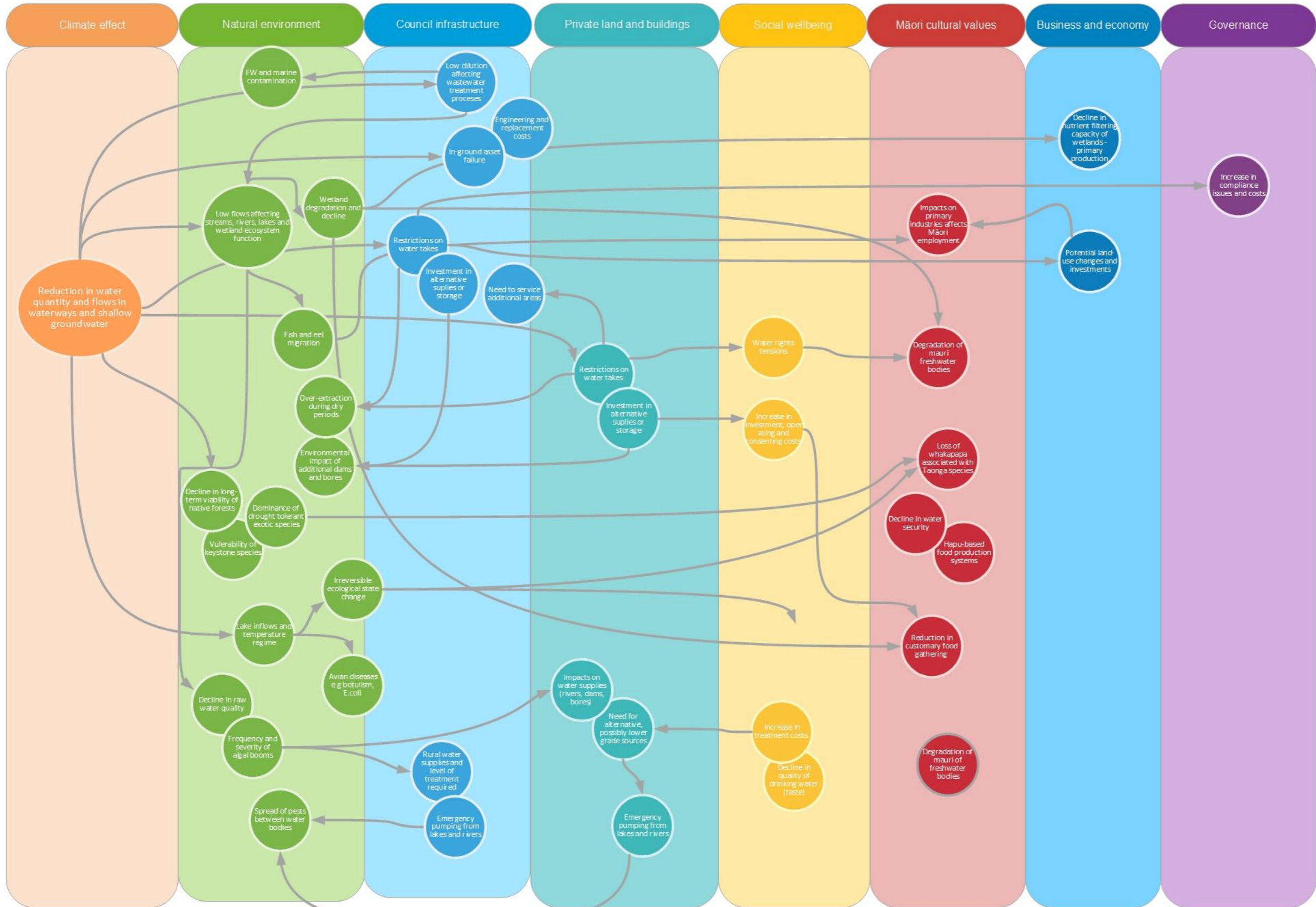
# Mean temperature increase and heatwaves



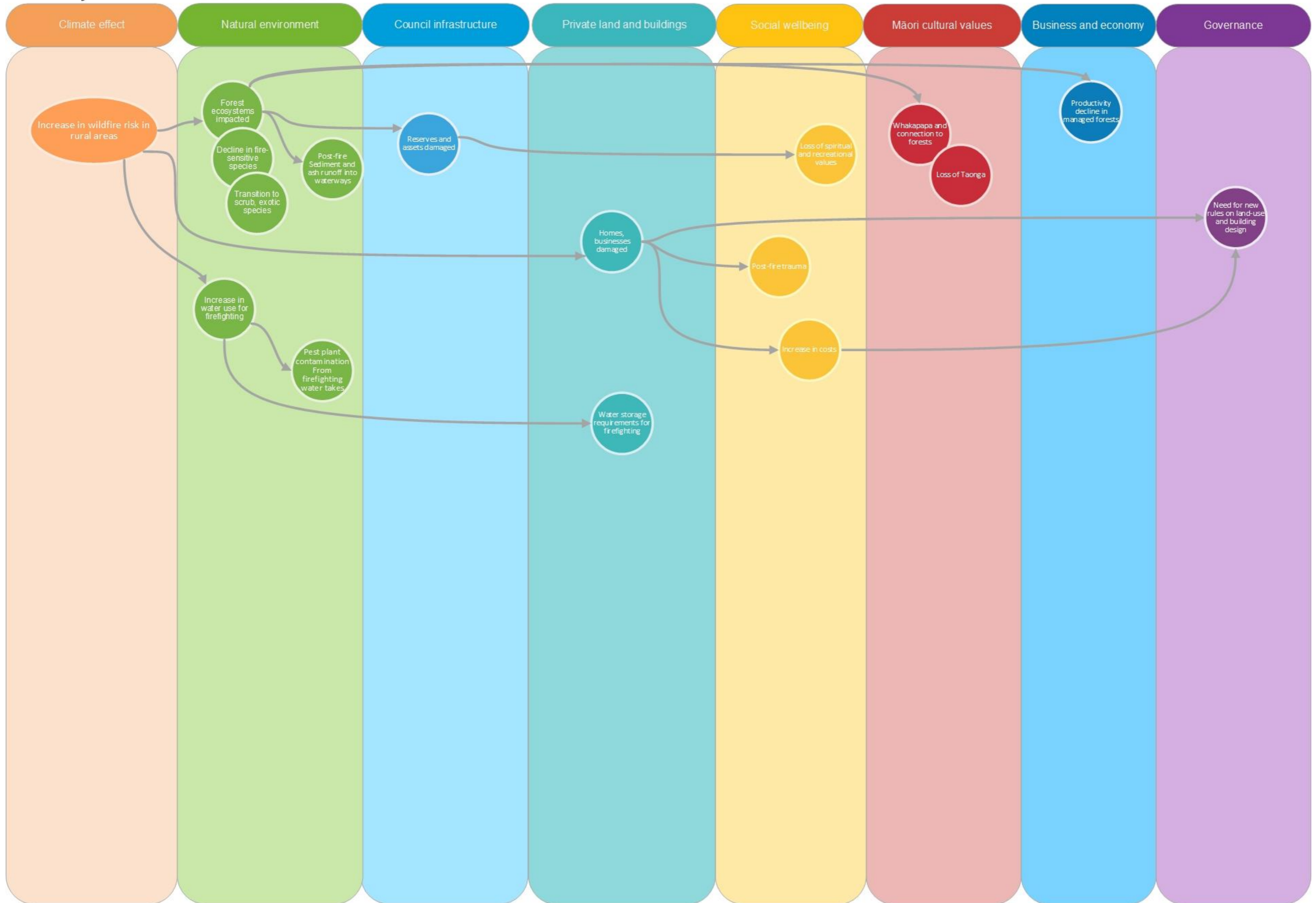
# Changing seasons



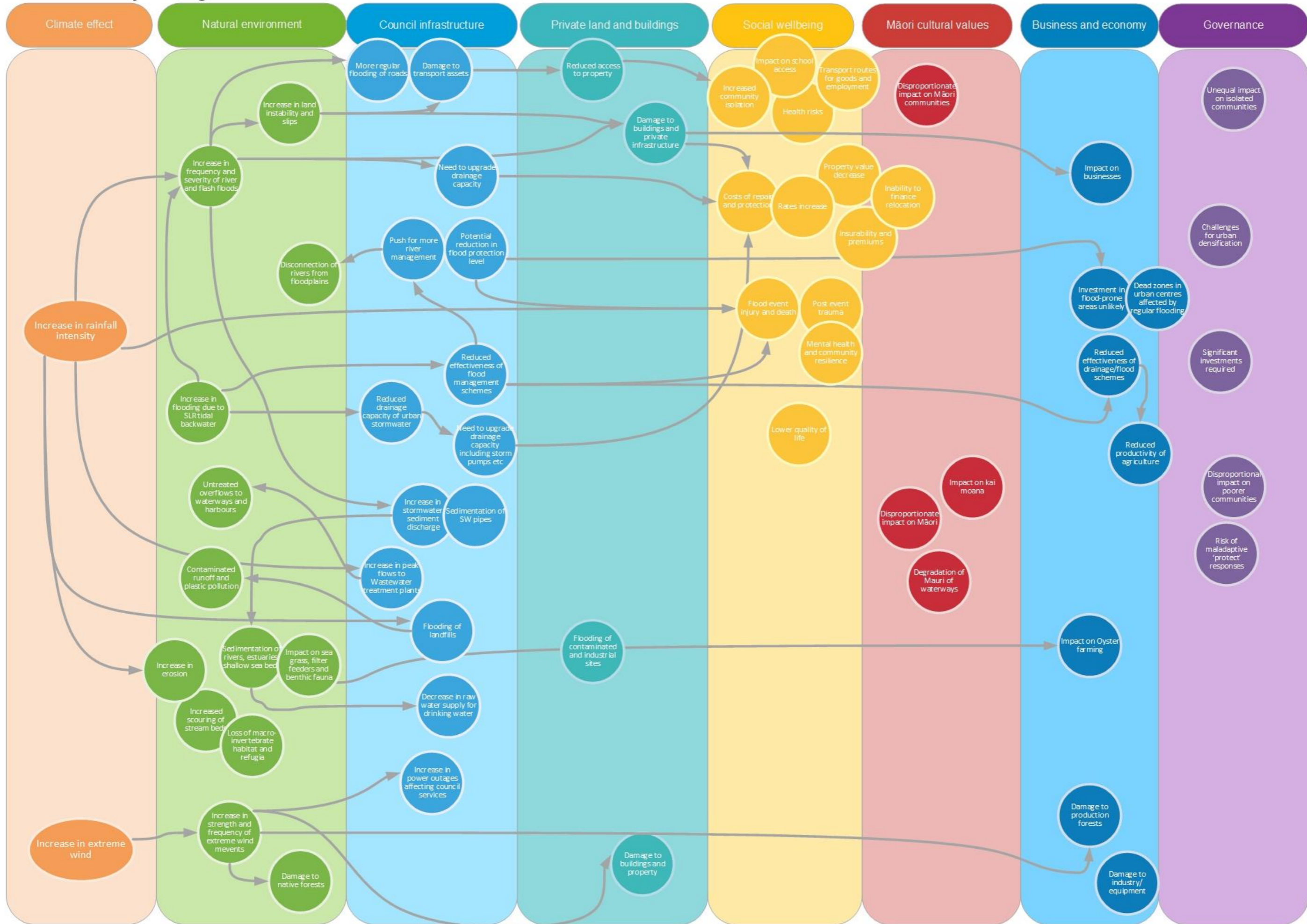
**Drought and mean rainfall decline**



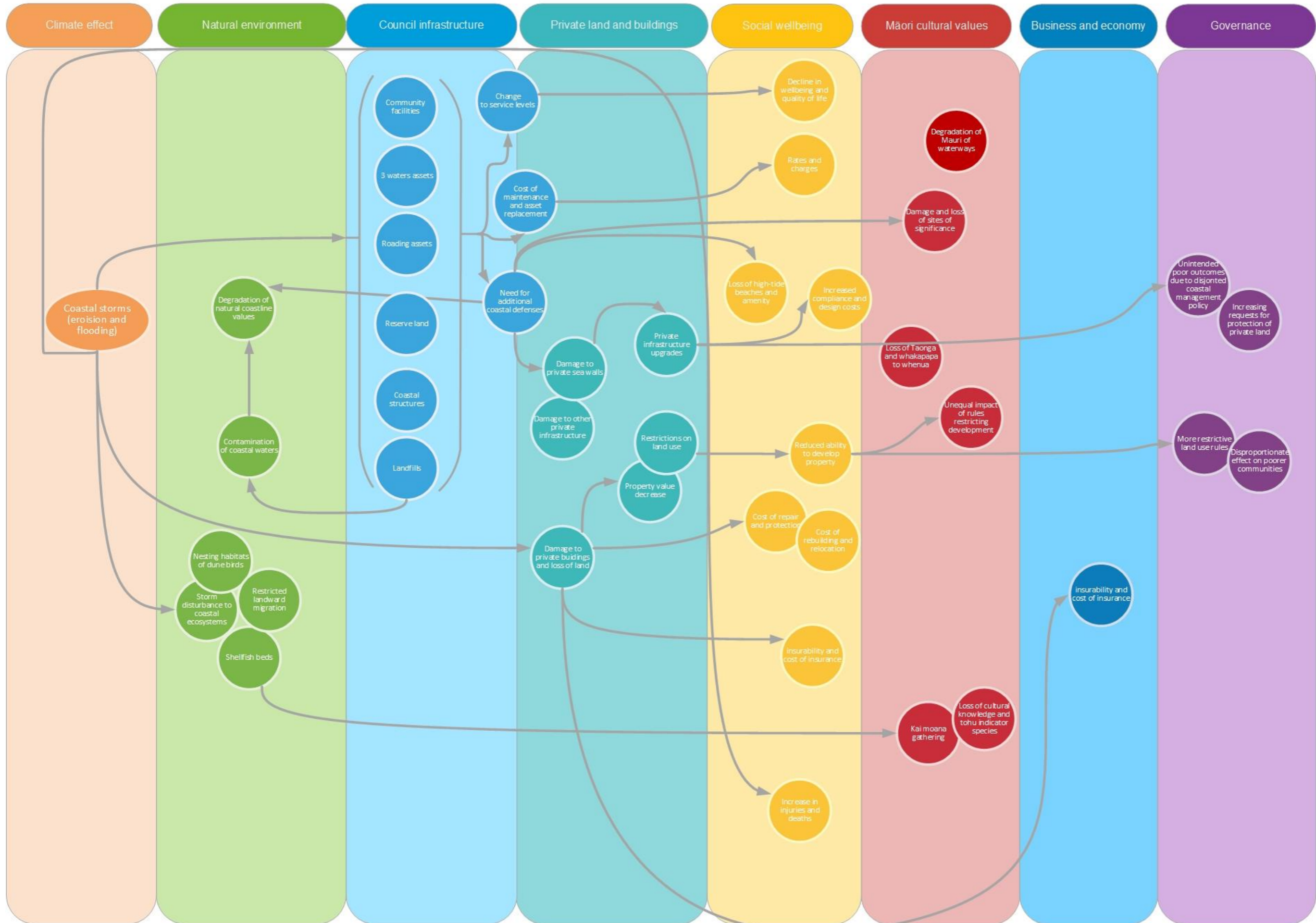
# Wildfire



# Storms and flooding

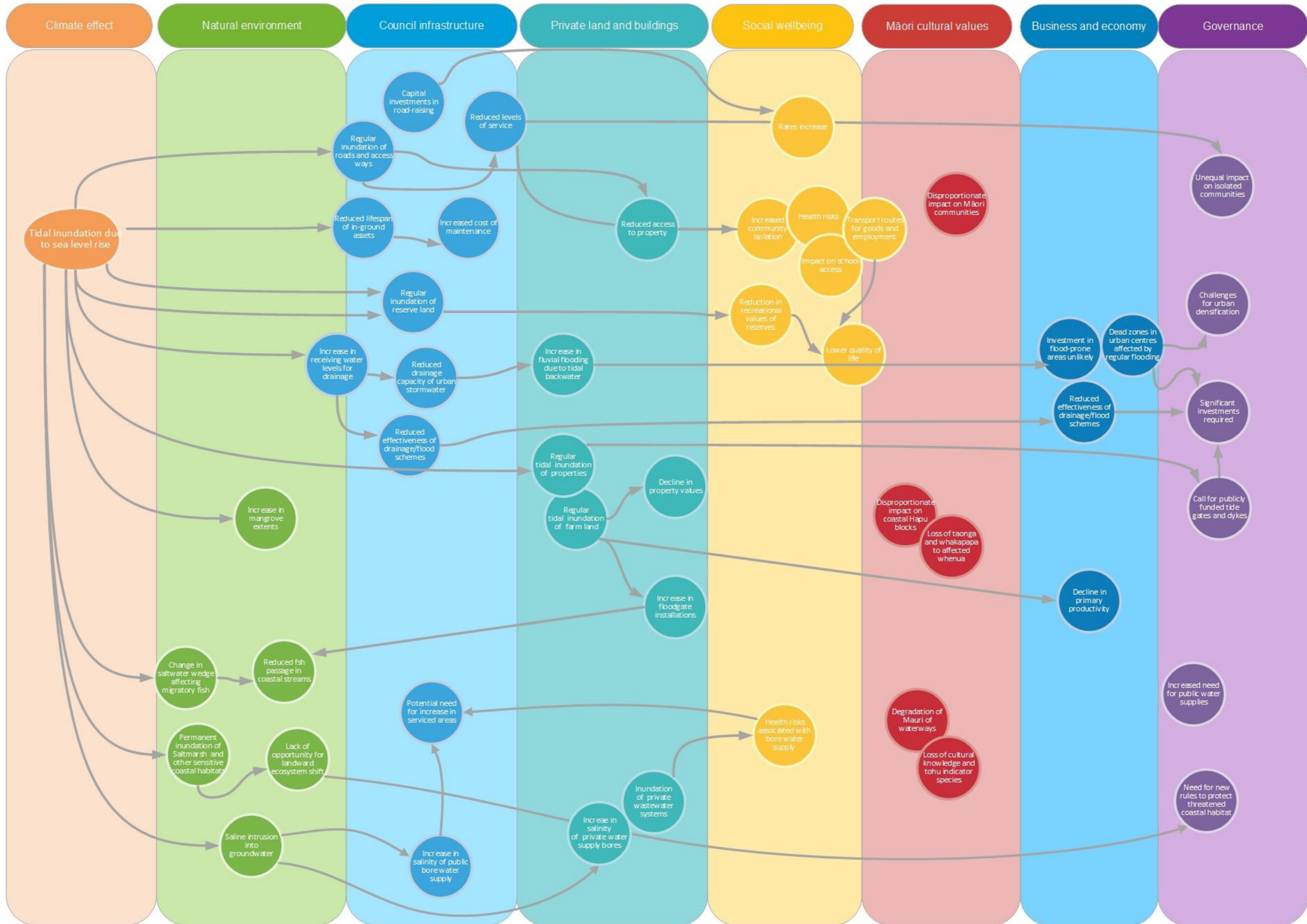


# Coastal flooding and erosion

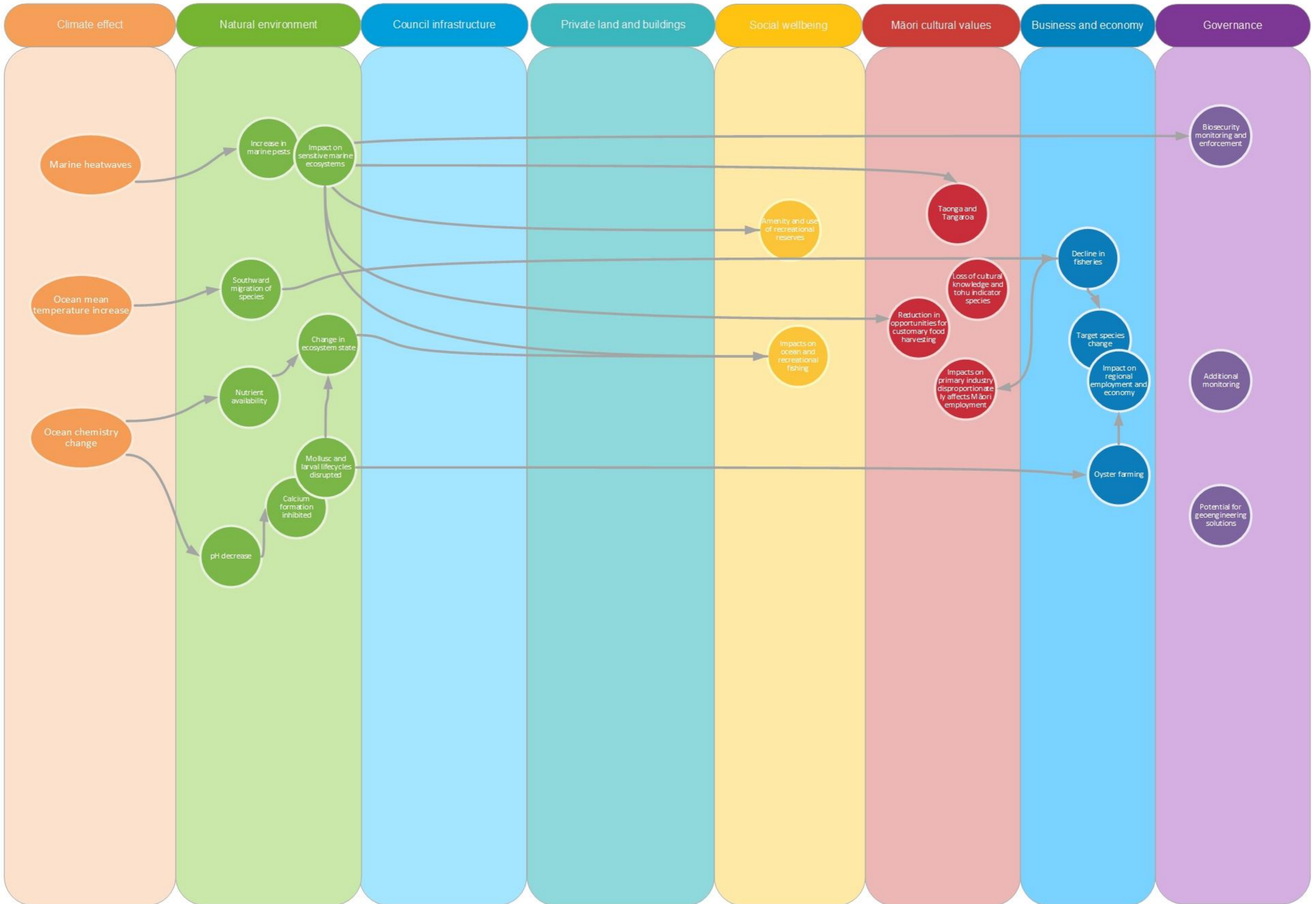




# Permanent tidal inundation due to sea level rise



# Marine



# Full Year Forecast 2021-2022 – Recommendation to Council to Adopt

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Graeme Coleman, Finance & Risk Manager

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

This report outlines the results of the reforecast of the 2021/2022 full year financial year results and requests that the Kaipara District Council approve the forecast as presented. This forecast will be used as the opening balances for the 2022/2023 Annual Plan Balance Sheet.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

The starting point for Full Year Forecast 2021/2022 is the Annual Plan 2021/2022.

Council's current financial policy stance over the term of the Long Term Plan (LTP) is to have a prudent and sustainable long term financial management position, in particular to fund current operating costs out of current income, reduce debt, and increase financial resilience and improve the way Council delivers services over time. Decreasing debt each year has been a particular focus. The key financial ratios are well within the treasury policy.

This is first and only forecast for 2021/2022 year. It incorporates the actual results of the Annual Report 2020 and reflects a review of the full year budgets based on the actual revenue and expenditure to date as at 31 January 2022.

The forecast Operating Surplus (before depreciation) of \$11.2 million is \$0.2 million higher than the Annual Plan 2021/2022 budgeted surplus of \$11.0 million.

Key operating movements in planned performance are:

- Approximately \$1.3 million of savings (on general rates activities only) have been identified salaries & wages, waste minimisation, and support services costs. These opex savings have been off-set by changes in the way the transportation budget has been allocated between opex and capital to maximise the Waka Kotahi subsidies per their final approved programme which results in the surplus reducing as the subsidies on that capital spend was already shown as revenue
- Rates revenues is tracking down primarily because of changing the status of 19 whenua Māori blocks to non-rateable and writing off the arrears as required by the implementation of the Local Government (Rating of Whenua Māori) Amendment Act that came into force on 1 July 2021. The penalty write offs related to this amounted to \$660k.
- Fees and charges from activities is up \$0.9 million mainly due to increased consent fees
- Subsidies and grants are up by \$1 million mainly related to the Waka Kotahi subsidies reclassified as operating from capital for the transfer described in the point above
- Generally, most operating expenditure are down on budget with the exception of repairs & maintenance. The main reasons for this is a) \$1.7 million of budget has been transferred from professional services to repairs & maintenance in line with the approved Waka Kotahi programme and b) \$2.08 million of transportation capital expenditure and the associated 62% Waka Kotahi subsidies of \$1.29 million have been transferred from capital to operating but with no effect on rates as the rates income was already shown in operating revenue (National Land Transport Programme not approved until after the adoption of the LTP).

Savings in general rates funded operating costs of \$1.3 million have been identified within the movements. For a full list of variances please refer to the statements of operating and capital performance by activity in **Attachment A**.

The capital expenditure forecast amount in this report includes only projects that have previously been approved by Council so although it varies from the Annual Plan 2021/2022 amount does not vary from what Council has already approved.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves the reforecast of the 2021/2022 full year financial year results provided in the report and Attachments A to C.
- c) Approves the forecast capital expenditure spend for the year of \$48.3m including the budget changes of \$2,157,511 as set out in this report and in Attachment C.

## Context | Horopaki

The starting point for 2021/2022 forecasts is the Annual Plan 2021/2022.

Council's policy stance over the at term of the LTP is to progressively move towards a more prudent and sustainable long term financial management position, in particular to fund current operating costs out of current income, reduce debt, increase financial resilience and improve the way Council delivers services over time.

Although the forecast deviates significantly from the Annual Plan 2021/2022, at that time there was no way of anticipating a global pandemic and the resulting impacts. This forecast also reflects continued development in our district greater requiring a greater than planned level of resources leading to an increase in both resource processing revenue and costs.

### Forecast Overview

The forecast Operating Surplus (before depreciation) of \$11.2 million is \$0.2 million higher than the Annual Plan 2021/2022 budgeted surplus of \$11.0 million.

Although the operating surplus is forecast to decline it is only because some of the funding associated with the increases in costs is already reflected as operating income (i.e. the transportation capex to opex), the following savings in general rates have been identified:

	\$'000
Salaries and wages cost savings due to higher than normal staff turnover	524
Funding set aside to expand the waste collection areas	340
Saving in support services costs such as printing, travel, and fleet running costs due to staff working from home for much of the year	459
<b>Total (for activities funded by general rates)</b>	<b>1,323</b>

There are likely to be savings of \$351k in interest costs however as the bulk Council debt relates targeted rate activities it has been excluded from the above summary.

The forecast variance explanations are best reviewed at an activity level in the accompanying statements in **Attachment A**. Although the savings shown above are at \$1.3 million the overall operating surplus has only increased by \$219k due mainly to \$2.08m of transportation capital expenditure and the associated 62% Waka Kotahi subsidies of \$1.29m being transferred from

capital to operating but with no effect on rates as the rates income was already shown in operating revenue.

Forecast debt is expected to be in the order of \$44 million which is lower than the LTP Year 1 (Annual Plan 2021/2022) by approximately \$1.57 million. The main reason for this variance is that Council's cash position is better than planned due mainly to funding received in advance for parts of the capital expenditure programme. This can be seen forecast statement of financial position in **Attachment B**.

### Capital Programme Changes

**Attachment C** sets out the changes that have been made to the capital programme at a project level. In summary the changes are:

	\$'000	\$'000
Capital Programme FY22 Annual Plan		51,461
Approved carry overs from FY21		12,726
Budget changes already approved during the year		-1,000
Budget transfers to opex (mainly roading in order to maximise Waka Kotahi funding)		-1,985
Budget changes requiring approval:		
PGF112 Pouto Wharf – funded by financial contributions	265	
PGF113 Pahi Wharf upgrade – funded by financial contributions	75	
14116 New project - Raupo stop bank urgent works funded by Raupo reserve funds	100	
14045 Mangawhai SW - 130-138 Mangawhai Heads - flow & culvert upgrade funded by DC's and loans	36	
14046 Mangawhai SW Taranui culvert capacity upgrade funded by DC's and loans	73	
14055 District wide road safety improvements – Waka Kotahi funded but not in original LTP	500	
New project - KVT Ahikiwi Bridge 14114 – 100% funded by Waka Kotahi	350	
New project - KVT SH12 crossings alignment 14115 – 100% funded by Waka Kotahi	250	
SR112 Kaiwaka Footbridges required to complete by funded by contributions and retained earnings	20	
10722 Hakaru Leachate Improvements – funded by the remediation provision reserve	36	
14031 Spring St wastewater reticulation – funded by loan	37	
14032 Station Rd reticulation – funded by loan/DC's	10	
14101 Aerator for Dargaville WWTP – funded by renewals reserve	56	
New project 14118 Kaiwaka Membrane Filtration Optimisation – funded by renewals reserve and DC's	100	
New project 14117 Mangawhai WW Browns Rd Irrigation Farm Aerator – funded by loan	250	
Sub total		2,158
Indicative carry forwards to FY23		-16,522
<b>Forecast Total Capital Works FY22</b>		<b>46,837</b>

### Cautionary note

The forecast is based on information correct at the time of presentation and may change as further information becomes available. Where forecast capital expenditure is not fully spent by 30 June 2022 these will be included in a list of carry overs that will be brought back to Council early in the new financial year for approval.

## Options

The options available to the Council are:

### **Option 1: Accept the Forecast**

Under this option the Council would accept the Forecast model which would then give staff authority to proceed on that basis.

**This is the recommended option**, given that the forecast represents the more accurate picture of Council's current position, the variances are explained and are not material. The Forecast is also planned to be used as the opening position for the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan as it most accurately reflects Council forecast financial position.

### **Option 2: Reject the Forecast**

Under this option the Council would not endorse or adopt the Forecast. This approach is not recommended as it is important to factor in new data, agree on amended courses of action and to monitor Council's financial position from the most up to date knowledge base.

## Significance and engagement/Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

Under the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, a decision in accordance with the recommendation is not considered to have a high degree of significance. The forecast process is a routine business practice issue and the variances proposed are within significance limits.

Council staff are satisfied that the decision-making requirements of the Local Government Act 2002 have been met.

## Next steps/E whaiake nei

If the Full Year Forecast 2021/2022 is approved, it will form the opening balances in the 2022/2023 Annual Plan balance sheet.

## Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Attachment A - Statement of Operating and Capital Performance (All of Council and by activity group)
B	Attachment B – Statement of Financial Position
C	Attachment C - Forecast Capital Spend to 30 June 2022

Attachment A

Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Net Adjustments by Activity								
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	Open Spaces	District Leadership	Land Drainage	Regulatory	Stormwater	Transportation	Waste Minimisation	Wastewater	Water Supply
<b>All of Council</b>												
Rates	41,942	41,509	(433)	-	(667)	-	-	-	-	-	234	-
Activity Revenue and Other Income	7,437	8,375	938	(50)	291	2	610	-	138	(68)	11	3
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	5,259	6,312	1,053	8	80	-	-	-	965	-	-	-
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>54,638</b>	<b>56,196</b>	<b>1,558</b>	<b>(42)</b>	<b>(296)</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>610</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>1,103</b>	<b>(68)</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>3</b>
Employee Benefits	15,520	14,996	(524)	(138)	(347)	-	(11)	-	(12)	(16)	-	-
Contractors	2,513	1,738	(775)	15	(15)	-	(22)	11	(20)	(345)	(301)	(98)
Professional Services	9,269	8,748	(521)	9	138	-	823	142	(1,748)	(34)	165	(15)
Repairs and Maintenance	7,051	11,296	4,245	(25)	(7)	16	1	(71)	3,481	10	712	128
Finance costs	2,568	2,217	(351)	-	(351)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other Operating Costs	6,711	5,976	(735)	87	(459)	(1)	(27)	2	(356)	()	3	15
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>43,632</b>	<b>44,971</b>	<b>(1,339)</b>	<b>(52)</b>	<b>(1,040)</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>765</b>	<b>84</b>	<b>1,345</b>	<b>(386)</b>	<b>578</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit) (before Depreciation)</b>	<b>11,006</b>	<b>11,225</b>	<b>219</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>744</b>	<b>(13)</b>	<b>(155)</b>	<b>(84)</b>	<b>(241)</b>	<b>319</b>	<b>(333)</b>	<b>(28)</b>
Capital Subsidies	33,001	32,323	(678)	(607)	1,297	(4,800)	-	-	1,607	-	595	1,229
Contributions	3,860	4,747	887	857	-	-	-	-	30	-	-	-
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>36,861</b>	<b>37,070</b>	<b>208</b>	<b>250</b>	<b>1,297</b>	<b>(4,800)</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>1,637</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>595</b>	<b>1,229</b>
Capital Expenditure	51,461	46,837	(4,624)	(945)	1,497	(4,575)	30	(670)	490	(259)	(1,490)	1,298
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>51,461</b>	<b>46,837</b>	<b>4,624</b>	<b>(945)</b>	<b>1,497</b>	<b>(4,575)</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>(670)</b>	<b>490</b>	<b>(259)</b>	<b>(1,490)</b>	<b>1,298</b>
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(14,600)</b>	<b>(9,768)</b>	<b>4,832</b>	<b>1,194</b>	<b>(199)</b>	<b>(225)</b>	<b>(30)</b>	<b>670</b>	<b>1,146</b>	<b>259</b>	<b>2,085</b>	<b>(69)</b>
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) - before Loan Payments and Depreciation</b>	<b>(3,594)</b>	<b>1,457</b>	<b>5,051</b>	<b>1,205</b>	<b>545</b>	<b>(238)</b>	<b>(185)</b>	<b>586</b>	<b>905</b>	<b>578</b>	<b>1,752</b>	<b>(97)</b>

The above table is supported by the following activity group statements and accompanying variance comments.

Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>Open Spaces &amp; Facilities</b>				
Rates	5,161	5,161	-	
Activity Revenue and Other Income	1,226	1,176	(50)	Campground revenue down mainly due to COVID restrictions isolating Northland for the early part of the season
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	52	60	8	Creative Community Scheme grants higher than budgeted
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>6,439</b>	<b>6,397</b>	<b>(42)</b>	
Employee Benefits	1,110	972	(138)	Savings due to delays in filling some vacancies
Contractors	420	435	15	Minor over spend
Professional Services	294	303	9	Minor over spend
Repairs and Maintenance	1,276	1,251	(25)	Minor over spend
Finance costs	-	-	-	
Other Operating Costs	2,803	2,890	87	Increased communications costs (Community Activities)
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>5,904</b>	<b>5,852</b>	<b>(52)</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit) (before Depreciation)</b>	<b>535</b>	<b>546</b>	<b>10</b>	
Capital Subsidies	950	343	(607)	This is mainly additional TIF funding associated with the public toilet changes noted in the capital programme
Contributions	1,389	2,246	857	Financial contributions up on budget in Mangawhai \$517k, District wide \$170k, Kaiwaka \$55k, Maungaturoto \$30k and Dargaville is on budget
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>2,339</b>	<b>2,588</b>	<b>250</b>	
Capital Expenditure	2,938	1,993	(945)	Numerous - see capital programme changes attached
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>2,938</b>	<b>1,993</b>	<b>(945)</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(599)</b>	<b>595</b>	<b>1,194</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) - before Loan Payments and Depreciation</b>	<b>(64)</b>	<b>1,140</b>	<b>1,205</b>	



## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>District Leadership</b>				
Rates	6,033	5,366	(667)	The variance in penalties is predominately because of changing the status of 19 whenua Maori blocks to non-rateable and writing off the arrears as required by the implementation of the Local Government (Rating of Whenua Maori) Amendment Act that came into force on 1 July 2021. The penalty write offs related to this amounted to \$660k.
Activity Revenue and Other Income	517	807	291	Increase in interest income from term investments of \$75k, gain on sale of fixed assets \$80k (non cash), and an overall increase in activity income \$122k
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	80	80	Minor increase
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>6,549</b>	<b>6,254</b>	<b>(296)</b>	
Employee Benefits	8,710	8,363	(347)	Savings due to delays in filling some vacancies
Contractors	173	158	(15)	Minor savings
Professional Services	2,468	2,607	138	This is mainly made up of recruitment fees due to the high staff turnover and the higher than normal number of vacant positions.
Repairs and Maintenance	75	67	(7)	Minor savings
Finance costs	2,568	2,217	(351)	
Other Operating Costs	(6,214)	(6,672)	(459)	Saving in support services costs such as printing, travel, fleet running costs due to staff working away from home for much of the year
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>7,780</b>	<b>6,740</b>	<b>(1,040)</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> (before Depreciation)	<b>(1,231)</b>	<b>(487)</b>	<b>744</b>	
Capital Subsidies	2,100	3,397	1,297	The variance represents the remainder of the Kaipara Kickstart subsidies
Contributions	-	-	-	
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>2,100</b>	<b>3,397</b>	<b>1,297</b>	
Capital Expenditure	4,801	6,298	1,497	Numerous - see capital programme changes attached
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>4,801</b>	<b>6,298</b>	<b>1,497</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(2,701)</b>	<b>(2,900)</b>	<b>(199)</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> - before Loan Payments and Depreciation	<b>(3,932)</b>	<b>(3,387)</b>	<b>545</b>	

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>Land Drainage &amp; Flood Protection</b>				
Rates	979	979	-	
Activity Revenue and Other Income	-	2	2	
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	-	-	
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>979</b>	<b>981</b>	<b>2</b>	
Employee Benefits	-	-	-	
Contractors	-	-	-	
Professional Services	50	50		
Repairs and Maintenance	503	519	16	
Finance costs	-	-	-	Over expenditure will come from Reserve balances deductions
Other Operating Costs	165	164	(1)	
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>718</b>	<b>734</b>	<b>16</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> (before Depreciation)	<b>261</b>	<b>247</b>	<b>(13)</b>	
Capital Subsidies	6,000	1,200	(4,800)	Stop bank work carried forward to FY23
Contributions	-	-	-	
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>6,000</b>	<b>1,200</b>	<b>(4,800)</b>	
Capital Expenditure	6,060	1,485	(4,575)	Stop bank work carried forward to FY23
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>6,060</b>	<b>1,485</b>	<b>(4,575)</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(60)</b>	<b>(285)</b>	<b>(225)</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> - before Loan Payments and Depreciation	<b>201</b>	<b>(38)</b>	<b>(238)</b>	

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>Regulatory</b>				
Rates	2,352	2,352	-	
Activity Revenue and Other Income	4,924	5,533	610	Increased fee income from building consents, resource consents, PIMS/LIMS, licence fees & fines. Does not include all revenue derived from increased resource consent activity as these services are on charged later in the process but is adjusted for the anticipated revenue recognition adjustments required for consent income in the annual report.
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	-	-	
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>7,276</b>	<b>7,886</b>	<b>610</b>	
Employee Benefits	4,187	4,176	(11)	Savings due to delays in filling some vacancies
Contractors	72	50	(22)	Savings in contractors offset by increased professional services
Professional Services	1,038	1,861	823	Increased external support required due to increased workload, larger more complex consent applications and staff vacancies.
Repairs and Maintenance	3	4	1	
Finance costs	-	-	-	
Other Operating Costs	1,927	1,900	(27)	
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>7,227</b>	<b>7,991</b>	<b>765</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> (before Depreciation)	<b>49</b>	<b>(106)</b>	<b>(155)</b>	
Capital Subsidies	-	-	-	
Contributions	-	-	-	
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	
Capital Expenditure	100	130	30	
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>130</b>	<b>30</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(100)</b>	<b>(130)</b>	<b>(30)</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> - before Loan Payments and Depreciation	<b>(51)</b>	<b>(236)</b>	<b>(185)</b>	

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>Stormwater</b>				
Rates	2,149	2,149	-	
Activity Revenue and Other Income	-	-	-	
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	-	-	
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>2,149</b>	<b>2,149</b>	<b>-</b>	
Employee Benefits	-	-	-	
Contractors	11	23	11	
Professional Services	263	404	142	
Repairs and Maintenance	305	233	(71)	
Finance costs	-	-	-	
Other Operating Costs	462	464	2	
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>1,040</b>	<b>1,123</b>	<b>84</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> (before Depreciation)	<b>1,109</b>	<b>1,025</b>	<b>(84)</b>	
Capital Subsidies	-	-	-	
Contributions	98	98	-	
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>98</b>	<b>98</b>	<b>-</b>	
Capital Expenditure	1,319	649	(670)	
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>1,319</b>	<b>649</b>	<b>(670)</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(1,221)</b>	<b>(551)</b>	<b>670</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> - before Loan Payments and Depreciation	<b>(112)</b>	<b>475</b>	<b>586</b>	

Additional database Management costs \$11k  
 Additional \$20K CCTV in Dargaville, \$30K GAPS analysis work in Dargaville & Mangawhai, \$20K depth survey on ponds Mangawhai, transfer \$58K CCTV work Other schemes from Professional Services  
 Reactive works required at Mangawhai for waterways pond clearance \$25K, Savings in other schemes (\$20K) and budget transfer (\$58K) for CCTV work Other schemes to Professional Services

rates remissions \$2k

Numerous - see capital programme changes attached

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>Transportation</b>				
Rates	11,716	11,716	-	
Activity Revenue and Other Income	-	138	138	Recoveries for costs on charged to NTA not in the budget
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	5,207	6,172	965	Waka Kotahi subsidies transferred from capital subsidies (see comment below for repairs and maintenance)
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>16,923</b>	<b>18,027</b>	<b>1,103</b>	
Employee Benefits	1,389	1,377	(12)	Savings due to delays in filling some vacancies
Contractors	20	-	(20)	
Professional Services	3,962	2,214	(1,748)	The roading programme has been reworked inline with the funding approved by Waka Kotahi at the start of the financial year. The allocated budget has been transferred to repairs and maintenance. The roading programme has been reworked inline with the funding approved by Waka Kotahi at the start of the financial year. As part of this work \$2.08m has been transferred from the heavy metalling programme (capex) to repairs and maintenance and the balance is a transfer from professional services.
Repairs and Maintenance	3,304	6,784	3,481	
Finance costs	-	-	-	
Other Operating Costs	3,797	3,441	(356)	Re-alignment of budget due to meet Waka Kotahi approved programme with some of the variance transferred to repairs and maintenance
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>12,471</b>	<b>13,815</b>	<b>1,345</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit) (before Depreciation)</b>	<b>4,452</b>	<b>4,211</b>	<b>(241)</b>	
Capital Subsidies	22,545	24,152	1,607	The original budget was \$22.5m but added to this from approved carry-overs from FY21 was another \$10.4m of PGF, Shovel Ready and shared path related works. Therefore the capital subsidies have decreased from revised budget of \$32.9m to \$24.2. \$1m of this has been transferred to opex and the remained will be carried forward to FY23.
Contributions	210	239	30	
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>22,754</b>	<b>24,391</b>	<b>1,637</b>	
Capital Expenditure	28,093	28,583	490	Numerous - see capital programme changes attached
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>28,093</b>	<b>28,583</b>	<b>490</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(5,339)</b>	<b>(4,192)</b>	<b>1,146</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) - before Loan Payments and Depreciation</b>	<b>(886)</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>905</b>	

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Variance \$'000	Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000			
<b>Waste Minimisation</b>					
Rates	1,732	1,732	-		
Activity Revenue and Other Income	195	127	(68)		Waste levy lower than expected
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	-	-		
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>1,927</b>	<b>1,859</b>	<b>(68)</b>		
Employee Benefits	124	108	(16)		Savings due to vacancies
Contractors	855	510	(345)		This funding had been set aside for extending services into new areas (sealed rural roads) but now delayed to FY23.
Professional Services	133	99	(34)		Minor savings
Repairs and Maintenance	7	16	10		
Finance costs	-	-	-		
Other Operating Costs	437	437	()		
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>1,556</b>	<b>1,170</b>	<b>(386)</b>		
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> (before Depreciation)	<b>371</b>	<b>689</b>	<b>319</b>		
Capital Subsidies	-	-	-		
Contributions	-	-	-		
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-		
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>		
Capital Expenditure	340	81	(259)		Variance due to the purchase of recycling bins being delayed to FY23
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>340</b>	<b>81</b>	<b>(259)</b>		
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(340)</b>	<b>(81)</b>	<b>259</b>		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> - before Loan Payments and Depreciation	<b>31</b>	<b>608</b>	<b>578</b>		

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000	Variance \$'000	
<b>Wastewater</b>				
Rates	7,245	7,479	234	Targeted rates for wastewater are overall ahead of budget due to capital repayments for the Mangawhai scheme but recorded as revenue for accounting purposes.
Activity Revenue and Other Income	26	37	11	Minor increase in other revenue
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	-	-	
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>7,271</b>	<b>7,516</b>	<b>245</b>	
Employee Benefits	-	-	-	Savings in Plant Ops Mangawhai to cover overspend in R & M,
Contractors	559	257	(301)	All schemes require a Wastewater Service Risk Management plan under Water Services Act -\$200k, Additional modelling & CCTV at Maungaturoto
Professional Services	421	586	165	Additional reactive work required \$185k at Mangawhai, blockages to pumps at Dargaville, Gordon Street excavations and pipe replacement. Aerial line structure replacement Te Koporu. Fencing works \$100K for oxidation ponds as H&S requirement. Desludging at Dargaville ponds - \$339k approved carry over from FY21 plus an additional \$78k to complete the work
Repairs and Maintenance	888	1,600	712	
Finance costs	-	-	-	Minor spends
Other Operating Costs	1,858	1,861	3	
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>3,726</b>	<b>4,304</b>	<b>578</b>	
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> <i>(before Depreciation)</i>	<b>3,545</b>	<b>3,212</b>	<b>(333)</b>	
Capital Subsidies	491	1,086	595	
Contributions	2,130	2,130	-	
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-	
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>2,621</b>	<b>3,216</b>	<b>595</b>	
Capital Expenditure	6,076	4,586	(1,490)	Numerous - see capital programme changes attached
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>6,076</b>	<b>4,586</b>	<b>(1,490)</b>	
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(3,455)</b>	<b>(1,369)</b>	<b>2,085</b>	
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> <i>- before Loan Payments and Depreciation</i>	<b>90</b>	<b>1,843</b>	<b>1,752</b>	

## Kaipara District Council - Forecast 2021-2022

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	Whole Year			Variance \$'000	Comments
	Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000			
<b>Water Supply</b>					
Rates	4,575	4,575	-		Water by Meter revenue forecast to be higher than budget
Activity Revenue and Other Income	550	553	3		
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	-	-	-		
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>5,125</b>	<b>5,128</b>	<b>3</b>		
Employee Benefits	-	-	-		
Contractors	402	305	(98)		Reductions in Plant Operations to contra additional spends in R & M
Professional Services	641	626	(15)		Water safety plans required for all schemes
Repairs and Maintenance	692	820	128		Additional reactive work required including analysing blue/green Algae in ponds at Brookland Dam in Maungaturoto, Refurbishment of Griffin Rd Reservoir \$45K, additional water deliveries required in Ruawai for water leak
Finance costs	-	-	-		
Other Operating Costs	1,476	1,491	15		Additional Electricity supply costs in Dargaville \$31K
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>3,211</b>	<b>3,242</b>	<b>31</b>		
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> (before Depreciation)	<b>1,914</b>	<b>1,886</b>	<b>(28)</b>		
Capital Subsidies	916	2,145	1,229		
Contributions	33	33	-		
Other Capital Revenue	-	-	-		
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>949</b>	<b>2,178</b>	<b>1,229</b>		
Capital Expenditure	1,734	3,032	1,298		Numerous - see capital programme changes attached
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>1,734</b>	<b>3,032</b>	<b>1,298</b>		
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(785)</b>	<b>(854)</b>	<b>(69)</b>		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> - before Loan Payments and Depreciation	<b>1,129</b>	<b>1,032</b>	<b>(97)</b>		



# Kaipara District Council

## Statement of Financial Position

As at	Annual Report	Annual Plan	Forecast
30 June	2020-2021	2021-2022	2021-2022
	\$'000	\$'000	\$'000
<b>Net assets/equity</b>			
Accumulated comprehensive revenue and expense	451,867	472,657	488,114
Asset revaluation reserves	352,326	295,350	365,726
Restricted reserves	5,646	5,845	5,806
Council created reserves	-11,322	-17,153	-15,814
<b>Total net assets/equity</b>	<b>798,516</b>	<b>756,699</b>	<b>843,833</b>
<i>represented by</i>			
<b>Current assets</b>			
Cash and cash equivalents	12,194	526	10,794
Trade and other receivables	6,998	8,567	6,641
Accrued revenue	4,085	1,641	4,085
Other financial assets	121	115	121
<b>Total current assets</b>	<b>23,397</b>	<b>10,849</b>	<b>21,641</b>
<i>less</i>			
<b>Current liabilities</b>			
Trade and other payables	15,948	11,559	16,906
Provisions	357	135	335
Employee entitlements	999	944	874
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	<b>17,303</b>	<b>12,638</b>	<b>18,115</b>
<b>Working capital/(deficit)</b>	<b>6,093</b>	<b>-1,789</b>	<b>3,525</b>
<i>plus</i>			
<b>Non current assets</b>			
Property, plant, equipment	840,010	811,811	887,589
LGFA Borrower notes	929	824	775
Biological assets	947	1,045	947
Other financial assets	270	279	270
<b>Total non current assets</b>	<b>842,156</b>	<b>813,959</b>	<b>889,581</b>
<i>less</i>			
<b>Non current liabilities</b>			
Public debt	44,000	45,702	44,000
Provisions	1,507	5,504	1,960
Derivative financial liabilities	4,225	4,265	3,314
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>	<b>49,733</b>	<b>55,471</b>	<b>49,274</b>
<b>Net assets</b>	<b>798,516</b>	<b>756,699</b>	<b>843,832</b>



Forecast Capital Spend to 30 June 2022

Activity Group	Cost Centre	Project	Annual Plan FY22	Approved Carry overs from FY21	Budget change - already Council approved	Budget transfer to another project	New budget changes requiring approval	Opex transfers	Indicative Carry forwards to FY23	New Balance - Forecast	Comment
<b>District Leadership, Financial &amp; Internal Services</b>											
	105 Economic Development	PGF111 Kai Water (Opex and Capex)	-	-	116,811	-	-	-	-	116,811	On track to complete this year
	105 Economic Development	PGF107 Kaipara Wharves Physical works	2,100,000	692,300	-	-2,792,300	-	-	-	-	- Transfer budget to PGF112 and PGF113
	105 Economic Development	PGF112 Pouto Wharf	-	-	520,342	1,739,934	265,286	-	-	2,525,562	Budget transferred from PGF107
	105 Economic Development	PGF113 Pahi Wharf upgrade	-	-	-32,186	1,052,366	75,000	-	-	1,095,180	Budget transferred from PGF107
	157 Information Services	11014 New equipment	30,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	30,000	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	11015 Replaced equipment	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	11031 Digital transformation	-	185,000	-	-	-	-	-93,000	92,000	Project to continue into next FY
	157 Information Services	12055 Replacement IT Equipment	-	27,200	-	-	-	-	-	27,200	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	14011 CAPEX increase for new IT equipment	40,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	40,000	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	14012 CAPEX increase for replacement IT equipment	80,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	80,000	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	14013 Cybersecurity CIS control implementation	170,000	-	-	-	-	-	-110,000	60,000	Project to continue into next FY
	157 Information Services	14014 HRIS	140,000	-	-	-	-	-	-95,000	45,000	Project is planned to complete next FY. Delay due to Covid and staff constrains
	157 Information Services	14015 Replace Magiq Performance	200,000	-	-	-	-	-	-100,000	100,000	Scoping currently underway. Projected expected to complete Q1 FY23
	157 Information Services	14016 Smart Forms	50,000	-	-	-50,000	-	-	-	-	Budget transferred to 14107
	157 Information Services	14017 Smart Forms, Customer Exp and Workplace Transformation	70,000	-	-	50,000	-	-	-105,000	15,000	Budget transferred from 14016 and expected to complete in FY23
	157 Information Services	14018 Te Aka	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	14019 Upgrade and renew SCADA	275,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	275,000	On track to complete this year
	157 Information Services	14020 WiFi refresh and rebuild	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	204 Council Vehicles	14021 Replacement vehicles (7 p.a.)	210,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	210,000	On track to complete this year
	244 Council Offices - Dargaville	13021 Leashold improvements - NRC building	-	150,000	-	-	-	-	-	150,000	NRC will invoice us for the cost incurred by 30 June 2022
	244 Council Offices - Dargaville	14022 Dargaville offices - Hard fitout	623,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	623,000	NRC will invoice us for the cost incurred by 30 June 2022
	244 Council Offices - Dargaville	14023 Dargaville offices - Soft fitout	593,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	593,000	NRC will invoice us for the cost incurred by 30 June 2022
	244 Council Offices - Dargaville	14024 Dargaville offices refurbishment - allowance for design	20,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	20,000	On track to complete this year
			<b>4,801,000</b>	<b>1,054,500</b>	<b>604,967</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>340,286</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-503,000</b>	<b>6,297,753</b>	
<b>Land Drainage &amp; Flood Protection</b>											
	109 Land Drainage - District Wide	14025 District Wide LD - LD Improvements District Wide	60,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	60,000	On track to complete this year
	109 Land Drainage - District Wide	14026 District Wide LD - Te Kopuru Stopbank	3,500,000	-	-	-	-	-	-2,800,000	700,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year
	179 Raupo Land Drainage Scheme	14027 Raupo LD Internal Stopbanks	2,500,000	-	-	-	-	-	-2,000,000	500,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year
	179 Raupo Land Drainage Scheme	13017 Bellamy F/G 48	-	65,000	-	25,000	-	-	-	90,000	Budget transferred from 13019
	179 Raupo Land Drainage Scheme	13018 Double Gate F/G 44 - rename to FG 50	-	35,000	-	-	-	-	-	35,000	Floodgate change - now going to be Fgate 50
	179 Raupo Land Drainage Scheme	13019 Whitcombe Road F/G 13	-	25,000	-	-25,000	-	-	-	-	Budget transferred to 13017
	179 Raupo Land Drainage Scheme	14116 New project - Raupo Stopbank Urgent Works	-	-	-	-	100,000	-	-	100,000	New project funded by existing Raupo reserves - urgent works
			<b>6,060,000</b>	<b>125,000</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>100,000</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-4,800,000</b>	<b>1,485,000</b>	
<b>Open Spaces &amp; Facilities</b>											
	100 Kai Iwi Lakes - Camp Ground	11055 Kai Iwi Camp Ground Facilities	150,000	190,000	-	-	-	-	-	340,000	On track to complete this year
	122 Mangawhai Public Toilet Amenities	11024 Public Toilets - Mangawhai Heads Road Alamar	-	216,000	95,820	-157,000	-	-	-	154,820	TIF funding \$95,820 obtained
	122 Mangawhai Public Toilet Amenities	12116 Mangawhai Reserve Toilet	-	-	82,722	50,000	-	-	-	132,722	TIF funding \$82,722 obtained
	122 Mangawhai Public Toilet Amenities	12002 Public Toilets - Lincoln Street	-	-	57,017	107,000	-	-	-	164,017	TIF funding \$57,017 obtained
	151 Pensioner Housing General	14000 Pensioner Housing General	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	11004 Parks and Reserves - hard surface renewal programme	-	50,000	-	-	-	-	-31,312	18,688	Will complete in FY23
	166 District Parks & Reserves	11053 Park Improvements (furniture/bollards/lighting/paths)	-	20,000	-	-	-	-	-	20,000	On track to complete this year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	12113 Rangiora Rd Reserve development	40,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	40,000	Discussion with NZTA if further funding available for this carpark, further funding required in 2022/23 year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	13050 Kaiwaka bush kauri park	550,000	-	-	-	-	-	-550,000	-	No longer proceeding
	166 District Parks & Reserves	14001 Carpark Sealing	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-50,000	-	Project is still in development stage
	166 District Parks & Reserves	14002 Environmental protection and enhancement	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	14003 McClean Park upgrade	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	14004 Parks hard surface renewals	70,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	70,000	On track to complete this year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	14005 Parks infrastructure renewals	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	166 District Parks & Reserves	14006 Playground renewals	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	172 District Public Toilet Amenities	11153 Maungaturoto Toilet	-	85,000	135,736	-	-	-	-	220,736	TIF funding \$99100 balance to fund from FC's \$36,636 - check how previous years funded?
	172 District Public Toilet Amenities	14007 Pahi toilet replacements	250,000	-	-	-	-	-	-250,000	-	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year
	183 Libraries	14008 Library replacements (Books and equipment)	58,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	58,000	On track to complete this year
	194 Mangawhai Parks & Reserves	11006 Stage 1 Walkway Sellars reserve to Wintle Street ( Pearl St)	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	194 Mangawhai Parks & Reserves	11065 Mangawhai Community Park - implement Master Plan	-	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	194 Mangawhai Parks & Reserves	11085 Mangawhai Coastal Tracks - links to existing network	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
	194 Mangawhai Parks & Reserves	11095 Community Infrastructure - Mangawhai - esplanade development	-	43,500	-	-	-	-	-	43,500	On track to complete this year
	194 Mangawhai Parks & Reserves	13049 Alamar Carpark	500,000	-	-	-	-	-	-500,000	-	Carry forward into 2022/23 yr, 2022/23yr has \$400k funding total projects- \$900k
	194 Mangawhai Parks & Reserves	14009 MA2 Skate Bowl	800,000	-	-	-	-	-	-800,000	-	Requires external funding before can start
	199 Dargaville Halls	14010 Town hall remediation - allowance for design	20,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	20,000	On track to complete this year
	209 Taharoa Domain	11019 Implement Reserve Management Plan	-	87,000	-	-	-	-	-	87,000	On track to complete this year
	249 Dargaville Parks & Reserves	11003 Cycleway/walkway - implement strategy	-	74,000	-	-	-	-	-	74,000	On track to complete this year
			<b>2,938,000</b>	<b>865,500</b>	<b>371,295</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-2,181,312</b>	<b>1,993,483</b>	
<b>Regulatory</b>											
	254 Dog Control	14028 254 Animal Management	100,000	-	-	-	-	30,000	-	130,000	Overspend original budget - pump sump stolen need new replacement and costs increases to the original estimates
			<b>100,000</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>30,000</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>130,000</b>	
<b>Stormwater</b>											
	101 Dargaville Stormwater Scheme	14043 Dargaville SW Renewals	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	Budget expected to be fully expended this year on Parore Street Renewals
	131 Baylys Stormwater Scheme	12037 Chases Gorge	250,000	-	-	-	-	-	-250,000	-	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year
	171 Other Stormwater Scheme	14044 Maungaturoto Papanui SW renewals and LoS	40,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	40,000	On track to complete this year

Activity Group	Cost Centre	Project	Annual Plan FY22	Approved Carry overs from FY21	Budget change - already approved	Budget transfer to another project	New budget changes requiring approval	Opex transfers	Indicative Carry forwards to FY23	New Balance - Forecast	Comment
	246 Mangawhai Stormwater Scheme	11093 Mangawhai SW	150,000	-	-	-	-	-	-150,000	-	Eveline Street - not allocated to PMgr
	246 Mangawhai Stormwater Scheme	13022 Mangawhai SW	300,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	300,000	Budget expected to be fully expended this year on Margaret Street, Pinewood Place, Holiday Crescent, Robert Street area Street Renewals
	246 Mangawhai Stormwater Scheme	14045 Mangawhai SW - 130-138 Mwhai Heads - flow & culvert upgrade	50,000	-	-	-	36,000	-	-	86,000	Additional scoping and surveying required (DC and Loan funded)
	246 Mangawhai Stormwater Scheme	14046 Mangawhai SW Taranui culvert capacity upgrade	49,000	-	-	-	73,000	-	-	122,000	Extra surveying and scoping required on this project
	246 Mangawhai Stormwater Scheme	14047 Mangawhai Town Plan Wood St and surrounds stormwater upgrade	380,000	-	-	-	-	-	-379,000	1,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year
	257 Te Kopuru Stormwater Scheme	14048 Te Kopuru SW - Open drain upgrades - fix Walker St system	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000	On track to complete this year
			1,319,000	0	0	0	109,000	0	-779,000	649,000	
<b>Transportation</b>											
	106 Bridges and Structures	14049 Bridge replacements	1,000,000	-	-	1,000,000	-	-	-1,000,000	1,000,000	Work planned to start but will not complete by June
	106 Bridges and Structures	14050 Structures component replacements	1,000,000	-	-	-1,000,000	-	-	-	-	No budget required - not approved
	120 Road Works - Unsealed	14051 Unsealed road metalling	3,044,000	-	-356,799	-608,000	-	-2,079,201	-	-	Reduction of budget, as NZTA did not approve full amount of funding. Move \$2.08m to opex for repairs and maintenance programme
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14052 ALCAM Report of all crossings	20,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	20,000	On track to complete this year
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14053 Associated improvements for Rehab and Reseals	250,000	-	-	-250,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer budget to 14091 \$250K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14054 Bayliss Beach Parking and Connectivity Improvements	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14055 District wide road safety improvements	500,000	-	-110,000	-690,000	500,000	-	-200,000	-	New Funding from NZTA of \$500K approved but not in LTP originally this incorporates all the subsidy changes, Transfers to 14085 \$25K, 14088 \$10K, 14089 \$5K, 14090 \$20K, 14102 \$25K, 14102 \$25K, 14106 \$80K, 14107 \$250K, 14108 \$250K, \$110K 14059
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14056 Drainage improvement programme	50,000	-	-	-50,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer to project 14112 \$50K - archive project
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14057 Mangawhai / Kaiwaka Area speed management plan	500,000	-	-50,000	-450,000	-	-	-	-	NZTA only approved \$450,000, therefore reduce overall budget by \$50k, then transfer to Project 14087 \$450K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14058 Modify & improve delineation	5,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	5,000	On track to complete this year
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14059 Slip repair	500,000	-	110,000	-610,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer to project 14093 \$60K, 14094 \$70k, 14095 \$100K, 14095 \$150K, 14113 \$15K, \$60K 14109, 14110 \$50K, 14111 \$105, 14055 \$110k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14085 Logan street safety improvements	-	-	-	25,000	-	-	-	25,000	Transfer from Project 14055 \$25k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14087 Speed Limit Changes Mangawhai	-	-	-	450,000	-	-	-	450,000	Transfer from Project 14057 \$450K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14088 Rail Level Crossing safety review	-	-	-	10,000	-	-	-	10,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$10K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14089 Sight rail Improvement Program	-	-	-	5,000	-	-	-	5,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$5K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14090 Road safety CRMs	-	-	-	20,000	-	-	-	20,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$20K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14091 Associated Improvements for reseals 2021.22	-	-	-	250,000	-	-	-	250,000	Transfer from Project 14053 \$250K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14093 Resilience Improvements 20.22 Glinks rd slip	-	-	-	60,000	-	-	-	60,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$60k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14094 Resilience Improvements 20.21 Cove Rd	-	-	-	70,000	-	-	-	70,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$70k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14095 Resilience Improvements 20.21 Arapohue Rd underslip	-	-	-	100,000	-	-	-	100,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$100k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14096 Resilience Improvements 23/24 Kaiwaka Mangawhai underslip	-	-	-	150,000	-	-	-	150,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$150k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14102 Moir Street	-	-	-	25,000	-	-	-	25,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$25k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14103 Gordon St Dargaville	-	-	-	25,000	-	-	-	25,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$25k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14106 Pouto Rd - HRRRs	-	-	-	80,000	-	-	-	80,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$80k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14107 Cove Rd - HRRRs	-	-	-	250,000	-	-	-	250,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$250K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14108 HRRR - Kaiwaka/Mangawhai	-	-	-	250,000	-	-	-	250,000	Transfer from project 14055 \$250K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14109 Ararua Rd 23.23 Resilience Improvements	-	-	-	60,000	-	-	-	60,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$60k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14110 Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Rd 21.22 Resilience Improvements	-	-	-	50,000	-	-	-	50,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$50k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14111 Resilience Improvements - Cove Rd Underslip	-	-	-	105,000	-	-	-	105,000	Transfer from project 14059 \$105k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14112 Drainage Improvement programme	-	-	-	50,000	-	-	-	50,000	Transfer from project 14056 \$50K
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	14113 Tangowahine Valley Rd 22.23 Resilience Improvements	-	-	-	15,000	-	-	-	15,000	Transfer from Project 14059 \$15k
	135 Road Works - Minor Improvements	New project Code: 14119 New footpaths	-	-	200,000	-	-	-	-	200,000	Approved new funding to Council, Council agreed to keep local share after NZTA moderated 100% funded
	152 Footpaths and Berns	14084 Footpath renewals 2021/22	-	-	-	-	-	53,156	-	53,156	Move out of Opex 1522074 \$53,156 into this project code - project was not set up when LTP was originally set up
	164 Emergency Works and Preventative M	14060 Emergency Works and Preventative maintenance	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	248 Roading unsubsidised	14067 Network Wide Footpath Projects	-	-	-	200,000	-	-	-	200,000	NZTA did not approve funding for this project
	252 Road Works - Drainage	14061 Drainage renewals	625,319	-	-50,714	-574,605	-	-	-	-	Move \$50714 to opex cc 1632040 NTA overheads that should not be charged to capex but should be opex, transfer to 14077 \$300K, 14078 \$144K, 14079 \$60, 14080 \$0K, 14091 \$20k
	252 Road Works - Drainage	14077 Drainage renewals - culverts	-	-	-	300,000	-	-	-	300,000	Transfer from 14061 \$300K
	252 Road Works - Drainage	14078 Drainage renewals - kerb and channel	-	-	-	144,605	-	-	-	144,605	Transfer from 14061 \$144,605
	252 Road Works - Drainage	14079 Tangawahine Valley Rd 1540	-	-	-	60,000	-	-	-	60,000	Transfer from 14061 \$60k
	252 Road Works - Drainage	14080 Murray Rd 200-1400m	-	-	-	50,000	-	-	-	50,000	Transfer from 14061 \$50k
	252 Road Works - Drainage	14081 Pouto Rd 27210-27360m	-	-	-	20,000	-	-	-	20,000	Transfer from 14061 \$20k
	267 Roading Regional Development	14062 Unsealed Road Improvements	4,003,000	-	907,000	-	-	-	-	4,910,000	Second tranche of funding, original budget incorrect 100% funded PGF
	272 Road Works - Sealed Resurfacing	14063 Sealed road resurfacing	2,000,000	-	-	208,000	-	-	-	2,208,000	Transfer \$208k from 14051
	275 Road Works - Sealed	14064 Sealed road pavement rehabilitation	1,300,000	-	-	400,000	-	-	-	1,700,000	Transfer from project 14051 \$400k
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	13046 MC Shared Pathway	3,700,000	1,235,400	-	-	-	-	-	4,935,400	Checked Popup and decided to keep as is until June 2022 then reforecast
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	14066 Mangawhai SP	2,210,200	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,210,200	Check funding on these projects to make sure in correct project code
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	14065 LED Infill lighting programme	1,000,000	-	-1,000,000	-	-	-	-	-	NZTA did not approve only retain local share
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	14067 Network Wide Footpath Projects	200,000	-	-	-200,000	-	-	-	-	NZTA did not approve funding for this project
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	14068 Wood Street Urban Improvements	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,000	On track to complete this year
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	PGF108 Pouto Road Phase 1 (Physical Works)	3,200,000	2,384,850	-1,185,394	-	-	-	-	4,399,456	Budget incorrect when first loaded
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	PGF115 Unsealed Network Improvements	-	3,500,000	-3,500,000	-	-	-	-	-	Budget transferred to correct project codes., project completed.
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	SR111 Kaihu Valley Trail	2,000,000	-	1,584,102	-	-	-	-1,495,517	2,088,585	Incorrect budget to start with Total budget carry over to 2021 should have been 3,584,102 of which \$1.495 will be carried forward into 2022/23 year
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	New project - KVT Ahikiwi Bridge 14114	-	-	-	-	350,000	-	-	350,000	New approved funding from NZTA 100% Feb 2022
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	New project - KVT SH12 crossings alignment 14115	-	-	-	-	250,000	-	-	250,000	New approved funding from NZTA 100% Feb 2022
	278 Roading Infrastructure - New and Impr	SR112 Kaiwaka Footbridges	500,000	37,700	250,009	-	20,000	11,333	-	819,042	On track to complete this year

Activity Group	Cost Centre	Project	Annual Plan FY22	Approved Carry overs from FY21	Budget change - already Council approved	Budget transfer to another project	New budget changes requiring approval	Opex transfers	Indicative Carry forwards to FY23	New Balance - Forecast	Comment	
	281 Traffic Services	14097 Traffic Serv renewals - Amenity contract	-	-	-	9,599	-	-	-	9,599	Transfer from Project 14069 \$9599	
	281 Traffic Services	14098 Traffic Serv renewals - Streetlight contract	-	-	-	118,106	-	-	-	118,106	Transfer from Project 14069 \$118106	
	281 Traffic Services	14069 Traffic services renewals	185,000	-	125,000	-127,705	-	-	-	182,295	On track to complete this year	
			<b>28,092,519</b>	<b>7,157,950</b>	<b>-3,076,796</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1,120,000</b>	<b>-2,014,712</b>	<b>-2,695,517</b>	<b>28,583,444</b>		
	<b>Waste Minimisation</b>											
	190 Waste Minimisation	14042 Recycling Bins	275,000	-	-275,000	-	-	-	-	-	Bins to be financed through the contract for new bins	
	227 District Closed Landfills	14041 Weighbridge	65,000	-	100,000	-	-	-	-165,000	-	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year, \$100k subsidy from Waste levy to be accounted for next year	
	227 District Closed Landfills	10722 Hakaru Leachate Improvements	-	45,000	-	-	35,656	-	-	80,656	additional budget from provision to cover - funded by provision	
			<b>340,000</b>	<b>45,000</b>	<b>-175,000</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>35,656</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-165,000</b>	<b>80,656</b>		
	<b>Wastewater</b>											
	165 Te Kopuru Wastewater Scheme	13038 Te Kopuru WWTP Aerator Upgrade	-	20,000	-12,887	-	-	-	-	7,113	Balance on project - now complete	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	11020 Pipe Renewal from Condition assessment	200,000	-	-	-200,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer to project 13044	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	11059 Pump Station 1 & 2 upgrade	-	158,000	-	-158,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer to project 13044	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	13044 Dargaville Wastewater Renewals	263,000	150,000	1,031	358,000	-	-	-	772,031	Transfer from Project 11020, \$200k is funded from Council renewals - not DIA \$413 budget, Transfer \$158k from 11059	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	14029 Dargaville growth design	100,000	-	-	-	-	-	-60,000	40,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	14030 Darg WW Gwth - 1800m WW line Bower St to Awakino area to PS1	50,000	-	-	-	-	-	-50,000	-	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year - related to project 14029	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	14031 Spring St reticulation	375,000	-	-	-	37,000	-	-412,000	-	Will carry over to FY23 but requires \$37k to complete	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	14032 Station Rd reticulation	200,000	-	-	-	10,000	-	-210,000	-	Will carry over to FY23 but requires \$10k to complete	
	202 Dargaville Wastewater Scheme	14101 Aerator for Dargaville WWTP	-	-	-	-	55,569	-	-	55,569	Dargaville WWTP Aerator to meet resource consent conditions	
	207 Mangawhai Wastewater Scheme	14033 Managawhai Wastewater minor pump replacements	45,000	-	-	-45,000	-	-	-	-	Move to project 14036	
	219 Kaiwaka Wastewater Scheme	11000 Pipe Renewals from Condition assessment	-	50,000	-	-50,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer to project 13045	
	219 Kaiwaka Wastewater Scheme	13045 Kaiwaka Wastewater Renewals	228,000	137,000	-33,696	400,000	-	-	-	731,304	\$300k Moved from Water project 13042 transfer \$50k from project 11000, transfer from 14034 \$50k	
	219 Kaiwaka Wastewater Scheme	14034 Pipe Renewals from Condition assessment	50,000	-	-	-50,000	-	-	-	-	Transfer to Project 13045	
	219 Kaiwaka Wastewater Scheme	New project 14118 Kaiwaka Membrane Filtration Optimisation	-	-	-	-	100,000	-	-	100,000	New project - work done after project completed to optimise. 50% Growth 50% LOS	
	232 Maungaturoto Wastewater Scheme	14035 Maung WW Grwth - Bickerstaff Rd 670m growth and renewal	75,000	-	-	-	-	-	-40,000	35,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year	
	232 Maungaturoto Wastewater Scheme	14036 Maungaturoto Wastewater Renewals	50,000	-	-	45,000	-	-	-	95,000	Budget transfer from 14033 \$45k for urgent replacement of electrical cabinet at treatment plant	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	11040 Upgrade WWTP	-	30,000	-	-30,000	-	-	-	-	Move \$30,000 into project 14038	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	11041 Upgrade Existing Reticulation	750,000	-	-	-	-	-	-650,000	100,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	13028 Extend Reticulation (8years)	400,000	-	-	-	-	-	-300,000	100,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	13047 MCWWS Balance Tank Stage 1 2020-2021	-	303,000	2,038,704	1,450,000	-	-	-1,762,000	2,029,704	As previously approved by Council	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	14037 Balancing tank (do not use)	1,450,000	-	-	-1,450,000	-	-	-	-	Budget transfer to 13036 so there's only one project code.	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	14038 Capacity upgrades to 5000 connections	300,000	-	-	30,000	-	-	-100,000	230,000	\$30,000 moved from project 11040, carry forward \$100,000	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	14039 Extensions to reticulation including new disposal system	1,500,000	-	-	-	-	-	-1,500,000	-	Carry forward budget 500k to 2022/23 year and 2023/24 year \$1m	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	14040 Mangawhai Wastewater small extensions right of ways	40,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	40,000	On track to complete this year	
	280 Mangawhai WW development	New project 14117 Mangawhai WW Browns Rd Irrigation Farm Aerator	-	-	-	-	250,000	-	-	250,000	New project to rectify odour issues, funded by 100% LOS (Loan)	
			<b>6,076,000</b>	<b>848,000</b>	<b>1,993,152</b>	<b>300,000</b>	<b>452,569</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-5,084,000</b>	<b>4,585,721</b>		
	<b>Water Supply</b>											
	127 Dargaville Water Supply	12003 WTP	240,000	128,000	-	-	-	-	-244,608	123,392	Hayden Project c/fwd not briefed	
	127 Dargaville Water Supply	12011 Dargaville raw watermain river crossing Stage 1 of 2	70,000	-	-	-70,000	-	-	-	-	Move to project 13003 stage 2, move actuals and archive this code as per Di Millar	
	127 Dargaville Water Supply	13003 Dargaville raw watermain river crossings Stage 2	60,000	177,450	-	70,000	-	-	-	307,450	Move budget from project 12011 from stage 1 (eros wants to know if there will be any balance left over so we could do some strategy work \$30-\$40K?) Di agreed to carry over \$40k for Eros strategy work	
	127 Dargaville Water Supply	14070 Dargaville Watermain Upgrade to Awakino Plant 2km	80,000	-	-	-	-	-	-35,000	45,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year	
	127 Dargaville Water Supply	14071 Kaihu tank filler	500,000	-	-500,000	-	-	-	-	-	Project not going ahead. Trust Board declined Maori land usage	
	154 Maungaturoto Water Supply	13040 Maungaturoto Raw Watermain Renewal	-	885,000	-49,568	-	-	-	-	835,432	On track to complete this year	
	154 Maungaturoto Water Supply	13041 Maungaturoto Water Reservoir Replacement	120,000	113,000	-59,103	-163,000	-	-	-	10,897	Trsf to Project 13043 agreed with DIA	
	154 Maungaturoto Water Supply	13042 Maungaturoto Water Truck Filler & Main Upgrade	157,000	341,000	-73,490	-300,000	-	-	-	124,510	Move budget to project 13045 ad per David Usmar (need to move funding subsidy with this)	
	154 Maungaturoto Water Supply	13043 Maungaturoto Hurndall Street Watermain Renewal	138,500	311,000	27,857	163,000	-	-	-	640,357	Trsf from project 13041 agreed with DIA	
	154 Maungaturoto Water Supply	14072 Mungi South, South Valley, Bickerstaff Rd 670m Watermain	75,000	-	-	-	-	-	-35,000	40,000	Carry forward budget to 2022/23 year	
	154 Maungaturoto Water Supply	14100 Install Deplox	-	-	-	10,880	-	-	-	10,880	Budget transfer from Project 14073 \$10,880	
	158 Mangawhai Water Supply	14073 Mangawhai water renewals	18,000	-	-	-10,880	-	-	-	7,120	Op's Engineer indicates minimal minor renewals required. Suggest split allocation and balance carried forward	
	161 Ruawai Water Supply	12001 WTP and reservoir	275,568	-	77,882	-	-	-	-	353,450	Council Nov 21 resolution funded by Depn reserves	
	161 Ruawai Water Supply	13037 Ruawai Watermain Renewals	-	675,000	-141,323	-	-	-	-	533,677	Budget was overstated for 2020/21 year total budget was \$795 less \$347 spent in 2020/21 year \$533 to spend this year	
	<b>Water Supply Total</b>		<b>1,734,068</b>	<b>2,630,450</b>	<b>-717,745</b>	<b>-300,000</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-314,608</b>	<b>3,032,165</b>		
	<b>Totals</b>		<b>51,460,587</b>	<b>12,726,400</b>	<b>-1,000,127</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>2,157,511</b>	<b>-1,984,712</b>	<b>-16,522,437</b>	<b>46,837,222</b>		



# Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy – Proposal for Consultation

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Shireen Munday, Policy Specialist

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To approve a Consultation Document for proposed amendments to the Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy 2021.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

Amendments to the existing Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy 2021 (the Policy) are proposed to meet new legislative requirements that came into effect in 2021. These requirements provide that the existing Policy must be reviewed and amended prior to 1 July 2022. Due to time constraints, this review only focuses on meeting the statutory requirements, with a more detailed review proposed for the 2022/23 financial year.

A draft Policy has been developed to meet the new requirements. Before finalising the new Policy, Council must consider the relevant statutory matters and consult with the community.

This report and the attachments address these necessary statutory matters. This includes providing a draft Consultation Document for Council's approval that meets the requirements of sections 82 and 82A of the Local Government Act 2002.

Consultation is proposed to proceed between 2 and 20 May, with deliberations scheduled for 1 June and a final proposed Policy to be presented to the June 2022 Council meeting for consideration.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves the legislative process, analysis and consultation approach outlined in Attachment A.
- b) Approves the Consultation Document provided in Attachment B.
- c) Delegates [insert Elected Member's names] to hear community views on the proposal.
- d) Authorises the Chief Executive to make any necessary minor drafting or presentation amendments to the Consultation Document prior to final printing and publication.

## Context | Horopaki

S102 of the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) requires councils to have a range of policies, including a 'policy on the remission and postponement of rates on Māori freehold land' (the Policy).

Section 108 of the LGA provides for specific matters on the Policy, including consideration of the matters set out in Schedule 11. Section 114 of the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 also references a Policy made under this section.

The Local Government (Rating of Whenua Māori) Amendment Act 2021 (The Amendment Act) came into force in 2021. Among other things, it:

- a. expanded the purpose of the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 to include facilitating the administration of rates in a manner that supports the principles set out in the Preamble to Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993 (the Principles).<sup>1</sup>
- b. expanded non-rateability to unused rating units of Māori freehold land
- c. introduced a statutory remission for Māori freehold land under development
- d. requires the Policy to support the Principles, by 1 July 2022.

Due to time constraints, a full best practice review of the Policy is not able to be achieved. At the April Briefing, staff proposed that this initial review is considered as the first step of a wider review process, with a more detailed review, option analysis and informal engagement programme to commence in the 2022/2023 financial year.

This will also include an opportunity to review the new policy approach to determine any implementation issues and/or additional unintended consequences and will allow for informal engagement with key stakeholders. Depending on the outcome of this process, Council may then determine the Policy can be retained as it is or determine to propose further amendments and formally consult with the community on the proposal.

This would ensure a full review and any subsequent amendments can be proposed in advance of, or in conjunction with, the 2024 Long Term Plan process.

Staff presented a draft amended Policy, to meet the above requirements to Council for discussion and direction at the 6 April Council Briefing. Council must now confirm the proposed amended Policy for consultation.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

Council must consider a range of matters and follow a prescribed process under the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) when considering amendments to a Policy made under section 102 and 108 of the LGA. This process, together with the relevant matters for consideration within that process, is summarised in **Attachment A**.

Attachment A also outlines that a determination of reasonably practicable options is required. This matter is repeated here for completeness.

### Reasonably practicable options

Having a Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy (Policy) is a statutory requirement. The current review follows a statutory requirement to review the Policy to give effect to new legislative requirements. Council has two reasonably practicable options to consider.

Option	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
<b>Option A</b> – propose the amendments to the Policy as presented at this meeting.	Propose the amendments for consultation and amend the Policy incorporating any further changes considered by Council as a result of consultation	The proposed amendments are considered to meet the statutory requirements.	NA – statutory requirement.
<b>Option B</b> – propose amendments to the Policy in accordance with any direction received at this meeting.	Propose the amendments for consultation and amend the Policy incorporating any further changes considered by Council as a result of consultation	Council can provide further direction on the policy approach contained within the draft Policy.	Uncertainty regarding legal validity of any additional changes due to time constraints.

Staff recommend Option A.

<sup>1</sup> The principles are wide ranging. The most relevant to local government are “And whereas it is desirable to recognise that land is a taonga tuku iho of special significance to Maori people and, for that reason, to promote the retention of that land in the hands of its owners, their whanau, and their hapu, and to protect wahi tapu: and to facilitate the occupation, development, and utilisation of that land for the benefit of its owners, their whanau, and their hapu”



The Consultation Document provided in **Attachment B** contains all the relevant information and references to sources of information to meet the legislative requirements as outlined in Attachment A. It also contains the proposed amended Policy.

The recommendations in this report include delegating the power to hear community views to two Elected Members. Any feedback received through this process will be included in the deliberations report, together with the written submissions received.

Subject to the decisions made at this meeting, the consultation on the proposal is scheduled to start on Monday 2 May, with a final draft Policy to be presented to the June Council meeting for consideration.

### **Impacts on Māori**

The proposed Policy changes do not introduce any new or additional remissions than what is currently provided for in the Policy. The proposed changes remove the duplication that has resulted from the legislative changes while enabling Council to continue to provide rates remission in certain circumstances. As outlined in this report, a more detailed review of the Policy is planned and this will allow for thorough engagement with key stakeholders at that time. The Iwi Relations Team have liaised with our Mana Whenua partners on this two step review approach.

### **Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā**

This report and the associated decisions relate to a statutory consultation matter and therefore consultation will be undertaken in accordance with the legislative requirements and following the process outlined in this report and its attachments, and as provided for in Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

### **Next steps | E whaiake nei**

Staff will undertake the necessary actions to implement the consultation and Panel activities as outlined in this report.

### **Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga**

	<b>Title</b>
A	Legislative and process requirements
B	Consultation Document (includes the proposed amended Policy)



# Attachment A

## Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy

### Legislative process, analysis and consultation requirements

This document summarises all relevant legislative requirements for the process of amending Council's current Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy, provides an overview of the associated analysis undertaken and includes the consultation activities proposed in accordance with legislative requirements. Noting these steps are based on Council resolving to accept all recommendations in the main agenda report as tabled relating to the proposed process.

#### 1. Process overview

1. The Local Government Act 2002 (LGA), specifically section 102, requires every council to adopt a Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy (MFLP).
2. Section 108 of the LGA provides the matters which must be stated in the MFLP and what must be considered in determining a MFLP.
3. Council's current MFLP was last reviewed in 2021.
4. The Local Government (Rating of Whenua Māori) Amendment Act 2021 requires a review of the MFLP prior to 1 July 2022.
5. Section 102(4) (b) provides that Council must consult in accordance with section 82 of the LGA when amending a MFLP.
6. Section 82A of the LGA provides further information requirements for any consultations that are required in the LGA to be undertaken in accordance with s82. The following items must be made publicly available for the proposed process:
  - the proposal and the reasons for the proposal
  - an analysis of the reasonably practicable options, including the proposal identified under section 77(1) (LGA)
  - details of the proposed changes to the MFLP.

#### 2. Analysis and application of the process requirements

1. Council must review the existing Policy in accordance with statutory requirements.
2. Staff have sought legal advice and provided a proposed amended MFLP that is considered to meet the new requirements.
3. Consultation in accordance with s82 of the LGA is required before Council makes any amendments to the MFLP.
4. The proposal and the reasons for the proposal are detailed in the Consultation Document provided in Attachment B to this report.

# Attachment A

5. The analysis of reasonably practicable options is provided here:

Having a MFLP is a statutory requirement, and this review is as a result of a statutory requirement to review the MFLP to give effect to new legislative requirements. As a result of the review process to date, Council has two reasonably practicable options to consider.

Option	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Option A – propose the amendments to the MFLP as presented at this meeting.	Propose the amendments for consultation and amend the Policy incorporating any further changes considered by Council as a result of consultation	The proposed amendments are considered to meet the statutory requirements, including the requirements of S108 of the LGA.	NA – statutory requirement.
Option B – propose amendments to the MFLP in accordance with any direction received at this meeting.	Propose the amendments for consultation and amend the Policy incorporating any further changes considered by Council as a result of consultation	Council can provide further direction on the policy approach contained within the draft MFLP.	Uncertainty regarding legal validity of any additional changes due to time constraints.

Staff recommend Option A.

6. The details of the proposed changes to the MFLP are provided in the consultation document, together with a draft MFLP reflecting all proposed amendments.

### 3. Summary of consultation activities

This section details the proposed process and activities designed to meet the consultation requirements of s82 of the LGA for the proposed amendments.

1. Council resolves to consult on the proposed amendments at a meeting of Council and to approve the Consultation Document as provided in Attachment B to this report to meet the requirements of s82A LGA.
2. The Consultation Document contains the following to meet legislative requirements:
  - the proposal and the reasons for the proposal
  - an overview of the proposed changes to the MFLP and a draft of the revised MFLP incorporating all amendments
  - a link to this agenda item for information on the reasonably practicable options.
3. Council gives public notice of the proposal on the KDC website and in the Kaipara Lifestyler and the Kaipara Focus, advising members of the public of the proposal.
4. The Consultation Document is made available for public inspection on Council's website and at Council offices in Dargaville and Mangawhai and at Council's public libraries.

# Attachment A

5. Feedback will be invited through written submissions and the ability to schedule an online or face to face meeting with an Elected Member to provide feedback verbally during the submissions period.
6. Council delegates two Elected Members the authority to hear submitters in accordance with point 5 above.
7. The submission period for the proposal is scheduled to start 2 May and close 20 May 2022. Section 82 of the LGA does not stipulate a minimum consultation period.
8. Council will consider all feedback received and any other comment or advice sought from staff or other persons and deliberate on these matters at a public meeting. This meeting is scheduled for 1 June 2022.
9. Based on the decisions made at the deliberations meeting, staff will make any necessary further amendments to the proposed amended MFLP.
10. Subject to the above process and all associated decisions of Council, the amendments to the MFLP are scheduled to be made by resolution at the Council meeting in June 2022.



---

# *Consultation Document*

*Proposed amendments to the*

## *Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy*

---

***Council would like to hear your views on a proposal to amend the Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy***

**Key dates:**

Submission period:	2 – 20 May
Chat with a Councillor:	10 & 11 May
Deliberations:	1 June
Decision of Council:	29 June



# Attachment B

## Proposal

This Consultation Document includes:

	Page
The reasons for the proposal	ii
The legislative considerations	ii
How to make a submission	iii
A draft of the proposed amended Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy	iv
A submission form	v

### Reasons for the proposal

S102 of the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) requires councils to have a range of policies, including a 'policy on the remission and postponement of rates on Māori freehold land' (the Policy).

Section 108 of the LGA provides for specific matters on the Policy, including consideration of the matters set out in Schedule 11. Section 114 of the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 also references a Policy made under this section.

The Local Government (Rating of Whenua Māori) Amendment Act 2021 (The Amendment Act) came into force in 2021. Among other things, it:

- a. expanded the purpose of the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 to include facilitating the administration of rates in a manner that supports the principles set out in the Preamble to Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993
- b. expanded non-rateability to unused rating units of Māori freehold land
- c. introduced a statutory remission for Māori freehold land under development
- d. requires the Policy to support the Principles set out in the Preamble to the Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993, by 1 July 2022.

Council has reviewed the existing Policy against the above matters and is now proposing amendments to the Policy to meet the new requirements.

### Legislative considerations

The Policy is subject to the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 (the Act). When making and amending this Policy, Council is required to make certain determinations before proceeding to make amendments to the Policy and is also required to consult with the community before making a final decision.

Council considered these matters at the June 2022 Council Meeting as part of the process to approve this Consultation Document. The report containing the relevant matters and the associated minutes of the meeting can be found on Council's website [here](#).



# Attachment B

## Tell us what you think

### How to give us your feedback

There are a few ways you can tell us what you think. You can submit your feedback in writing and/or you can discuss your views with a Councillor over the phone or via audio visual link.

### Written submissions

You can provide us with a written submission. There are a few options for how you can do this:

- do it online [here](#)
- follow the instructions at the back of this document for other options.

### Chat with a Councillor

We are holding '*Chat with a Councillor*' sessions for you to talk directly to a Councillor to provide your thoughts, any concerns and feedback.

These sessions will be 15 minutes long and held during the week beginning 9 May 2022. They will be over the phone or via an audio/visual link depending on your preference. Each discussion will be supported by a Council staff member who will record the key points of your feedback.

Register for a session [here](#) or follow the instructions on the submission form at the back of this document. We will be in touch as soon as possible after receiving your registration to schedule your session.

Please note that you don't have to provide a written submission to tell us about your thoughts in person, although you are welcome to do both.

### What will happen with your feedback?

All feedback received will be summarised and reported back to the Panel of Elected Members who will deliberate on the feedback provided and then make a recommendation to the Council on the proposal. They will receive copies of all written submissions as well.



# **Kaipara District Council Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy**

<b>Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remission Policy</b>			
<b>Primary Audience</b>	external	<b>Business owner</b>	Finance
<b>Policy type</b>	statutory	<b>Act</b>	Local Government Act 2002
<b>Author</b>	NA	<b>Date adopted/last reviewed</b>	tbc
<b>Authorised/adopted by</b>	Council	<b>Next review date</b>	tbc

DRAFT

## Contents

1. Legislative requirements.....	4
2. Objective .....	4
3. Policy .....	4
4. Criteria.....	4
5. Applications .....	4
6. Relevant legislation.....	5

DRAFT

## **1. Legislative requirements**

- 1.1 Section 102(2) of the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) provides that a Council must adopt a policy on the postponement and remission of rates on Māori freehold land (the Policy).

## **2. Objective**

- 2.1 The purpose of this Policy is to ensure the fair and equitable collection of rates from all sectors of the community, while recognising that Māori freehold land has particular conditions and ownership structures, which may make it appropriate to provide relief from rates in circumstances beyond what it already provided by legislation.
- 2.2 In determining this Policy, Council has considered the matters set out in schedule 11 of the LGA and how it supports the principles set out in the Preamble to Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993.

## **3. Policy**

- 3.1 Council may remit some or all of the rates on a rating unit of Māori freehold land where it considers it just and equitable to do so because:
- a. There are special circumstances in relation to the rating unit, or the incidence of rates (or a particular rate) assessed for the rating unit which mean that the rating unit's rates are disproportionate to those assessed for comparable rating units.
  - b. The circumstances of the rating unit or ratepayer are comparable to those where a remission or non-rateability would be granted under the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002, but the circumstances are such that the land does not qualify.
  - c. There are exceptional circumstances such that the Council believes it is equitable to remit rates.

## **4. Criteria**

- 4.1 Application for land to be granted remission of rates in accordance with this Policy must be made by the owners or trustees, or any person(s) who has gained a right to occupy through the Māori Land Courts and is the authorised occupier(s).
- 4.2 The land is Māori freehold land as defined in the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002.

## **5. Applications**

- 5.1 Applications for remissions under this Policy must be made in writing, and must include the following information:
- a. the details of the property for which the application for remission is being made
  - b. an explanation of why the applicant considers the circumstances of the application meet the Objective (Clause 2) of this Policy
  - c. an explanation of how the matters under Clause 3 of this Policy applies to the circumstances of the application
  - d. documentation that proves the land which is the subject of the application is Māori freehold land, as defined above.

## 6. Relevant legislation

- 6.1 Legislation relevant to this Policy includes, but is not limited to:
- a. Local Government Act 2002 (LGA)
  - b. Local Government (Rating of Whenua Māori) Amendment Act 2021
  - c. Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993
  - d. Local Government (Rating) Act 2002
- 6.2 This Policy is adopted in accordance with the requirements of sections 102(1) and 108 of the LGA. Under section 108(4A) of the LGA this Policy is required to be reviewed at least once every 6 years using a consultation process that gives effect to the requirements of section 82 of the LGA.

DRAFT

# SUBMISSION FORM – Māori Freehold Land Rates Postponement and Remissions Policy

Thank you for taking this opportunity to comment, we welcome your feedback.

## Please enter your details below

First name(s): \_\_\_\_\_ Last name: \_\_\_\_\_

Postal address: \_\_\_\_\_

Mobile: \_\_\_\_\_ Other phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

I am writing this submission:  as an individual  on behalf of an organisation

Organisation name: \_\_\_\_\_

## Tell us in writing

Be sure to get your written comments to us by **5pm Friday 20 May 2022**. You can provide your comments on the next page and follow the instructions below on how to get them to us or choose one of the ways listed below to make your submission.

## Tell us in person

You don't have to provide a written submission to tell us about your thoughts in person, although you are welcome to do both.

Instead of holding a hearing, we are holding 'chat with a Councillor' sessions for you to provide your thoughts, any concerns and feedback in person. These sessions will be 15 minutes long and held during the week beginning **9 May 2022**. The sessions will be over the phone or via an audio/visual link depending on your preference. You will get to talk 'one-on-one' to a Councillor and the discussion will be supported by a Council staff member. Please tick the box below to indicate whether you are interested in an 'in person' feedback session.

**I would like to register for a 'chat with a Councillor'** yes  no

Please get your registration to us by **5pm Sunday 8 May 2022**.

Follow the instructions below on how to get your registration for a session to us. We will be in touch as soon as possible to schedule your session.

## How to register and/or get your feedback to us

**In person:** By visiting our customer service desks at either Dargaville, 42 Hokianga Road or Mangawhai, 6 Molesworth Drive.

**On the phone:** Phone 09 439 9299 or 0800 727 059 and one of our friendly team will take your registration or can even fill this form out for you over the phone.

**By mail:** Kaipara District Council, Private Bag 1001, Dargaville 0340

**Online:** Complete this form online: [www.kaipara.govt.nz/haveyoursay](http://www.kaipara.govt.nz/haveyoursay)

**Email:** Email us at [submissions@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:submissions@kaipara.govt.nz) and put 'Policy' in the subject line.

## Join Kaipara District People's Panel!

Tick the box if you want to be added to Kaipara District People's Panel. As a member you will be asked periodically to complete short surveys, as well as to participate in other consultations Council is undertaking in the future. If you tick 'yes', you will be sent an email for more information about the panel and an invitation to complete your first survey.

I would like to join the People's Panel:  Yes  No





# Report on Baylys Beach Projects

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Eros Foschieri, Infrastructure Planning Manager

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To update Council on the status of the latest developments in relation to the Baylys Beach projects and the process of Community engagement.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

Council asked staff in November 2021 to report back on the issues/options at Baylys Beach, and progress subsequent to the damage caused by weather events.

A community meeting was held at Baylys Beach Community Centre on the 31<sup>st</sup> of March 2022, which included Council staff and representatives from the Baylys Beach Society (BBS) and Chases Gorge Camp Committee (CGCC). The meeting was an opportunity for Council staff and the participants to identify areas of interest requiring attention, understand their background, potential interconnection between other areas and discuss the next steps.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Notes the Report on Baylys Beach Projects

## Context | Horopaki

The weather events in September and October 2021 resulted in erosion and damage to Baylys Beach, with vehicle access to the beach completely removed. Repair works had been undertaken and these were reported to the November 2021 Council meeting.

Following that meeting and completion of the work, BBS and CGCC requested from Council further information regarding the projects underway, such as the toilet block and sandbags, and raised concerns over Council works at Baylys Beach.

It was also resolved at the November Council meeting, that the Chief Executive report back to the March 2022 Council Meeting with a comprehensive report detailing issues and options at Baylys Beach. Staff are reporting progress back to this Council meeting, due to workload pressure.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

BBS and CGCC have requested support and action from Council in addressing concerns around infrastructure in their community which are in disrepair or are not fit for purpose. A dedicated team of Council staff for Baylys Beach have been tasked to identify all potential issues requiring Council involvement. Representatives of all groups met at the Baylys Beach Community Centre on the 31<sup>st</sup> of March 2022 to discuss the key areas of interest, community concerns, past works undertaken by Council and those currently underway (refer **Attachment B** for a copy of the presentation slides).

From these discussions, key issues were identified and listed in a clear and systematic manner to allow monitoring and for consideration moving forward (refer **Attachment A**). Participants also

agreed communication protocols and the process for further meetings, including the implementation of the agreed actions.

The key areas identified requiring Council attention include the ownership, maintenance and efficacy of the sandbags, the emergency works, carparks and footpaths and overall connectivity plan. Details of actions and timeframes are provided within the minutes (refer **Attachment A**); however, the main areas include:

- **Sandbags:** Initial installation and payment, identification of ownership, current purpose of the sandbags and beneficiaries of the installation, and finally responsibility for ongoing maintenance.
- **Footpaths and carparks:** A number of footpaths and car parks have been identified as potentially requiring an upgrade. A connectivity plan is currently under development. This will include a study of the overall area and detailing of individual intervention. The plan will form the basis for requesting external funding.
- **Emergency works:** Following the recent storm in October 2021 and subsequent damage, KDC had undertaken works on site, as noted on the November 2021 report. A consultant has been engaged to assess the situation, particularly around the footpath, and provide structural solutions. A rock wall will be the most likely solution with the design completed by end of May 2022.

## Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council's decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

## Next steps | E whaiake nei

The CGCC and BBS groups will advise Council staff regarding future meetings facilitating community conversations relating to the various Baylys Beach projects.

Council staff are working through the options and future approaches with the community and will report again to Council in due course.

## Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Attachment A - Baylys Beach Meeting 31-03-2022 Minutes of Meeting
B	Attachment B - Baylys Beach Meeting 31-03-2022 Presentation

## Baylys Beach Meeting (31/03/2022)

Date	31 March 2022
Time	15-17.30
Location	Baylys Beach Community Centre

### Present

Community: Cheryl Carmichael (Chair of BBS), Graeme Ramsey CGCC Chair and Director, BBCC Trustee, Kelly Larritt BBS Committee Track Maintenance and Repairs, Lindy Laird Director CGCC, Marissa Palmer Secretary and Director CGCC

KDC: Eros Foschieri (Infrastructure Delivery Manager) Andy Brown (Asset Manager Roading (NTA & KDC), Mark Schreurs (Strategic Infrastructure Planner), Amanda Bennett (Community and Engagement Advisor).

### Apologies

none

ID	Description	Comments
-	Agenda and General Business	Presentation and documentation shared during the meeting is attached in Appendix A.
-	Communication Plans	All information and communication surrounding Baylys Beach now needs to be sent to Amanda Bennett who will be the one point of contact for the Baylys Beach Community. Amanda Bennett to forward all communications to Cheryl Carmichael to share with BBS
1	Sandbags	<p>Graeme explained that sandbag wall was constructed to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• provide embankment stability to minimise erosion i.e, defending the cliff.</li> <li>• control and direct the storm water flow to reduce the need for grader maintenance to maintain good road access to the beach</li> </ul> <p>Graeme said the sandbags did work as intended but were not maintained by KDC</p> <p>BBS advised that Council had taken responsibility at a meeting in Nov 2022 where they presented the Sandbag issue. KDC did not think that this was the case.</p> <p>BBS stated KDC was told by staff presenting the Stormwater Report at their November Council meeting attended by Cheryl and Graeme that KDC was responsible for the sandbags and would need to find funds to remedy the problem (on zoom, minuted, and online). KDC did not think this was the case.</p> <p>CGCC stated they had contributed \$7,000 to purchase bags. Maurice Weatherall contributed some funds and Community working bees were held for plantings etc. KDC paid the remainder of the installation costs. Andy Brown KDC disagreed that KDC had any financial involvement or paid any costs. CGCC members disagreed with Andy Brown KDC.</p> <p>BBS suggested Taranaki coastline retaining work as a possible starting point for a solution and stated there were more effective solutions to be investigated.</p>

		<p>BBS applied for all information under the (release of information act) and were provided with some information however it seems not all as Andy Brown referred to information and a lot of communications that BBS were not aware of.</p> <p>KDC Comments</p> <p>Andy (KDC) confirmed KDC assisted by way of providing the contractor at a reasonable rate. All the rest of the works and funding for the construction were by others.</p> <p>Andy said Council approved a resolution to not maintain the sandbags.</p> <p>The Resource Consent related to the sandbags sits with KDC.</p> <p>Questions remaining unclear prior to identifying further steps and responsibilities:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Who paid for the contractor that initially installed the sandbags?</li> <li>2. Who paid for the costs of installing the sandbags?</li> <li>3. Who are the sandbags owned by?</li> <li>4. Are the sandbags on private land?</li> <li>5. What is the primary purpose of the sandbags (ie who benefits from it)?</li> <li>6. What are the other purposes of the sandbags?</li> <li>7. Evidence (and date) of any Council resolution in relation to the sandbags?</li> </ol> <p><i>Note Post Meeting</i> CGCC requested to include this question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Who is responsible for the maintenance of the sandbags?</li> </ul>
2	Chase Gorge Works	<p>KDC statement is: The aim of the project is to reduce and slow the amount of surface water flowing down through the catchment area, and by doing so, minimise the roadside discharge of stormwater. It does not seek to protect the road corridor, beach access, or potential unstable land downstream from Chases Terrace.</p> <p>Area of disagreement: CGCC wanted the minutes to read “The Aim of the project is to reduce, slow and spread the peak stormwater flow to the beach”</p> <p>The proposed work is located on private land and a covenant agreement is required to allow for the planting. KDC is currently negotiating with the landowner to begin the work however the legal owner has died, and this is delaying the work starting.</p> <p><i>Note Post Meeting</i> KDC statement above is as per November 2021 Council report</p>
3	Footpath Connection (Community Centre) – linked to item 4 and 8 for solution	<p>The suggested new footpath extension (outside Community Centre on Seaview Rd across road to under Baylys St sign - on Seaview Rd - to then link with existing footpath further down Seaview) not ideal and not the safest option. A pedestrian crossing and/or significant visible signage would be essential to make drivers aware there will be pedestrians crossing the road twice.</p> <p>There is limited parking at Baylys and limited footpaths not up to standard. Opus completed study on works required however due to other district commitments the council decided not to fund the work at Baylys Beach.</p> <p>Andy Brown talked about the strategy for the West Coast now including a project team consisting of himself and Amanda Bennett to focus on the infrastructure and roading required on the West Coast. The Baylys Beach Connectivity Plan is the first piece of work under this new structure. This structure has worked very well on the East Coast of Kaipara.</p> <p>KDC is looking at funding stream via NZTA that can fund 62c in dollar. However, this is subject to a detailed and well-planned business case.</p>

		<p>BBS advised at their AGM in May 2021 David Wills KDC Councillor announced KDC had allocated \$150,000 to investigate extra parking options at Baylys (this is in BBS AGM minutes) KDC agreed that attention and action is required at Baylys Beach. BBS talked about the spatial plan and the amount of work BBS put into that and asked why that document was not used. KDC explained the use to the spatial plan for the District Review and zoning strategies.</p> <p>KDC has agreed to budget \$100K into developing a connectivity plan and work has started on this. Business Case will be completed in next 12 to 18 months with the intention that funding will be requested in 2024 -2027 budgets.</p> <p><u>The connectivity plan is the key document to be able to access funding and get the full picture for the entire BB area (footpaths, car parks, signage and roads)</u></p> <p><i>Note Post Meeting:</i> As confirmed and noted on Section 1: Changes made post consultation of the LTP 2021-2031</p> <p><i>"...Council agreed to include \$100,000 in Year 1 to develop a business case (investigation and design) and \$300,000 in Year 2 for construction, of the parking and connectivity improvements project at Baylys Beach as recommended by the Northland Transportation Alliance.</i></p> <p><i>We will apply to the 2022 Tourism Innovation Fund (TIF) and have assumed an 80% subsidy for the purpose of the LTP. We'll improve existing footpaths as part of the annual footpath renewal programme.."</i></p>
4	<p>Footpath Connection (Kelly St)</p> <p>Linked to item 3 and 8 for solution</p>	<p>Footpaths from Ripiro Drive down to link with Kelly St not safe in other heavy pedestrian areas.</p> <p>Refer to point 3 re connectivity plan</p>
5	<p>Footpath Emergency Works (Lower Seaview Rd, upstream bridge)</p> <p>Linked to item 10 for solution</p>	<p>Following the flood in October 2021, the footpath upstream the bridge on Seaview Road has been damaged. KDC advised that emergency funding application has gone into NZTA already to fix the damage.</p> <p>BBS mentioned that the footpaths unsafe.</p> <p>Footpath requiring urgent attention. Work intended to be completed before winter. A consultant has already been engaged to assess the situation and provide structural solutions. Geotech engineers and designing 4 – 6 weeks of work. Rock wall is likely solution. Design likely completed by end of May 2022.</p> <p>It is noted that the works are only on the southern side of the stream (public land). Works on private land will not be undertaken.</p> <p>KDC suggested for the owner affected by the flood (such as the owner of the retaining wall opposite the footpath) to apply to EQC.</p> <p>BBS is satisfied with this consultation. BBS agreed the work is urgent and needs to be done as soon as possible. As further information is available (such as proposed solution) this will be made available by KDC to BBS.</p>
6	<p>Footpath Connection (Lower Sunset)</p>	<p>Footpath from Sunset west remains closed as also unsafe.</p> <p>KDC mentioned that emergency work (refer to point 3) can only be undertaken on public land. This statement will be confirmed to BBS and CGCC by KDC</p> <p>Questions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Who owns the concrete steps and land from the new subdivision down to the road?</li> <li>• Who owns the land with the concrete steps and footpath from Sunset west subdivision to the beach entrance at Seaview Road?</li> <li>• How far KDC land extend near the subdivision?</li> </ul>

		<p><i>Note Post Meeting</i></p> <p><i>Funding can only be used on public land from NZTA where the road/transport network is being affected</i></p>
7	Track Erosion	<p>People traffic and rain has eroded the current track. BBS want to redirect the track and have spoken to Lara Stott about this. Lara has been out and taken photos. However, no action has been taken.</p> <p>BBS want to redirect a short section of the track. However no action has been taken despite a track inspection being agreed to with Lara Stott Parks and Reserves in late January. Despite several methods of contact to Lara to confirm inspection, no response was ever received.</p>
8	Boardwalk (lower Seaview Road) Linked to item 3 and 4 for solution	<p>Boardwalk is maintained by Parks and Reserves however KDC suggested it should be taken into Roding Asset and included into the Connectivity Plan. This may attract funding from NZTA. No capital funding is available this financial year for works related to the boardwalk</p> <p>BBC and CGCC comments that repairs and maintenance should be done by KDC as it already exists. It is not a new feature as in the developing Connectivity Plan.</p> <p>BBC and CGCC comments that urgent need for maintenance with sand build up spreading, increasingly covering boardwalk at beach end making access difficult to impossible for many to toilet and/or beach. The dune is effectively spreading over the boardwalk.</p> <p>BBS Feb 2022 report: The boardwalk has been a positive addition to the amenity of the beach. It is having a longer-term impact on the entrance way by acting as a sand trap thus building the southern bank and pushing the roadway and stream towards the northern bank. Sand builds up on the boardwalk making access difficult for some Refer to point 3 re connectivity plan</p> <p><i>Note Post Meeting:</i> <i>KDC to confirm if maintenance budget is available for removal of sand or general maintenance work. Capital budget availability is as referred in point 3 (note post meeting)</i></p>
9	Turning at the bridge	<p>Bridge is privately owned.</p> <p>BBS commented that signage before the beach entrance way does not deter newcomers from proceeding further, thus creating traffic problems and significant safety issues for pedestrians when many turn using the private bridge</p> <p>Campervans, caravans and cars drive to the bridge/beach and realise the road goes onto beach and do not want to go further and try to turn around using the bridge There needs to be some sort of no turning sign before drivers go past the Community Centre and more parking needs to be provided at Community Centre around using the bridge and private Camp Club road and land before drivers go past the carparking area to be provided near existing parking area.</p> <p>KDC investigate potential signage to discourage campers or big vehicle go past the existing car park area</p>
10	Bridge Erosion (downstream) Linked to item 5 for solution	<p>The grassed bank was eroded under storm duress, the erosion issue was exacerbated by the rip rap work placed by the resident on the ocean side of the bridge. This unfortunately was not engineered and was constructed without a resource consent. This intervention led to a change in stream flow direction and caused significant damages to the ocean side of the bridge stream shape, washing out the road and footpath and other areas downstream of the bridge</p> <p>CGCC strongly disputed the above statement. Rocks were utilized to replace a failing wooden retaining wall in 2021 before the floods of October 2021. No resource consent was required and the CGCC had the work engineered</p>

		<p>KDC advised that emergency funding application has gone into NZTA already to fix the damage (refer to item 5). In Andy Browns opinion the erosion issue was exacerbated. CGCC strongly disputes this and if it remains in the minutes, CGCC will dispute this through the channels available to them.</p> <p>BBS wants to make the point there is no use of rip rap in the Chases Gorge area as Andy has stated.</p> <p>KDC suggested getting engineers to look at the bridge and any nearby privately owned structure as it could be a EQC claim.</p> <p>Andy Brown has previously advised private owners to ring EQC and talk to their insurance providers.</p> <p><i>Action/Note Post Meeting</i>  <i>KDC statement can be supported by the consultant that undertook the emergency work design. If a formal statement is required, this can be provided by KDC.</i>  <i>Furthermore, as noted on the Baylys Beach – Sea View Rd RP 746 to RP 826 memorandum (dated 09 Oct 2021) prepared by WSP on the emergency works in relation to the rock wall:</i>  <i>“...Minor retaining structure damage and loss of rock spalls. These rock spalls were to small to resist the flow, which resulted in dislodgement and displacement..”</i></p> <p><i>CGCC to provide detail of:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Report or any evidence that the rockwall was adequately engineered including calculation.</li> <li>- Proof from a specialized planner or communication with NRC that the works did not require resource consent.</li> </ul>
11	Road Speed Review	<p>Regional wide approach although NTA determines the speed range with consultation from community. One-way roading option was suggested</p> <p>BBS was advised to gather evidence for this consultation/submission. BBS still has this evidence and will forward to KDC.</p> <p>Review is still to be completed by NTA (following NZTA national speed review process) and new date suggested is 28 April 2022.</p>
12	School Bus Stop	<p>Privately owned bus runs at Baylys Beach to pick up and drop off students. Bus stops have no shelter or clear signage.</p> <p>BBS advised this is dangerous with the state of the roading, parking and footpaths.</p> <p>KDC commented that the bus is privately owned and not clear of responsibilities in relation to provision of bus stop shelters. Risk is to create a destination point without having a safe way to reach it (footpath or crossings).</p> <p>NRC transportation team through the NTA run and advise on public transport services in Whangarei and may be of assistance. This may also form part of the connectivity plan. Refer to point 3 re connectivity plan. Andy Brown said he would investigate the possibility of a temporary bus shelter.</p>
13	Ripiro Beach Management Plan	<p>KDC advised that the Business Case has been signed off now and the internal Project Team has been formed. Consultation with the Community will be starting end of April.</p> <p>Amanda Bennett is in this project team.</p> <p>The models of 90 Mile Beach and Muriwai were mentioned and could be used in research.</p>
14	Designated parking spaces	<p>BBS requested for more designated parking spaces both near the beach and off roadsides (yellow lines) around areas at Baylys (eg outside Sharky’s on Ripiro Drive, down Seaview Rd towards beach etc). Filling existing open (unmaintained) drains in many areas of Baylys requiring linking old with new culvert sections under the fill would quickly provide much off-street safer parking. Currently vehicles park wherever they can find a space (eg over yellow lines) regularly forcing pedestrians onto the road with traffic.</p> <p>KDC commented that no funding is available for any physical works at Baylys on the current financial year (2021-2022). Also, that prior to design and build of any car parks, a holistic approach should be undertaken to confirm the appropriate location in line with the other items (like footpaths, roadway</p>

		<p>etc). This will be covered in the Connectivity Plan. Refer to point 3 re connectivity plan.</p> <p>Lack of parking space at Baylys has been a community priority for many years. The 2021 Opus report addressed the parking issue in their report.</p>
15	Signage	<p>This will be covered in the connectivity plan, also under 9 &amp; 11.</p> <p>Eros Foschieri indicated signage could be easily and inexpensively sourced. BBS would like to be included in any signage proposals both on content and location.</p>
16	Toilet Block	<p>BBS commented that the toilets have coped, although they are getting shabbier hastening the need for a major revamp. A mural for the toilets has been proposed to KDC for almost two years. Emptying the tanks is especially difficult at this time of year. The urgent upgrade of the public toilets which are functioning but a very poor advertisement for the District to both visitors and locals. The future of the shower which was left in an inconvenient position when the boardwalk was built</p> <p>KDC advised that communications had been progressed with BBS around this with the outcome that although the work on the toilet block should have been completed in this financial year it was not. The budget for this has been rolled over into this next financial year and this has been confirmed. KDC have requested a condition assessment on the block and funds have been allocated and confirmed for this. This work is due to be completed shortly. Following this, design will be completed and then planning will complete their work and implementation will begin. This is likely to be a 2022 spring/summer project and will also be taken into account with the connectivity plan.</p> <p>BBS asks why the already existing toilet block needs to be taken into account with the future connectivity plan?</p> <p>The mural on the toilets will be part of the project and Amanda Bennett and Cheryl Carmichael are also communicating about this.</p> <p>KDC talked about the TIF fund and if this may be a project for this fund. KDC to clarify if TIF fund is in reference to toilet repairs/maintenance or mural or both? Presuming mural?</p>
17	Park/Reserves Facilities/Playground – KDC to update	<p>BBS mentioned that \$80,000 are allocated for the playground. BBS mentioned that a playground should be located on the park in Ocean View Terrace.</p> <p>KDC needs to confirm if this funding is available.</p> <p>KDC also mentioned that clear expectation should be set around the potential playground (aspect, size, features etc.) as the fund available is limited (\$80k). Also, that a playground may represent a destination for local kids that may walk to it. Connectivity between the playground and surrounding areas will be required to confirm safe access along the journey (be included in the connectivity plan)</p> <p>TIF application may also a venue to obtain further funding</p>
18	Stormwater Network	<p>Due to the complexity of the catchment and sensitivity of the environment any intervention on the stormwater network (like installation of new culverts or diversions) may have unexpected consequences (both downstream and upstream the intervention).</p> <p>A broad approach in form of a stormwater catchment management plan should be developed to understand the big picture (where and how everything flows) prior to undertaken any intervention on the system. No funding is available on this LTP (next 3 years) for this work.</p> <p>BBS reiterated the storm water system at Baylys had been poorly maintained for years. Examples given (of many available) were the ineffective small grate at the end of the new footpath outside Community Centre and the majorly blocked very large culvert at the lowest end of the Seaview Road gully causing water to back up and flood properties.</p>
19	EQC	Refer to point 10



20	Climate Change	This will form part of the Ripiro Beach Management Plan, Connectivity Plan and Stormwater. Consultation on this will be part of these projects.
21	Next	Amanda Bennett and Cheryl Carmichael to agree on frequency and composition of next meetings. Ideally a table as per attached in Appendix B would be beneficial.

ID	Related to Item	Action	By who	By When
1	1	Andy Brown to find: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Minutes that council spoke about being responsible November 2021</li> <li>- Council meeting minutes and zoom recording that Council staff spoke about KDC being responsible for sandbags and send to Amanda Bennet to be sent to BBS</li> </ul>	Andy	02-May
2	1	Amanda Bennett to confirm: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Who paid for the contractor that initially installed the sandbags?</li> <li>2. Who paid for the costs of installing the sandbags?</li> <li>3. Who are the sandbags owned by?</li> <li>4. Are the sandbags on private land?</li> <li>5. What is the primary purpose of the sandbags (ie who benefits from it)?</li> <li>6. What are the other purposes of the sandbags?</li> <li>7. Evidence (and date) of any Council resolution in relation to the sandbags</li> </ol> <p><i>Note Post Meeting</i>  CGCC requested to include this question:  8. Who is responsible for the maintenance of the sandbags?</p>	Amanda	02-May
3	1	Andy Brown to provide info he was referring to Amanda in relation to the information request sent by BBS	Andy	02-May
4	2	Amanda Bennett to seek idea of timing for the legal process of covenant with gully landowners and provide feedback to BBS	Amanda	02-May
5	3,4,8	KDC West Coast Team to consult with work with community on the Connectivity Plan and outcomes.	Amanda	Ongoing
6	7	Amanda Bennett to confirm internally on status of track erosion and potential way forward and report to BBS	Amanda	02-May
7	8	Boardwalk is maintained by Parks and Reserves however KDC suggested it should be taken into Roding Asset and included into the Connectivity Plan. Andy Brown to confirm if the boardwalk is on KDC Roding or Park Asset	Andy	02-May
8	9	Andy Brown to get a safety engineer to assess and provide KDC with options on what signage be effective and consult with BBS	Andy	02-May

		<i>Note Post Meeting:</i> <i>KDC to confirm if maintenance budget is available for removal of sand or general maintenance work. Capital budget availability is as referred in point 3</i>	Andy	02 May
9	10	<i>Action/Note Post Meeting</i> <i>CGCC provide detail of:</i> - <i>Report or any evidence that the rockwall was adequately engineered including calculation.</i> - <i>Proof from a specialized planner or communication with NRC that the works did not require resource consent.</i>	CGCC	02-May
10	11	Cheryl to provide info to Amanda Bennett re road speed review.	Cheryl	02-May
12	13	Amanda Bennett to provide dates for consultation and ongoing communications to BBS on the Ripiro Beach Management Plan	Amanda	Ongoing
13	16	Amanda Bennett to provide feedback to BBS as soon as condition assessment is completed	Amanda	Ongoing
14	17	Mark Schreurs to confirm funding for BB playground	Mark	02-May
15	21	Amanda and Cheryl to agree on meetings, frequency and composition. Amanda to report	Amanda	02-May

#### Item Enclosed

1 – Presentation (pdf)

#### Actions from previous meeting

None, first meeting

DRAFT ONLY _ TO BE CONFIRMED AT NEXT MEETING		Next Meetings							
ID	Description	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
1	Sandbags	info available							
2	Chase Gorge Works			info available					
3	Footpath Connection (Community Centre) – linked to item 4 for solution		info available						
4	Footpath Connection (Kelly St) - linked to item 3 for solution		info available						
5	Footpath Emergency Works ( Lower Seaview Rd, upstream bridge)		info available						
6	Footpath Connection (Lower Sunset)		info available						
7	Track Erosion	info available							
8	Boardwalk (lower Seaview Road)		info available						
9	Turning at the bridge	info available							
10	Bridge Erosion (downstream)	info available							
11	Road Speed Review		info available						
12	School Bus Stop		info available						
13	Ripiro Beach Mgt Plan		info available						
14	Designated parking spaces			info available					
15	Signage			info available					
16	Toilet Block		info available						
17	Facilities/Playground – KDC to update			info available					
18	Stormwater Network								
19	EQC								
20	Climate Change								





Kaipara te Orangakui

**Kaipara  
District**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

# Baylys Beach Presentation

Meeting - 31/03/2022

# Purpose

---

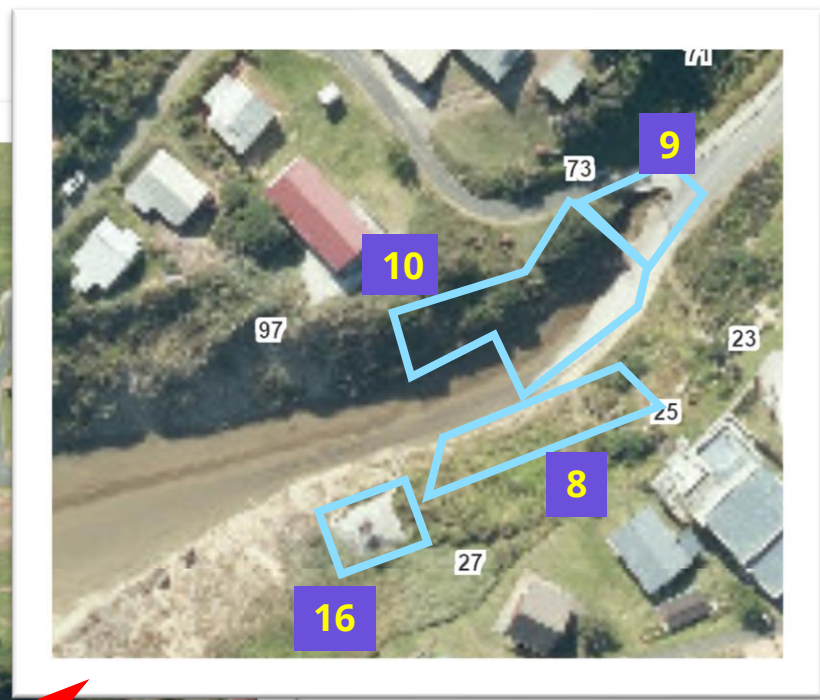
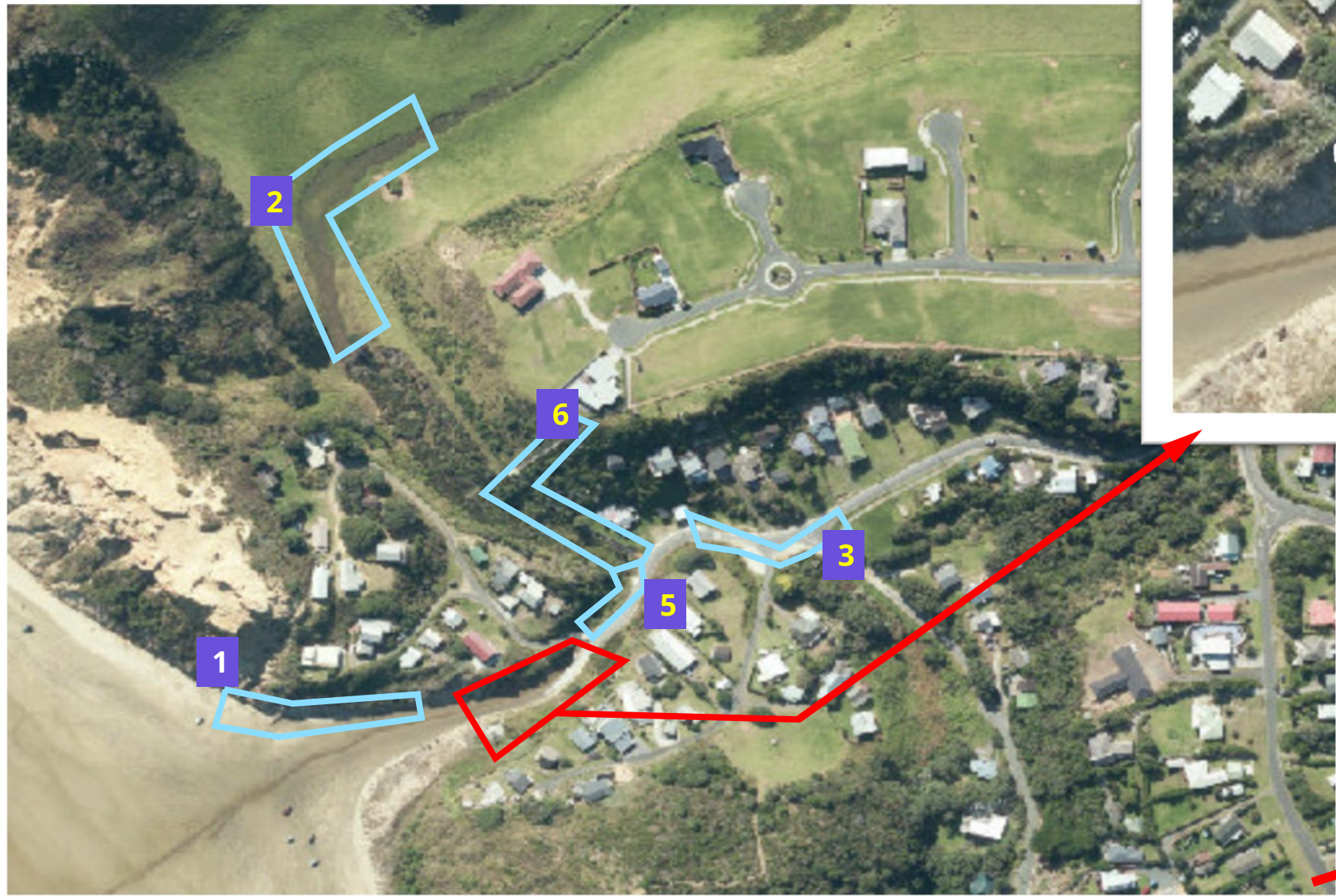
- 1) **Clear identification of areas of interest**
- 2) **Understand background and potential interconnection between areas**
- 3) **Agree on next steps for each area**

# Agenda

---

1. Area of Interest broad view
2. Discussion for each area (filling up provided sheets)

# Areas of Interest





# Areas of Interest

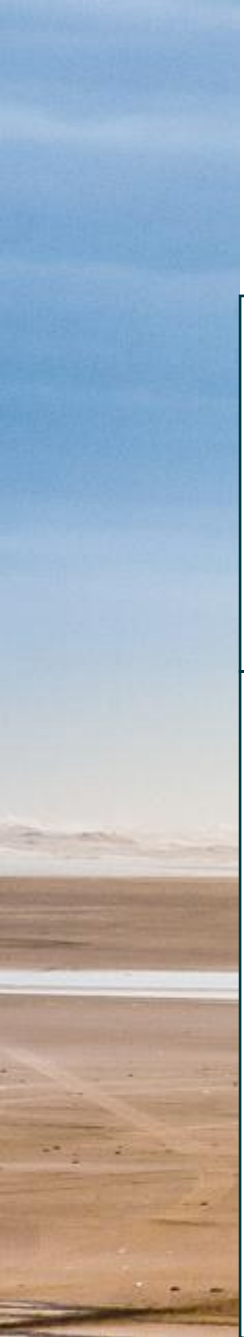
ID	Description
1	Sandbags
2	Chase Gorge Works
3	Footpath Connection (Community Centre) – linked to item 4 for solution
4	Footpath Connection (Kelly St) - linked to item 3 for solution
5	Footpath Emergency Works ( Lower Seaview Rd, upstream bridge)
6	Footpath Connection (Lower Sunset)
7	Track Erosion
8	Boardwalk (lower Seaview Road)
9	Turning at the bridge
10	Bridge Erosion (downstream)
11	Road Speed Review
12	School Bus Stop
13	Ripiro Beach Mgt Plan
14	Designated parking spaces
15	Signage
16	Toilet Block
17	Facilities/Playground – KDC to update
18	Stormwater Network
19	EQC
20	Climate Change

# Area of Interest

Number :

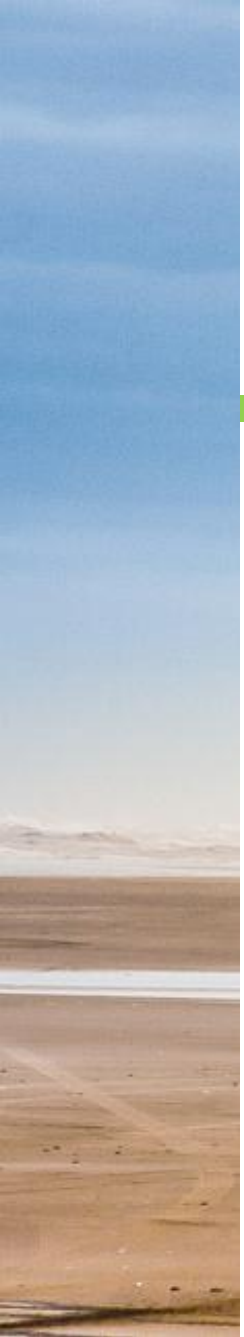
Description :

Notes :



# Next Steps

---






# Thank You

**For any question or further information please contact**

Amanda Bennett 

KDC Community & Engagement Advisor

[abennett@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:abennett@kaipara.govt.nz) 

09-439 12 06 

# Mangawhai shared path – Delegation to award Contract

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Tim Manning, Project Manager

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To seek approval to delegate authority to the Mayor and Chief Executive to approve the award of Contract 1000: Mangawhai Shared Path Phase 2 – Boardwalk and Bridge Construction.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

The Mangawhai Shared Path (MSP) Phase 2 and 3 is a Council approved project within the 21/24 LTP. The 21/24 LTP has allocated \$13.66M.

Phase 2 is estimated to cost \$5.135M, which has a lower range (-10%) of \$4.62M and a higher range (+15%) of \$5.91M. Phase 2 is currently being priced by tenderers and the tender is due to close on 27th April 2022.

Phase 2 is included within the IRG funding agreement so has to be completed within 2022. It also has a critical time restriction, in that all piling within Tara Creek Channel (and to the east of the channel) has to be completed by the end of August 2022 to avoid impacting the Fairy Tern breeding season (otherwise it couldn't start again until March 2023). To enable compliance with the Fairy Tern restrictions, the Phase 2 Contract 1000 needs to be awarded by 13th May 2022.

We are seeking approval to delegate authority to the Mayor and Chief Executive to award the contract, to a maximum value of \$5.91m.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Delegates the Mayor and Chief Executive authority to award Contract 1000: Mangawhai Shared Path Phase 2 – Boardwalk and Bridge Construction, subject to the Contract Price being within the approved project budget of \$5,910,000 + GST.

## Context | Horopaki

The MSP project is a Council approved project with a 21/24 LTP budget of \$13.66M for phase 2 and 3. The project has a funding contribution of \$2.4M from the IRG and, in February 2021, Waka Kotahi allocated a further \$3.97m of funding for the shared path phase 1 (62% of a total Waka Kotahi approved cost of \$6.4m). In April 2022 Waka Kotahi approved phase 2 and 3.

### Phase 1 of the project includes:

The construction of the Insley Street / Moir Street intersection and Molesworth Drive / Moir Street intersection and associated shared path - section 15 and 21 (see staging plan in **Attachment A**)

Approximately 830m of shared path from the ITM on Molesworth Drive to approximately 90A Molesworth Drive – section 6A

### Phase 2 of the project includes:

The retaining wall, boardwalk and bridge section of the shared path from 90A Molesworth Drive to Mangawhai Central – sections 7 – 9

### Phase 3 of the project includes:

From Wood St to the ITM on Molesworth Drive - sections 4-6B

From Mangawhai Central to Dune View Drive along Molesworth Drive - sections 11-14

Contract 1000: Mangawhai Shared Path and Intersections Improvements relates solely to phase 2 of the MSP Project.

The tender for Phase 2 is due to close 27th April 2022.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

### Options

Option 1: Council approves the delegation of financial authority to the Mayor and Chief Executive to award Contract 1000: Mangawhai Shared Path Phase 2 – boardwalk and bridge construction. This option enables the Contract to be awarded before 13th May 2022, enabling the works to start as soon as possible.

Option 2: Recommendation to award a contract would be taken to the Council meeting on 25th May. This would delay the construction programme by approximately two weeks.

The recommended option is **Option 1**.

### Financial implications

The total LTP approved scope of works for phase 2 and 3 is \$13.66M. This has a local share component of \$5.191M and a Waka Kotahi subsidy of \$8.469M

Contract 1000 for the construction of the Mangawhai Shared Path Phase 2 – boardwalk and bridge construction has a high range estimated cost maximum of \$5.91M.

### Risks and mitigations

There is a risk that the piling works can't be completed by the end of August 2022. This would create two impacts:

- Cost impact, due to part of the project being put on hold until March 2023.
- Failure to complete the project within 2022, as per the IRG funding agreement.

This risk is reduced through a Contract being awarded before 13th May 2021.

## Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

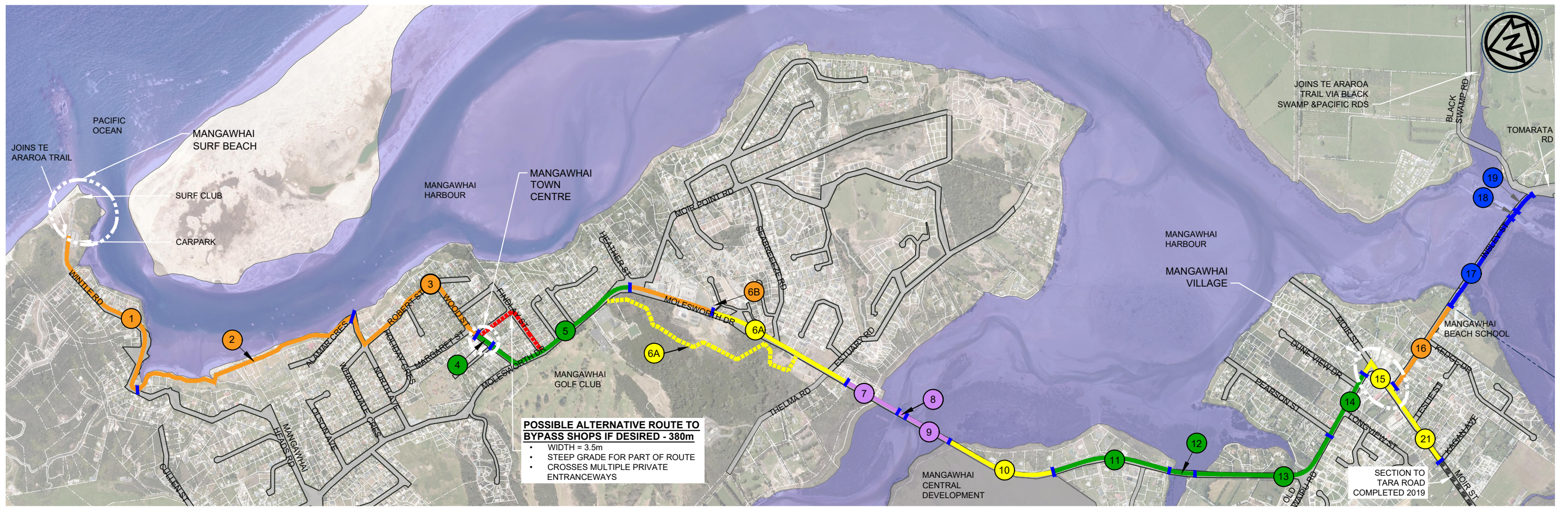
The decisions or matters of this report do not trigger the significance criteria outlined in Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, and the public will be informed via agenda on the website.

## Next steps | E whaiake nei

If Council delegates authority to award the contract, the recommendation to award will be presented to the Mayor and Chief Executive for approval or rejection.

## Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Mangawhai Shared Path Staging Plan Rev3



**SCHEDULE OF PROPOSED WORKS**

NODE	LTP
1 SURF BEACH CAR PARK SOUTH BDY TO BEACH ACCESS NO 10	2
2 BEACH ACCESS NO 10 TO NORTH AVE	2
3 NORTH AVE TO WOOD ST COMMERCIAL AREA	2
4 WOOD ST (MANGAWHAI TOWN CENTRE)	2
5 WOOD ST COMMERCIAL AREA TO MOIR POINT RD	1

NODE	LTP
6A MANGAWHAI COMMUNITY PARK SHARED PATH ITM TO 90A MOLESWORTH DRIVE	0
6B MOIR POINT RD TO ITM	2
7 90A MOLESWORTH DRIVE TO BRIDGE	1
8 MOLESWORTH DRIVE BRIDGE	1
9 BRIDGE TO MANGAWHAI CENTRAL DEVELOPMENT	1

NODE	LTP
10 MANGAWHAI CENTRAL DEVELOPMENT	0
11 MANGAWHAI CENTRAL DEVELOPMENT TO CAUSE WAY	1
12 CAUSE WAY	1
13 CAUSE WAY TO PEARSON STREET	1
14 PEARSON ST TO MANGAWHAI VILLAGE COMMERCIAL AREA	1

NODE	LTP
15 MANGAWHAI VILLAGE COMMERCIAL AREA	0
16 MANGAWHAI VILLAGE COMMERCIAL AREA TO SCHOOL	2
17 SCHOOL TO INSLEY STREET BRIDGE	3
18 INSLEY STREET BRIDGE	3
19 BRIDGE TO TOMARATA RD INTERSECTION	3
21 MOIR ST: KAGAN AVE TO INSLEY ST	0

- LTP KEY:**
- LTP 0 (2018/21)
  - LTP 1 PHASE 1 (2021/24)
  - LTP 1 PHASE 2 (2021/24)
  - LTP 2 (2024/27)
  - LTP 3 (2027/30)





# Spring Street Reticulation - Additional funding request

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Sue Davidson, GM Sustainable Growth and Investment

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To approve additional funding for construction of reticulated wastewater system on Spring Street, Dargaville.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

Through the course of planning and design for the Spring Street Reticulation project, substantial cost increases of materials and plant have resulted in a forecasted project overspend of \$405,200, increasing the total budget for the project to \$780,200.

This agenda seeks approval to fund this increase by way of loan to be repaid over 20 years by wastewater targeted rates.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūhunga

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Approves the short fall of \$405,200 be funded by loan, repaid by wastewater targeted rates, to facilitate the construction of a reticulated wastewater system on Spring Street, Dargaville.

## Context | Horopaki

Assessments by Council's health officers have identified that the majority of onsite wastewater systems servicing the dwellings in the Spring Street area are failing, predominantly due to the high watertable in this area. This poses a risk to public health and the environment, and KDC has approved an extension of Dargaville's reticulated wastewater system to enable these properties to connect as the most cost-effective solution.

A budget of \$375,000 was approved in the LTP 2021–2031 and funded by loan. This amount was based on estimates made in 2020. This project involves construction of an additional 1.3km of pressurised rising main and the installation of an onsite wastewater low pressure pump station for each property. These ratepayers connecting (15 dwellings and further 17 landowners) will pay the appropriate building consent, decommissioning costs, and connection fee, as a portion of the investment.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

It was highlighted previously in the business case that the estimated cost of construction 1.3km of rising main, plus pumps for each of the 15 dwellings, plus internal costs and contingency would be 10% over the allocated budget. This cost estimate was based on prices from 2020.

An up-to-date cost estimate given to us by engineering consultants Hawthorne Geddes has identified that the estimated cost of the physical works exceeds the available budget by \$294,000 with a 20% contingency for tendered costs this brings the shortfall to a total of \$405,200.

Costs have risen sharply since 2020 when the original estimate was completed, for example the cost of wastewater pipe has increased by 40%. The prices of pumps and other ancillary parts have

also increased in price substantially. There have also been increases in cost for professional services, some of which were not included in the initial cost calculation.

To complete the project in the current market, we require an additional \$294,000 to be added to the existing project budget to cover the shortfall, which would result in a revised budget of \$780,200.

The Spring Street residential area includes 15 existing homes and 17 future homes. Council historically approved development in this area however it is just outside the urban area and at risk of coastal inundation. Without a fundable solution Council will be required to issue an insanitary building notice (environmental health requisition) on the properties. The proposal is an efficient solution for a community which has developed on land which is not suitable for septic systems and will reduce the risk of environmental contamination and avoid a potentially lengthy regulatory and legal process.

If this additional budget request is approved it will mean a small rate increase for the district wide sewer ratepayers in the future.

## Options

**Option 1:** Approve the additional budget by way of loan, repaid by wastewater targeted rates, to cover the shortfall in completing the project.

**This is the recommended option.**

**Option 2:** Status quo. Council does not fund the additional budget required to complete the project. The residents are not able to connect to reticulated wastewater and are therefore required to replace their septic systems at a cost (\$30,000+). If the property owners were not able to fix their systems Council would have to issue an insanitary building notice.

## Policy and planning implications

None

## Financial implications

The financial implications are set out in the body of this report. The forecasted project overspend of \$405,000, increasing the total budget for the project to \$780,200, and includes:

- Reticulation (1.38km), pumps and grinder \$309,900
- Contingency (for material variations) \$111,300
- Other \$359,000

Future development on vacant lots will pay a Development Contribution fee which is \$1,887 based on the Draft Development Contribution policy.

## Risks and mitigations

There is a risk that the true market cost of the physical works exceeds the revised budget. The estimate given was from engineering consultants and not from a construction contractor. To mitigate this, we have included a 20% of the physical works as a contingency to the total budget of the project, taking the shortfall from \$294,000 to \$405,200.

This proposal, once completed, would mitigate the existing environmental issues.

## Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. This project is detailed in the LTP.

No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council's decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

### **Next steps | E whaiake nei**

Should the funding be approved continue with the works as per the original scope.

### **Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga**

No attachments.



# Rescinding of ‘Decision-making arrangements: COVID-19 Pandemic’ decision

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Jason Marris, GM Engagement and Transformation

## Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To rescind the COVID-19 Pandemic decision-making delegations that were put in place by Council in March 2020, as they are no longer required.

## Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga

As a result of the Covid-19 Pandemic, Council agreed decision-making delegations at an Emergency Council meeting in March 2020. These delegations were required as Council could not legally meet and make decisions as the legislative amendments had yet to be made.

The delegations therefore ensured that Council decisions could continue to be made where a decision was needed. The delegations remain in force until the Epidemic notice expires or if Council decides to rescind the delegations. They have remained in place since March 2020 as the Covid-19 situation has proven to be unpredictable in a continually changing environment.

Now that New Zealand is moving toward a more ‘normal’ workplace operations with the recent announcements, it is extremely unlikely that these delegations will be required. Therefore, staff are recommending that Council rescinds the delegations.

## Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) Rescinds the Decision-making delegations agreed at the 23 March 2020 Emergency Council meeting (Resolution 2(a-k) itemised in the minutes at **Attachment A**).

## Context | Horopaki

An Emergency Council meeting was held on 23 March 2020 to authorise delegations for decision-making due to the Covid-19 pandemic. The minutes from the Emergency Meeting are available at **Attachment A**.

The delegations were agreed in response to the first Covid-19 lockdown announcement by Central Government. The agreed delegations were appropriate at the time as the legislative amendments allowing fully online Council meetings had yet to be created, therefore no Council meetings could be held and no decision-making could occur. The delegations were put in place for the time period that the Epidemic Notice remains in force, or when Council chooses to rescind the delegation.

Much has happened in the subsequent two years. While the Epidemic Notice remains in place, legislation was enacted temporarily permitting fully online Council meetings. This ability ceases once the Epidemic Notice expires.

The Council decision-making delegations have remained in place since March 2020, as the Covid-19 situation has remained unpredictable and has been constantly evolving and changing over the last two years. However, given the current situation and the move toward returning to ‘normal’ workplace operations in the country, it is extremely unlikely these delegations will be required.

Staff are now recommending that Council rescinds the delegations.

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

### Options

#### 1. Council rescinds the decision-making delegations made in March 2020.

Council meets online as a matter of course due to the temporary legislation enabling this to occur. All decisions can be legally made by Council using that format. As New Zealand begins to return to more 'normal' workplace operations, it is extremely unlikely that these delegations will be required.

This is the recommended option.

#### 2. Council does not rescind the decision-making delegations made in March 2020:

The delegations will remain in place until the Epidemic Notice expires or is ceased.

### Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council's decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

### Next steps | E whaiake nei

The decision will be recorded in the minutes and our Council website will be updated.

### Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Minutes of the Emergency meeting of Kaipara District Council - 23 March 2020

**Minutes of the Emergency meeting of  
Kaipara District Council**

**Date:** Monday 23 March, 2020  
**Time:** 11:00 am.  
**Location:** Conference Room  
Northern Wairoa Memorial Hall  
Dargaville

**Members Present:** Mayor Jason Smith  
Anna Curnow  
Cr Jonathan Larsen (by phone)  
Cr Karen Joyce-Paki  
Cr Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock  
Cr Mark Vincent  
Cr Peter Wethey  
Cr Eryn Wilson-Collins  
**Apologies:** Cr David Wills

---

**1. Opening**

**1.1 Karakia**

Cr Joyce-Paki opened the meeting with a Karakia.

**1.2 Apologies**

**Moved By:** Mayor Smith

**Seconded By:** Cr Curnow

That the Kaipara District Council:

- a) Accepts the apology from Cr Wills.

**Carried**

### 1.3 Confirmation of agenda

The Council confirmed the Agenda.

**Moved By:** Mayor Smith

**Seconded By:** Cr Curnow

That the agenda for the 23 March 2020 Council meeting be confirmed.

**Carried**

### 1.4 Conflict of interest declaration

There were no conflicts declared.

## 2. Decision-making arrangements: COVID-19 Pandemic

**Moved By:** Mayor Smith

**Seconded By:** Cr Curnow

That Kaipara District Council:

- a) **Notes** that the Department of Internal Affairs is currently investigating drafting an Order in Council to amend the statutory requirement for a physical quorum to be present to constitute local authority meetings, allowing for meetings of Council to be held electronically
- b) **Notes** that if such an Order in Council were to be enacted, Kaipara District Council may further require an additional, more flexible urgent decision-making process
- c) **Delegates** the power to make urgent decisions on behalf of the Council or its committees, to the Mayor, Deputy Mayor and Councillor Wethey (or a substituted elected member should one of the three members listed become incapacitated)
- d) **Notes** that the above delegation (c) will only be used for decisions which;
  - i. are urgent, and
  - ii. are recommended to decision-makers by the Chief Executive, and
  - iii. are to be made in a period where it is not possible to convene a physical or electronic Council meeting due to the COVID-19 situation and
  - iv. Council is statutorily able to delegate



- e) **Notes** that when the urgent decision-making process is exercised, instances will be reported to the first subsequent Council or relevant committee meeting
- f) **Notes** that where statute states that decision-making cannot be delegated, arrangements will be made to delay the decision until a Council meeting can be convened in a manner that ensures the health and wellbeing of people involved
- g) **Approves** the budgeted financial delegation of the Chief Executive be increased to up to \$1 million to ensure contractual arrangements can continue to be met and established, only when it is not possible to convene a decision making meeting of Council, and the matter is of a time critical and urgent nature
- h) **Agrees** that the above delegation (g) is provided for expenditure that is included in the Council's current approved Long-term Plan and budgeted for the year it is to be spent over the period
- i) **Approves** an unbudgeted financial delegation of up to \$100,000 for the Chief Executive to ensure efficient management of unforeseen operational expenses due to COVID-19
- j) **Agrees** that all delegations (recommendations c, g and i) will remain in force until the pandemic is declared over, or advice is received from the Government instructing all government agencies and authorities to return to normal business status, or Council decides to do so
- k) **Notes** that the delegation provided to Councillor Curnow in December 2019 to declare a state of local emergency in the event the Mayor may be unavailable, remains in force.

**Carried**

### **3. Closure**

Cr Joyce-Paki closed the meeting with a Karakia.

**This meeting closed at 12.20 pm.**

**Kaipara District Council**

**Dargaville**



# **Kaipara District Council Taumata Arowai Drinking Water Standards and Rules Joint Submission**

**Meeting:** Kaipara District Council  
**Date of meeting:** 27 April 2022  
**Reporting officer:** Donnick Mugutso, Operations Manager

## **Purpose | Ngā whāinga**

To update Council on the 28 March 2022 Taumata Arowai Drinking Water Standards and Rules Consultation joint submission with Whangarei and Far North District Councils.

## **Executive summary | Whakarāpopototanga**

Taumata Arowai published the consultation document on Drinking Water Standards and Rules on 15 January and the consultation closed on 28 March 2022. Taumata Arowai sought feedback on the following documents:

- Drinking Water Standards
- Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules
- Drinking Water Aesthetic Values
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance Measures

The documents are of a technical and operational nature and a summary of our submission's areas we sought relief are as follows:

- Understanding the impact of non-compliance
- Acknowledgement of increased costs to conduct testing for new and increased frequencies
- Ability of laboratories to be able to undertake increased testing
- Cost of specific tests

(See **Attachments A to H** in this document)

The submission presented here is from the joint effort of the three Northland district councils and reflect the issues of concern for the Northland's public drinking water supplies. Due to timing the joint submission documents were finalised on the day of submission, 28 March 2022 and the earliest opportunity for Council to view the submission is now.

## **Recommendation | Ngā tūtohunga**

That the Kaipara District Council

- a) Notes the 'Kaipara District Council Taumata Arowai Drinking Water Standards and Rules Joint Submission from the Operations Manager.

## **Context | Horopaki**

Taumata Arowai became the Drinking Water Regulator on 15 November 2021 and the Water Services Act 2021 provides Taumata Arowai with the legal framework and tools to regulate the performance of the New Zealand drinking water sector. The Havelock North drinking water

contamination in August 2016 led to a Government Inquiry which recommended among others, the review of Drinking Water Standards, the culmination of which is the creation of the Draft Standards and Rules which Taumata Arowai consulted on from 15 January to 28 March 2022. Taumata Arowai sought feedback on the following documents:

- Drinking Water Standards
- Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules
- Drinking Water Aesthetic Values
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance Measures

## Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

The consultation documents total 180 pages from the 8 main documents stated above. There are 19 separate documents in total in the consultation. These are technical and operational in nature and hence the three District Councils of Northland sought to present a joint submission where staff synergies were created, and the common issues were captured.

It should be noted that the draft standards and rules are supposed to be operational and complied with as from 1 July 2022. We have raised concern on the timing of full compliance to the new Standards and Rules as there will be limited time from the time of adoption the standards and rules to compliance.

### Implications for Kaipara

The Kaipara District Council Waters Operations Team is working on compiling estimates on how the regulations will impact our supplies both operationally and financially. In general, there will be:

1. More monitoring of our water supply distribution network
2. More sampling and monitoring of the Source Water Supplies
3. Cyanotoxin monitoring through sampling (algae bloom monitoring)
4. Giving effect to Te mana o te Wai through the Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance Measures
5. Requirement for more staff Full Time Equivalent (FTEs) (both contractor and internal).
6. Requirement for more training of staff (both contractor and internal)
7. More reporting requirements
8. More preparation of written procedures
9. More water safety planning – both preparation of plans and implementation for management of risk
10. More monitoring and sampling of chemicals that may not be listed in the Drinking Water Standards, where these could be a risk in a community.

### Key Issues on Submission

As a water supplier, Kaipara District Council provides safe drinking water through our treated public water supply systems, and we will endeavour to do so in future in line with the Council's vision of Growing a Better Kaipara.

Therefore, we supported the Rules and Standards where they promoted assurance and reduced the risk of the continuity of supply of safe drinking water.

We however raised concerns and sought relief in the following areas:

- Understanding the impact of non-compliance
- Acknowledgement of increased costs to conduct testing for new and increased frequencies
- Ability of laboratories to be able to undertake increased testing
- Cost of specific tests

(See **Attachments A to H** in this document)

### Comparison to the current standards

The Standards and Rules simplified the current operational Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand 2005 (Revised in 2018) by separating the Maximum Acceptable Values (MAVs) and calling them “Standards” and the monitoring requirements, calling them “Assurance Rules”. In addition, aesthetic values are now standalone. For supplies which do not fall under the traditional municipal public supplies, there are Acceptable Solutions for Roof Water, Springs and Bores and Rural Agricultural water Supplies. Finally, there are the Network Environmental Performance Measures which focus on giving effect to the concept of Te Mana o te Wai – translated as “considering the water in its totality and in different forms of the natural Water Cycle.”

### Financial implications

There will be increased operational costs due to the new rules. Budget estimates for the Annual plan and the new 3 waters contract budgets have considered the known and expected increases.

### Risks and mitigations

There are financial risks emanating from requirements to upgrade sections of the treatment plants, more sampling requirements, and staff FTEs. Some known budget estimates have been incorporated into the Annual Plan.

Risks associated with non-compliance are mitigated by continuing to ensure staff are trained on the new rules, plants are upgraded to meet the standards and that continuous monitoring is implemented. The SCADA upgrade project currently underway takes the continuous monitoring requirements into account.

### Significance and engagement | Hirahira me ngā whakapāpā

The decisions or matters of this report are considered to have a low degree of significance in accordance with Council’s Significance and Engagement Policy. No feedback is required, and the public will be informed of Council’s decision via the agenda and minutes publication of this meeting, on the website and through other channels if appropriate.

### Next steps | E whaiake nei

- Continue to monitor the progress of the Standards and Rules
- Continue to engage with Taumata Arowai

### Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Cover Letter Submission on Taumata Arowai Standards and Rules
B	Drinking Water Standards
C	Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules
D	Drinking Water Aesthetic Values

E	Drinking Water Acceptable Solution Roof Water
F	Drinking Water Acceptable Solution Spring and Bore
G	Drinking Water Acceptable Solution Agriculture
H	Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance



Kaipara te Oranganui

**KAIPARA  
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

In reply, please quote 'Kaipara District Council Submission on the Taumata Arowai proposed standards, rules and performance measures'

Or ask for Donnick Muqutso – Operations Manager, Infrastructure Services.

28 March 2022

Urban Water Team  
Taumata Arowai  
PO Box 628  
Wellington 6143

42 Hokianga Road  
Private Bag 1001,  
Dargaville 0340 Northland,  
New Zealand

p 09 439 3123

p 0800 727 059

f 09 439 6756

e [council@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:council@kaipara.govt.nz)

[www.kaipara.govt.nz](http://www.kaipara.govt.nz)

Tēnā koe

## ***Submission on Taumata Arowai proposed standards, rules, and performance measures***

### ***1. Introduction and background***

Kaipara District Council thanks Taumata Arowai for the opportunity to provide feedback on the proposed standards, rules and performance measures contained in the following consultation documents:

- Drinking Water Standards
- Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules
- Drinking Water Aesthetic Values
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies
- Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance Measures

The following submission has been developed in conjunction with the Far North District Council and Whangarei District Council and reflects the issues of concern for all of Northlands public drinking water suppliers and our communities.

The Council acknowledges that we have a duty to ensure the risk to our resident's health is minimised through meeting appropriate water quality standards.

It is understood that the consultation is targeted at drinking water suppliers and contains technical content that will guide the way drinking water is supplied safely to people in Aotearoa.

In general, Kaipara District Council, the Far North District Council and Whangarei District Council (the Councils) support the Taumata Arowai proposed standards, rules, and performance measures. Specific issues, clarifications and relief are outlined in the discussion section below.

## Discussion

The following outlines the key issues from each of the consultation documents which are attached on the Taumata Arowai submissions forms.

### 1.1 Proposed Drinking Water Standards

In general, the Council's submission is in support of the standards.

Relief sought:

- Understanding the impact of non-compliance
- Acknowledgement of increased costs to conduct testing for currently not undertaken, increased frequencies
- Ability of laboratories to be able to undertake increased testing
- Cost of specific tests

### 1.2 Proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules

In general, the Councils' submission is in support of the rules to cover the different drinking water supplies and there are no significant issues identified in the rules.

Over all the Councils are signalling that there will be significant increases in the monitoring workload, new equipment requirements and pressures on laboratory services nationwide resulting in increased operational costs. This will have a flow on effect to rates, which for our smaller councils, small increases have a large effect for our communities. With the timing of three waters reform approaching, we are seeking relief on the requirements for implementations to be aligned with the 3 waters reform.

### 1.3 Proposed Drinking Water Aesthetic Values

The Councils' submission seeks relief to understand how the relationship between the aesthetic values and the Drinking Water Standards will be managed. In particular where non-compliance with aesthetic values is a by-product to ensure that the drinking water standards are met.

### 1.4 Proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies

Northland has many small communities, community facilities, marae, and papakaianga that may be affected by these rules. On their behalf the Councils seek relief that funding will be made available for these facilities to:

1. Upgrade their drinking water infrastructure
2. Provide the capability to undertake the monitoring required to ensure compliance with the rules, standards, and reporting.

The Councils seek clarification on how identified non-potable supplies such as for public conveniences where the supply is primarily for the operation of the facility will be treated within the rules, standards, and reporting.



### **1.5 Proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Water Supplies**

Northland has many non-public small communities, community facilities, marae, and papakaianga that may be affected by these rules. On their behalf the Councils seek relief that funding will be made available for these facilities to:

1. Upgrade their drinking water infrastructure
2. Provide the capability to undertake the monitoring required to ensure compliance with the rules, standards and reporting.

The Councils seek clarification on how identified non-potable supplies such as for public conveniences where the supply is primarily for the operation of the facility will be treated within the rules, standards, and reporting.

### **1.6 Proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies**

The Councils do not have any Rural Agricultural Water Supplies. However, Northland has a large number of small communities, community facilities, marae, and papakaianga and low socio-economic rural areas that may be affected by these rules.

### **1.7 Proposed Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance Measures**

Of concern are the potential overlaps on performance measures that will be responsibility of any economic regulator.

#### *Relief sought*

That the performance measures should be restricted to those within the mandate of the water services quality regulations.

#### **Cost Implications**

It is clear that there will be significant operational costs to implement the rules, monitoring and reporting requirements required by the standards.

Ngā mihi



Sue Davidson

**General Manager, Sustainable Growth & Investment (Acting General Manager, Infrastructure Services)**



# Submission on New Zealand Drinking Water Standards

Name	Sue Davidson
Organisation (if applicable)	Kaipara District Council

Relevant documents;

[Drinking Water Standards - Summary \(181 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Standards – Summary of the proposed changes \(175 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Standards \(258 KB, PDF\)](#)

## Question

**Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues**

**Note you are not required to provide your email address**

C/o [dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz)

**Where do you live/reside?**

Whangarei

**If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’**

- Outside New Zealand
- National
- Northland / Te Tai Tokerau
- Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau
- Waikato
- Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi
- Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti
- Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui
- Taranaki
- Manawatū – Whanganui
- Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara
- Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere
- Nelson / Whakatū
- Marlborough / Te Taihu-o-tewaka
- West Coast / Te Tai Poutini
- Canterbury / Waitaha

- Otago / Ōtākou
- Southland / Murihiku

**Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?**

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)
- Other commercial user of water
- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an ‘Registered water supplier (excl Marae)’ – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an ‘Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)’ – are you**

- School
- Café

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Camping grounds</li> <li>• Recreational facilities</li> <li>• Community halls and other local community facilities</li> <li>• Water supplied under an easement</li> <li>• Small commercial water supply networks</li> <li>• rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>	
<b>If you selected 'Other commercial user of water' – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example 'food manufacturer' 'bottled water supplier' etc)
<b>If you selected 'Stakeholder representative / industry body'</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected 'Marae' – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected 'Health professional' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>

<b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>2. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>3. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>4. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>
<b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b>	Specify your interest
<b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question	Response
<p><b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p><b>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</b></p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

<b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b>	
---	--

## Responses

You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.

### Process used to review MAVs

The development process of the proposed Drinking Water Standards included a review of drinking water MAVs by ESR to ensure they were aligned with any changes that the World Health Organisation (WHO) have made to their guideline MAVs. Most of the MAVs are based on WHO guideline values which are calculated for a 60kg adult. The MAVs have been recalculated on for a 70kg adult, a weight closer to the average body weight of adults in New Zealand. For some MAVs this results in a small change to the MAV though for others it doesn't make a difference as the results are rounded.

ESR also considered whether MAVs were required for determinands that have never been detected in water in New Zealand. The Cawthron Institute was engaged to review the MAVs for cyanotoxins as this is one of their areas of expertise. The development process then included external technical input and review by reference groups established by Taumata Arowai. The reference groups included representatives from small water suppliers, Māori communities and local authorities water suppliers. The revised draft standards were then reviewed by the Ministry of Health.

**Do you agree that the process used to review the MAVs for drinking water standards was appropriate?**

Kaipara District Council, Far North District Council and Whangarei District Council (the Councils) agree that a 70 kg adult is a more appropriate measure for the New Zealand population. In general. The Councils agree with how the MAV's have been established. KDC recognises that the WHO guidance for the most part is the most appropriate basis for the MAVs. Where determinands have never been detected in water in New Zealand, KDC believe that a risk-based approach is required. The addition of further testing parameters requiring development of new tests to be implemented, needs to be balanced with the increased costs and timeframes for testing especially for smaller suppliers with limited access to laboratories and funding. A formal process to review MAVs needs to be established. This needs to identify the triggers that required a MAV to be reviewed as well as the consultation process to be undertaken. It is unclear whether MAVS can be reviewed as a "one off" or if the full suite of MAVs should be reviewed on a fixed schedule.

**Do you agree that the proposed MAVs will support the objective of ensuring that drinking water suppliers provide safe drinking water to consumers?**



In principle the Councils agree that the MAVS as outlined will support the objectives.

However, it is apparent that for some supplies this will increase workloads and costs for suppliers to mitigate a very small risk and that consideration needs to be made of the risk / costs for suppliers.

The increase in the number of MAV's to be tested and the time requirements for tests to be reported will add strain to already stretched testing services.

**You do not need to answer all the below questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.**

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Aluminium?**

Existing MAV - No MAV exists  
Proposed MAV - 1 (mg/L)

Yes - the Councils have no concerns with adding a test for Aluminium. However, it as it is not tested for at the present time there will be a cost impact on drinking water suppliers to undertake this testing.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Barium?**

Existing MAV - 0.7 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV - 1.5 (mg/L)

Yes - The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Barium.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Boron?**

Existing MAV - 1.4 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV - 2.4 (mg/L)

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Boron.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Molybdenum?**

Existing MAV - 0.07 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV – No MAV is proposed

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Molybdenum

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Nitrite, long term?**

Existing MAV - 0.2 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV – No MAV is proposed

Yes – The Councils agree with removing the MAV due to uncertainty about its accuracy.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Perchlorate?**

Existing MAV - No MAV listed  
Proposed MAV – 0.08 (mg/L)

Yes – Not tested for at present. The Councils have no concerns with adding a test for Perchlorate.

As a by-product of certain treatment processes the Councils acknowledge the need for this MAV. The frequency of testing may need to be reviewed especially where the source, treatment and distribution processes are not changing.

The costs for testing for perchlorate have been quoted at approximately \$400 per test which over a 52-week period is a significant additional cost to water treatment operations. Which for small Water providers will increase overall operational costs.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Selenium?**

Existing MAV - 0.01 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV - 0.04 (mg/L)

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Selenium

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Uranium?**

Existing MAV - 0.02 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV - 0.03 (mg/L)

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Uranium

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Anatoxins?**

Existing MAV  
1. Anatoxins - a 0.006 (mg/L)  
2. Anatoxins – a(s) 0.001 (mg/L)

Proposed MAV - 0.006 (m/L)

Yes – The Councils have no concerns in combining the anatoxins into one unit.

MV 0.006m/L vs mg/L - there is an inconsistency between the MAV units stated here and what is in the standards table - which states 6 micrograms /L. A consistent use of mg/L would be preferred.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Atrazine?**

Existing MAV - 0.002 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV - 0.1 (mg/L)

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Atrazine.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Azinphos-methyl?**

**Existing MAV - 0.004 (mg/L)**

**Proposed MAV - 0.1 (mg/L)**

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Azinphos-methyl

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Cylindrospermopsins?**

**Existing MAV - 0.001 (mg/L)**

**Proposed MAV - 0.0008 (mg/L)**

Cylindrospermopsins are identified as measures of Cyanotoxin expressed cylindrospermopsin toxicity. There is difference in the expression from 0.0008 (ml/L) to 0.8 (ug/L) between the standards table. A consistent use of mg/L would be preferred.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Homoanatoxin-a?**

**Existing MAV - 0.002 (mg/L)**

**Proposed MAV – No MAV is proposed**

Yes – The Councils have no concerns that the MAV for Homoanatoxin-a is removed.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Hydroxytriazine?**

**Existing MAV – No MAV exists**

**Proposed MAV - 0.3 (mg/L)**

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Hydroxytriazine.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for MCPA?**

**Existing MAV - 0.002 (mg/L)**

**Proposed MAV - 0.8 (mg/L)**

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for MCPA

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Metalaxyl?**

**Existing MAV - 0.1 (mg/L)**

**Proposed MAV - 0.3 (mg/L)**

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Metalaxyl

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for N-nitrosodimethylamine?**

**Existing MAV - No MAV exists**

**Proposed MAV - 0.0001 (mg/L)**

Yes – The Councils have no concerns on the MAV for N-nitrosodimethylamine.  
This will be a new element to test for and will increase testing costs for water providers.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for PFHxS + PFOS?**

Existing MAV – No MAV exists  
Proposed MAV - 0.00007 (mg/L)

PFHxS and PFOS are very specific to sites where fire retardants have been used. A requirement for across-the-board testing of all water sources seems to be an unnecessary requirement that increases the cost and testing load on water providers.

It is also noted that the value is very specific.  
The Councils question the needs for this MAV.

**RELIEF SOUGHT**

The Councils would like to recommend that this is only applied to supplies that have a known source within an area of a specified site (e.g. use the SWRMA 2 boundaries identified within the NES-DW).

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for PFOA?**

Existing MAV – No MAV exists  
Proposed MAV - 0.00056 (mg/L)

PFOA are very specific to sites where fire retardants have been used. A requirement for across-the-board testing of all water sources seems to be an unnecessary requirement that increases the cost and testing load on water providers.

It is also noted that the value is very specific.  
The Councils question the needs for this MAV.

**RELIEF SOUGHT**

The Councils would like to recommend that this is only applied to supplies that have a known source within an area of a specified site (e.g., use the SWRMA 2 boundaries).

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Sodium dichloroisocyanurate (as cyanuric acid)?**

Existing MAV – No MAV exists  
Proposed MAV - 40 (mg/L)

Yes – the Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Sodium dichloroisocyanurate (as cyanuric acid).  
This will be a new element to test for and will increase testing costs for water providers.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Trichloroethene?**

Existing MAV - 0.02 (mg/L)  
Proposed MAV - 0.03 (mg/L)

Yes – the Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Trichloroethene.

**Do you agree with the proposed MAV for 1080?**

Existing MAV – Long term MAV of 0.0035 (mg/L)

#### **Proposed MAV – Short term MAV 0.035 (mg/L)**

It is unclear as to the what the testing timeframes for the pesticide acute exposure (short term MAV) is to be.

It is also unclear what the response should be if the source tests between these two levels. The Councils request further clarification of the timeframes and distinctions between these two levels.

#### **Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Total alpha activity?**

**Existing MAV – 1.0**  
**Proposed MAV - 0.5**

Yes – the Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Total alpha activity

#### **Do you agree with the proposed MAV for Total beta activity?**

**Existing MAV -0.5**  
**Proposed MAV – 1.0**

Yes – the Councils have no concerns on the MAV for Total beta activity.

#### **Additional Feedback**

The Councils are in support of using the amended WHO guidelines in place for the majority of MAVS.

There is an overall concern that there are a large number of elements to test for and on a range of frequencies.

There are significant questions on the additional lab capacity required across the country to undertake the tests some of which are quite specific.

There are potentially significant costs for large supplier such as Councils and smaller supplies within the community will not have the capacity or funding to undertake the level of testing required.

There are issues where in many cases the labs control the delivery and testing frameworks, these may not meet the specified frequencies and testing timeframes specified in the rules and guidelines.

The Councils are concerned that some of the elements such as disinfection by-products should be controlled via rolling averages MM report rather than one off test results.



## Submission on Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules

Name	Sue Davidson
Organisation (if applicable)	Kaipara District Council

### Question

**Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues**

**Note you are not required to provide your email address**

C/o [dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz)

### Where do you live/reside?

Whangarei

### If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’

- Outside New Zealand
- National
- **Northland / Te Tai Tokerau**
- Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau
- Waikato
- Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi
- Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti
- Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui
- Taranaki
- Manawatū – Whanganui
- Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara
- Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere
- Nelson / Whakatū
- Marlborough / Te Taihu-o-tewaka
- West Coast / Te Tai Poutini
- Canterbury / Waitaha
- Otago / Ōtākou
- Southland / Murihiku

### Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)
- Other commercial user of water

- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- **Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation**
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an 'Registered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).**
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an 'Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

- School
- Café
- Camping grounds
- Recreational facilities
- Community halls and other local community facilities
- Water supplied under an easement
- Small commercial water supply networks
- rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)
- Other



<b>If you selected 'Other commercial user of water' – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example 'food manufacturer' 'bottled water supplier' etc)
<b>If you selected 'Stakeholder representative / industry body'</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected 'Marae' – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected 'Health professional' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>
<b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>1. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>2. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>3. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>

<b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b>	Specify your interest
<b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question	Response
<b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b>	(Required response)  Select an option: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> </ol>

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p><b>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</b></p> <p><b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b></p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

## Responses

You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.

**Do you agree that the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules support the objective of ensuring that drinking water suppliers provide safe drinking water to consumers?**

In general, the Councils agree that the Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules support the objective of ensuring that drinking water suppliers provide safe drinking water to consumers.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules have been prepared for the following water supply categories:**

- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies With the following population sizes:**
  - o **< 50 (Very Small Supplies)**
  - o **50 – 500 (Small Supplies)**
  - o **>500 (Large Supplies)**
  - o **Varying Population Size Supplies**
- **Trickle Feed Water Supplies**
- **Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies**
- **Water Carrier Services**
- **Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies**
- **Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies**

**Do you agree that these categories are appropriate?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 1.3, p.7-8.**

In general, the Councils support the proposed water supply categories. We also support the ability to provide assurance at a higher level and to treat all water supplies with a territorial authority with a similar regime. This enables asset owners to provide a consistent level of service.

There is a lack of clarity on how sites such as school and retirement homes with multiple buildings will be treated where they receive water from a supply but have a separate distribution system.

We also have concerns over the impact on communities of less than 50 supplies who do not necessarily have the level of experience or competency or financial resources to undertake the level of reporting and monitoring required.

**There is an option of having the general drinking water quality assurance rules associated with Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supply either recorded in the Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules, with modifications as required in a particular permit, or have all the drinking water quality assurance requirements detailed in the temporary event permit that is issued.**

**Do you agree that the general drinking water quality assurance rules associated with a Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supply should be recorded in the Rules as reflected in the consultation document? The alternative is that the drinking water quality assurance rules would be detailed as a condition on each permit.**

In principle the Councils support the need to ensure events are safe for participants.

Further clarification is needed on who will be issuing the temporary permits.

If a single body was to be responsible for temporary permits, the permit itself is the easiest location of the rules. It is more likely for an event organiser to understand the responsibilities if provided via a permit rather than trying to understand a set of rules in a government document. This would also ensure consistency for event holders across different districts.

It is assumed that Taumata Arowai would be responsible for issuing and monitoring the permits as there is not one agency currently who has responsibility for events over all land activities.

Provision of examples of these events would assist event providers in determining the requirements i.e., if water is supplied to an event via a water tanker and not transferred to another vessel which rules apply, the water tanker or temporary event?

There are also questions on how to ensure the organisers of temporary events apply for and are aware of permits they may require when putting on an event.

Relief Sought:

- Clarification on the permit system and which agencies would be responsible for managing the permit and compliance process.
- Provision of examples forms and templates to assist organisers of temporary events

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules are structured as 'modules' for source water, treatment systems and distribution systems. There are different rules depending on the level of complexity for each module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules being structured in this manner?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 1.4, p.8 to 9.**

The Councils support in principle the use of modules to define the complexity of water supply as defined below.

- Source water (S) – including monitoring for bacteriological, protozoal, chemical, cyanobacteria and radiological determinands.
- Treatment systems (T) – including criteria for bacterial compliance, protozoal compliance, chemical compliance and cyanotoxin compliance.
- Distribution systems (D) – including rules for backflow prevention, preventing recontamination of stored water, hygiene practices for maintenance

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Very Small Drinking Water Supplies (namely G + S1 + T1 + D1)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 4.1, p.16, table 2.**

Yes – The Council agree on a G + S1 +T1 + D1 for very small drinking water supplies.

However, the general rules for reporting could be seen as onerous for very small water suppliers (see section 10.1) including keeping compliant registers.

The impact on very small suppliers if non-compliant need to be made clearer. It is a risk that businesses such as campgrounds, small community facilities etc may stop operating if the cost and complexity of compliance is too high. This has economic implications for our communities at large. Taumata Arowai should ensure making reporting to Taumata Arowai as low cost and low risk as possible.

Further clarity is required to determine what is required from an assurance rule type and what the implications of it not being met.

It is also noted throughout the rules document that some rules are where they are directions on what activities to undertake and how they should be undertaken which should be within a Water Quality Plan.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Small Drinking Water Supplies (namely G + S2 + T2 + D2)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 4.2, p.16, table 2**

As above.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Large Drinking Water Supplies (namely G + S3 + T3 + D3)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 4.3, p.16 to 17, table 2.**

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Varying Population Size Drinking Water Supplies (less than 500 people) (namely G + S2 + T2 + D2)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 4.4, p.17, table 2.**

The Councils support the proposed water supply categories for Large Drinking Water Supplies. We also support the ability to provide assurance at a higher level if determined by the water

authority so all water supplies within a territorial authority can be managed under the same regime. This enables asset owners to provide a consistent level of service.

The rules surround Varying Population Size Drinking Water Supplies are also supported.

**Do you agree that On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Varying Population Size Drinking Water Supplies (less than 500 people) must comply with Rule E1 in addition to modules G + S2 + T2 + D2?**

Reference to the consultation document – section 4.4, p.17.

**Rule E1 - When the population exceeds 500 people, increased daily and weekly monitoring must be undertaken at the frequencies set out in Table 3 for the day or week that the population increase occurs.**

The requirement to sample twice per day when the population exceeds 500 seems excessive, particularly when populations between 500 and 20,000 only have to sample once per day under table 32.

The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Varying Population Size Drinking Water Supplies (more than 500 people) (namely G + S3 + T3 + D3)?**

Reference to the consultation document – section 4.4, p.17, table 2.

Costs to establish continuous monitoring as required by the S3, T3 and D3 categories for short periods when the populations exceed 500 people will be onerous for small communities and providers.

Where small populations exceed 500 for only short periods complying with S3, T3 and D3 rules will be difficult, onerous and confusing for operators. It will probably occur when staff are on leave. We consider it more pragmatic to have a single consistent set of compliance rules and don't believe compliance with S2, T2 and D2 increases the risk significantly.

#### **Relief Sought**

Consider that supplies serving populations of less than 500 for at least 300 days per year are small supplies.

**Do you agree that On Demand Network Drinking Water Supplier – Varying Population Size Drinking Water Supplies (more than 500 people) that the distribution system monitoring requirements must increase according to the frequencies set out in the D3 rules for the periods that the population is increased above the base population**

Reference to the consultation document – section 4.4, p.17 to 19, table 3.

Costs to establish continuous monitoring as required by the S3, T3 and D3 categories for short periods when the populations exceed 500 people will be onerous for small communities and providers. It is considered that this will be too onerous for small suppliers to do the monitoring in

the network. It is highly unlikely that chlorine levels are likely to drop at periods of peak demand and therefore the risks are less than off peak periods and more frequent sampling not required.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to Trickle Feed Water Supplies (namely G + S2 + T2 + D2)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 5, p.20.**

Not applicable. But in general, the Councils accept the compliance modules assigned are acceptable.

The Councils would like clarification and further information and discussion on why a large trickle feed supply would be at less risk than a large on demand supply.

**Do you agree that Trickle Feed Water Supplies (must comply with Rule F1 in addition to modules G + S2 + T2 + D2)?**

**Rule F1 - Water supply into the on-site storage tank must be via an air-gap, the tank overflow must be below the discharge point of the inlet and the overflow diameter must be larger than the inlet diameter.**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 5, p.20.**

Yes, the Council's recognise this as good practice in the establishment of a trickle feed water supply system.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to Self-Supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies (suppliers serving less than 50 people) (namely G + S1 + T1)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 6, p.21.**

In general, the Councils support the modules allocated to this class of supplier.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to Self-Supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies (suppliers serving between 50 and 500 people) (namely G + S2 + T2)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 6, p.21.**



In general the Councils support the modules allocated to this class of supplier, although chlorination may not be necessary in single buildings.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to Water Carrier Services (namely G + WC)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 7, p.22.**

In general, the Councils support the modules allocated to this class of supplier.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies (namely G + PTE)?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 8, p.23.**

In general, the Councils support the modules allocated to this class of supplier.

**The proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules allocate to each class of supplier the modules that they must demonstrate compliance against.**

**Do you agree with the allocation of modules to Community Drinking Water Stations and Water Carrier Supplies (namely G + S2 + T2 (excluding the T2 rules for chlorine disinfection))?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 9, p.24.**

In general, the Councils support the modules allocated to this class of supplier.

Clarification is sought over the level of monitoring required from community water stations during civil defence emergencies. E.g., sites can be requisitioned for the public good during emergencies and the ability of the supply to allocate resources to testing and monitoring at this time can be compromised.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules in section 10?**

See responses in the following sections.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.1 provides the General Rules.**

**Do you agree with the proposed General Rules?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.1, p.25 to 27.**

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

It is noted that many of the assurance rules are standards of practice that should be contained in a Water Quality plan as required under the Water Services Act.

The Councils would recommend that these are removed as rules and added into potential templates for water quality plans that can be used for all suppliers and especially the very small and small suppliers. The adherence to the plans can then be monitored via other mechanisms such as audits.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.2 provides the Source Water Rules for the S1 module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Source Water Rules for the S1 module?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.2, p.28 to 29.**

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.3 provides the Treatment Rules for the T1 module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Treatment Rules for the T1 module?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.3, p.30.**

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.4 provides the Distribution System Rules for the D1 module.**

Do you agree with the proposed Distribution System Rules for the D1 module?

Reference to the consultation document – section 10.4, p.31.

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.

Section 10.5 provides the Source Water Rules for the S2 module.

Do you agree with the proposed Source Water Rules for the S2 module?

Reference to the consultation document – section 10.5, p.32 to 33.

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.

Section 10.6 provides the Treatment Rules for the T2 module.

Do you agree with the proposed Treatment Rules for the T2 module?

Reference to the consultation document – section 10.6, p.34 to 38.

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.

Section 10.7 provides the Distribution System Rules for the D2 module.

Do you agree with the proposed Distribution System Rules for the D2 module?

Reference to the consultation document – section 10.7, p.39 to 40.

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.8 provides the Source Water Rules for the S3 module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Source Water Rules for the S3 module?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.8, p.41 to 45.**

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

The Councils would like to raise the issue that the proposed monitoring frequencies create additional work and costs to operations. There are also concerns regarding lab capacity across the country to enable all the testing to be undertaken in the timeframes required.

Water providers outside of the main centres can be affected by delivery timeframes outside of their control

The Councils are also seeking confirmation that the source water is not required to be tested if it is not currently being used as a Drinking Water source. Is a source is only used once or twice a year is annual testing acceptable. Further guidance would be useful on when the rules need to apply.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.9 provides the Treatment Rules for the T3 module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Treatment Rules for the T3 module?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.9, p.46 to 73.**

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.10 provides the Distribution System Rules for the D3 module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Distribution System Rules for the D3 module?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.10, p.74 to 85**

Refer to the attached rules table for comments on each of the numbered rules.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.11 provides the Water Carrier Service Rules.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Water Carrier Service Rules?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.11, p82 to 85**

In general, the Councils support the rules for Water Carrier Services.

The Councils would like to clarify Rule WC 6.

*WC.6 - If tanks and the equipment used for loading and unloading water are not used for the transport of drinking water for a period of 30 days, the tank and fittings must be disinfected by filling with drinking water containing at least 5 mg/L FAC for not less than 30 minutes before discharging safely to waste.*

The carrier cannot be responsible for the 5mg/L FAC as this is the responsibility of the supplier. How is the compliance for the water carrier affected by a non-compliance of a supplier?

WC 8 – When drinking water is delivered, a written statement must be supplied to the customer/consumer stating the...

The Councils recommend that the rule is amended to also cover the keeping of records of the written statements in addition to providing the customer /consumer with a statement. This is probably inherent in the current rule but for clarity would be better to state the requirements. Operators should have to keep records of the quantities and locations delivered to for audit and QA purposes. Make available to TA or water supplier on request.

The Councils would like clarified who is expected to enforce the registration of water carriers. It is understood that Taumata Arowai will be responsible for providing a registration number, but further information is required on who is doing the safety plan checks etc.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules covers the Compliance Rule Modules.**

**Section 10.12 provides the Planned Temporary Events Rules for the PTE module.**

**Do you agree with the proposed Planned Temporary Events Rules for the PTE module?**

**Reference to the consultation document – section 10.12, p.84**

The rules for Planned Temporary Events have compliance periods determined by event length. There is no guidance provided as to what these will be and as discussed earlier, who will be responsible for processing and administering these permits.

The Councils would like Taumata Arowai to clarify that if a water source comes from a treated supply, and is transported by a registered water carrier, can the event organisers obtain confirmation from these agencies that they rather undertake testing or refiltering. This should be made clear to ensure that the right amount of monitoring and assurance is provided.

Section 10.12 of the proposed Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules provides the Planned Temporary Events Rules for the PTE module.

Section 1.3 defined a 'Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies' as a short-term event where people gather and where a water supply is required for the duration of an event which continues for a limited time of less than 60 days.

(p.7 of the consultation document).

**Do you agree with the proposed definition of Planned Temporary Drinking Water Supplies?**

Yes, the Councils are comfortable with the definition of Planned Temporary Drinking Water Supply.

**Do you have any comments on the transition time required to adopt the proposed rules?**

The Councils recommend that a set date of 1 July 2022 for compliance with the rules is not achievable for some of the rules where there are additional equipment and staffing requirements, especially as the final rules will only be finalised close to the 1 July date.

It is acknowledged that suppliers should be working towards the draft rules but a timeframe for full implementation of at least 12 months after the acceptance of rules is proposed as relief.

For some supplies there will be design, equipment procurement and construction cost to be assessed to gain full compliance with the rules. There is also a concern that the solutions put in place by smaller suppliers may become redundant when the new entities are formed.

The Councils recommend that full implementation not compulsory until after new entities are established or a final decision is made on the three-water reform. New entities would apply a coordinated approach of rules and management and hence avoid unnecessary expenditure.

The Council request guidance on the process for transgressions under the rules – need to have clearer direction on the implications and process for lodging and managing non-compliance.

Overall, the Councils support the review of the water assurance process but would like to reiterate that there are potentially high costs for additional equipment, monitoring testing and reporting that will be an issue for all providers but especially for small suppliers.

**Additional Feedback**

**Relief Sought**

The Councils recommend that full compliance reporting should be delayed until the new entities are formed to provide consistency on reporting and operations and avoid all suppliers developing their own systems. Alternative TA could provide a single reporting software that would avoid individual supplier development.

## Attachment to Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules

<b>GENERAL RULES</b>				
<b>Rule no.</b>		<b>Activity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Response to Proposed Rule</b>
<b>G 1</b>		All water supplies must report water quality information to TA within 10 working days of the timeframes set out in Table 4. pg. 26	Assurance	The Councils agree with the required reporting timeframes. It is noted that small suppliers may have more trouble providing the information specially when there are no specialised staff. It may be prudent to allow a longer timeframe of 4 weeks for these supplies to comply.
<b>G 2</b>		Monitoring must be undertaken and reported for the determinands and parameters set out in table 5. Pg. 26	Monitoring	Councils agree with the determinands set out in table 5. It is noted there are no S3 rules in the reporting table.
<b>G 3</b>		All samples collected from water supplies for monitoring that are analysed by laboratories must be labelled with the unique sample identifier allocated by Taumata Arowai	Assurance	The Councils would request that the current codes in use by suppliers are able to be continued to be used.
<b>G4</b>		All water samples for E. coli, TC or other microbiological contaminants must be delivered to the laboratory within 24 hours of collection, and be transported at a temp of < 6 degrees C.	NA	This is a standard requirement for testing and should be incorporated in a standard of practice within the Water Quality Plan rather than a rule. As a rule, it is unclear what and how this would be reported to ensure assurance.
<b>G5</b>		Equipment used for the analysis of single grab samples to demonstrate compliance with any rule must be calibrated in accordance with the instrument manufacturers specified procedures and frequency.	Assurance	This is a standard requirement for operations and should be incorporated in a standard of practice within the Water Quality Plan rather than a rule. As a rule, it is unclear what and how this would be reported to ensure assurance.
<b>G6</b>		All work (planned or unplanned ) on a water supply must be completed by suitably trained or experienced personnel.	Assurance	This is a standard requirement for operations and should be incorporated in a standard of practice within the Water Quality Plan rather than a rule. Aa a rule it is unclear what and how this would be reported to ensure assurance. In addition, further information and

				guidance is sought on what is defined as: suitable trained or experienced personnel.
<b>G7</b>		All people working on a water supply must; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) maintain personal hygiene at all times</li> <li>b) not be experiencing any gastrointestinal illness</li> <li>c) protect the worksite, materials and tools from contamination</li> <li>d) take all reasonable steps to minimise the entry of contamination into the water supply during their activity</li> </ul>	Assurance	This is a standard requirement for operations and should be incorporated in a standard of practice within the Water Quality Plan rather than a rule. As a rule, it is unclear what and how this would be reported to ensure assurance.
<b>G8</b>		Continuous on-line monitoring equipment used to demonstrate compliance with any rule must be calibrated in accordance with the instrument manufacturers specified procedures and frequency or monthly, whichever is more frequent. Have calibration verified weekly.	Assurance	This is a standard requirement for operations and should be incorporated in a standard of practice to be contained within the Water Quality Plan rather than a rule. As a rule, it is unclear what and how this would be reported to ensure assurance.
<b>G9</b>		For all continuous monitoring equipment, the separation between data records must be no more than 1 minute	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>G10</b>		Continuous monitoring data must not be interrupted for a period of more than 15 consecutive minutes or a total of 72 minutes in one day.	Assurance	<p>The Councils although agreeing with the philosophy of this rule have concerns for the effects of power instrument failure and power outages especially for remote and smaller treatment plants. 15 mins is a very tight timeframe to enforce as small supplies are often not manned and are not able to be reached in a 15 minute or even 72-minute timeframe. Not all supplies have backup power.</p> <p>Councils are concerned about the additional cost to install UPS to ensure continuous monitoring.</p> <p>The Councils seek relief to have a longer lead-in period to enable any additional hardware to be funded, supplied and</p>



				<p>installed noting potential delays due to the impact of Covid 19 on the supply chains for such equipment.</p> <p>With the reporting only being yearly clarification is sort on what impact not meeting these criteria would have on a compliance standing if the testing before and after any interruption is still of acceptable quality.</p>
<b>Source Rules</b>				
<b>S1.1</b>		Surface and groundwater sources must be monitored for the determinands and at the frequency set out in Table 6	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement and frequencies in table 6.
<b>S1.2</b>		Roof water sources must be monitored for the determinands and at the frequency set out in Table 7.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement and frequencies in table 7.
<b>S1.3</b>		Consumer taste or odour complaints which have the potential to relate to cyanotoxins must be recorded and investigated to determine the cause.	Assurance	It is noted that only complaints that could relate to cyanotoxins are recorded. For very small supplies the operators may not be aware of these characteristics. It is recommended that all complaints are recorded, and the complaints register submitted as part of this assurance.
<b>S1.4</b>		Between October and May, the water and area within 50 metres to a surface water intake must be visually inspected each month for the presence of benthic cyanobacteria mats and planktonic cyanobacterial growth. If there is evidence of cyanobacterial growth the abstracted water must be tested for cyanotoxins or abstraction of water must stop	Assurance	This is a standard requirement for operations and should be incorporated in a standard of practice within the Water Quality Plan rather than a rule. As a rule it is unclear what and would be reported to ensure assurance as the presence of cyanobacteria means the MAV requirements in S1.5 would be required.

<b>S1.5</b>		If cyanotoxin levels exceed 50% of the MAVs set out in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standards 202X (to be determined), the source water or raw water for combined sources, must be monitored twice weekly for cyanotoxin levels	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S1.6</b>		Samples must be collected at the source abstraction point or treatment plant (prior to treatment) for surface or groundwater supplies and at the tank outlet for roof water supplies.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S2.1</b>		Surface water sources must be monitored for the determinands/parameters and at the frequency set out in Table 9.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement and frequencies in table 8.
<b>S2.2</b>		Bore water sources must be monitored for the determinands/parameters and at the frequency set out in Table 9 and Table 10.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement and frequencies in table 9 and 10.
<b>S2.3</b>		Roof water sources must be monitored for the determinands and at the frequency set out in Table 11.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement and frequencies in table 8.
<b>S2.4</b>		Additional monitoring of source water must be undertaken for any contaminants which exceed 50% of the MAVs set out in the <i>New Zealand Drinking Water Standards 202X (to be determined)</i> .	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S2.5</b>		Water sources must be categorised as either low-risk, medium-risk or high-risk for the presence of cyanobacteria.	Assurance	This rule is a one off and should be included as part of the Source water risk management plans rather than an assurance rule to be reported on. Potentially a change in category should be reported if the risk changes over time.

<b>S2.6</b>		When a water supply is categorised as medium or high-risk under rule S2.5, a cyanobacteria/ cyanotoxin response plan must be prepared which includes vigilance levels for assessing the presence of cyanobacteria, alert levels related to the presence of cyanotoxins and monitoring for cyanotoxins.	Assurance	This rule is a one off and should be included as part of the Source water risk management plans rather than an assurance rule to be reported on.
<b>S2.7</b>		If cyanotoxin levels exceed 50% of the MAVs set out in the <i>New Zealand Drinking Water Standards 202X (to be determined)</i> , the source water must be monitored twice weekly for cyanotoxin levels.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S2.8</b>		Samples must be collected at the source abstraction point or treatment plant (prior to treatment) for surface water or groundwater supplies and at the tank outlet for roof water supplies.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S2.9</b>		Source water quality monitoring data must be reviewed annually for trends and signals of changes in parameters that might indicate an unrecognized change to the quality of the source water and possible challenges to the level of treatment provided.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement. See above regarding reporting on a change in risk status.
<b>S3.1</b>		Water suppliers must determine the category of protozoa log treatment requirements for each of the source waters that are used based on the Source Water Type Log Credit Treatment Requirements set out above.	Assurance	This rule is a one off and should be included as part of the source water risk management plans rather than an assurance rule to be reported on. Potentially a change in category should be reported if the risk changes over time. Consistency in assessing class 3 and 4 sources is required. It is requested that Taumata Arowai provide an assessment methodology that can be used for all assessments rather than relying on differing processes from different organisations and consultants. This will need to be consulted on as a separate consultation.

<b>S3.2</b>		For any bore used for water supply purposes, the water supplier must determine whether or not the bore meets the requirements of a sanitary bore head and provide written evidence of their determination if it is requested.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S3.3</b>		Source water must be monitored for the determinands/parameters and at the frequency set out in Table 14 and Table 15	Monitoring	Table 14 – it is noted that there is a requirement for increased monitoring. This is of concern to the Councils due to requirement for creased monitoring resources for collection, testing and associated costs.
<b>S3.4</b>		Additional monitoring of source water must be undertaken during severe or extreme weather events and immediately after the event finishes.	Monitoring	Clarification is required on what is determined as a severe or extreme weather event. Samples need to be taken while treatment plants are operational. During severe weather plants may be shut down to meet health and safety requirements for operators. Safety for the operators testing during an event can be dangerous. It is unclear if this rule applies to all source types or only river and above ground intakes and when contributing to the distribution network. Clarification is also sought on the level of additional monitoring that is envisages and for what determinands.
<b>S3.5</b>		Monitoring of source water must be undertaken for any determinand additional to those set out in Table 14 and Table 15 if the determinand has been identified in the drinking water supply Source Water Risk Management Plan as presenting a potential risk to the drinking water supply.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>S3.6</b>		Water sources must be categorised as either low- risk, medium-risk or high-risk for the presence of cyanobacteria.	Assurance	As for S2.5

		When a water supply is categorised as medium or high-risk under rule S3.6, a cyanobacteria/ cyanotoxin response plan must be prepared which includes vigilance levels for assessing the presence of cyanobacteria and alert levels related to the presence of cyanotoxins, monitoring for cyanobacteria/cyanotoxins and the action that will be taken to protect consumers.		As for S2.6
<b>S3.8</b>		If cyanotoxin levels exceed 50% of the MAVs set out in the <i>New Zealand Drinking Water Standards 202X (to be determined)</i> the source water must be monitored at least twice weekly for cyanotoxin levels until cyanotoxin levels fall below 50% of the MAVs.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>Treatment Rules</b>				
<b>T1.1</b>		Water abstracted from a river or stream or other source that has intermittently elevated turbidity, must be either filtered by a back-washable media filter, selectively abstracted or provided to a raw water tank (minimum 10,000 litres) with a calmed bottom inlet and floating off take to ensure turbidity is lowered so that it is suitable for further treatment.	Assurance	Application of this requirement to existing noncompliant supplies may be cost prohibitive noting that T1 only relates to small and very small supplies (less than 50 people).
<b>T1.2</b>		All water must be filtered by a cartridge filter system that includes both a 5 micron and a 1-micron cartridge.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T1.3</b>		The flow through the filters must be within design specifications for the treatment processes 100% of the time.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T1.4</b>		Pumps must not be connected directly to the discharge side of a cartridge filter. After filtration, the filtrate must pass directly to a tank if there is subsequent pumping.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T1.5</b>		Filtered water must be disinfected with UV light after filtration.	Assurance	This requirement will be cost prohibitive for small water providers noting that T1 only relates to small and very small supplies.
<b>T1.6</b>		UV units must be operated according to the manufacturer's instructions and must be validated and operated to deliver a minimum of 40 mJ/cm <sup>2</sup> or equivalent UV dose.	Assurance	This requirement will be cost prohibitive for small water providers noting that T1 only relates to small and very small supplies. Propose that compliance can be achieved through providing manufacturers specs, O&M manual and maintenance/service schedule to prove assurance.
<b>T2.1</b>	<b>General treatment rules</b>	Water leaving the treatment plant must be monitored for the determinands/parameters and at the frequencies set out in Table 12.	Monitoring	The Councils would like confirmation that the reporting period is monthly for the daily compliance periods as it is not stated in the rules. It is assumed that compliance will be as a moving average if assessed as the number of days that compliance was achieved during the previous 365 days. It is noted that with a daily monitoring regime this will be onerous on small water providers with multiple plants. Relief is sought that this is reduced to twice weekly monitoring.
<b>T2.2</b>		If fluoride is added assessments of the amount of fluoride used must be made weekly and compared with the amount of water produced.	Assurance	This is an operational procedure rather than a rule. The outcome of this rule is not clear. The Councils require clarification that the intent is for the water providers to record the amount of fluoride to the amount of water processed which could be reviewed via an audit process if required.
<b>T2.3</b>		There must be no more than 45 days between <i>E. coli</i> samples and consecutive samples must not be taken on the same day of the week and over a year, five different days of the week must be used as sampling days.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.4</b>	<b>Filtration rules</b>	All water must be filtered by a media, membrane, or cartridge filter system.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T2.5</b>		If cartridge filters are used, the downstream cartridge must have a pore size of 1 micron (absolute)	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.6</b>		The flow through the filters must be within design specifications for the treatment processes 100% of the time.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.7</b>	<b>UV Rules</b>	All water must be disinfected with UV light.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.8</b>		UV units must meet (and operate within the specifications of) at least one of the following standards: NSF/ANSI 55 Class A (NSF, ANSI n.d.); Ultraviolet Disinfection Guidance Manual (USEPA 2006b); DVGW Technical Standard W294 (DVGW 2006); öNORM M5873 (Osterreichisches Normungsinstitut 2001).	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.9</b>		UV units must be validated and operated to deliver a minimum of 40 mJ/cm <sup>2</sup> or equivalent UV dose.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.10</b>		UV dose must be monitored continuously with an alarm installed to alert the operator if UV dose is outside of the required limits. The system must be designed to immediately shut off the treatment plant if it fails to meet the required UV dose.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.11</b>		Lamp usage and lamp outage must be monitored continuously, and an alarm must alert the operator when manufacturers recommended lamp hours are reached, or if there is a lamp outage.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.12</b>	<b>Chlorine Rules</b>	Chlorine contact time must be at least 30 minutes before the first consumer.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T2.13</b>		If sodium hypochlorite is used as a disinfectant, chlorate must be monitored in water leaving the treatment plant.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.14</b>		The pH of water leaving the treatment plant must be monitored at a point at least 30 minutes after chlorine is added.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.15</b>	<b>Chemical Rules</b>	If the water supplier become aware of an event that may rapidly introduce high concentrations of chemicals into the water at the source or at the treatment plant, the water supplier must carry out event-based monitoring to show that the threat to the water safety has been adequately managed.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.16</b>		All chemical samples for physico-chemical determinands/parameters must be taken from a point as close as practicable after the final treatment process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T2.17</b>	<b>Cyanotoxin Rules</b>	If cyanotoxin levels in treated water exceed the MAV in the NZDWS either a 'do not use' advisory must be issued to consumers or water must be provided from an alternative source.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.1</b>	<b>Water Disinfected with Chlorine</b>	All water is treated with chlorine and must be monitored in accordance with Table 16.	Monitoring	Table 16 - where the distribution main is used to achieve the required disinfection contact time after the contact tank but before the first consumer can a calculation be used so monitoring can be undertaken at the outlet of the contact tank rather than placing monitoring equipment in the distribution network
<b>T3.2</b>		Treated water must achieve a chlorine C.t value of at least 15 min.mg/L and be no less than 0.2mg/L before the first consumer for at least 95 % of the day.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.



<b>T3.3</b>		T <sup>10</sup> contact time of at least 5 minutes must be demonstrated.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.4</b>		Turbidity of water leaving the treatment plant must be less than 1.0 NTU for at least 95% of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.5</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 2.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.6</b>	<b>Water Disinfected with Chlorine Dioxide</b>	All water is treated with chlorine dioxide and must be monitored in accordance with Table 16.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.7</b>		Treated water must achieve a chlorine C.t value of at least 15 min.mg/L for at least 95 % of the day.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.8</b>		T <sup>10</sup> contact time of at least 5 minutes must be demonstrated.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.9</b>		Turbidity of water leaving the treatment plant must be less than 1.0 NTU for at least 95% of the day <sup>26</sup> .	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.10</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 2.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.11</b>	<b>Water Disinfected with Ozone</b>	All water must pass through the ozone contactor and must be monitored in accordance with Table 18.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.12</b>		C.t of at least 1.2 mg.min/L for more than 95% of the day must be achieved.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.13</b>		Turbidity does not exceed 5.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.14</b>	<b>Water Disinfected with Ultraviolet Light</b>	All water must pass through the UV reactor(s) and must be monitored in accordance with Table 19.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement. Capital works required to replace UV to meet the specification resulting in additional costs for the water providers.

<b>T3.15</b>		A reduction equivalent dose of not less than 40 mJ/cm <sup>2</sup> (or equivalent) must be achieved for not less than 95 % of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.16</b>		UVI is not less than 80% of the value (established by validation) required to achieve reduction equivalent dose of not less than 40 mJ/cm <sup>2</sup> (or equivalent) any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.17</b>		Turbidity does not exceed 5.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.18</b>		UVT is not less than 95% of the lowest UVT for which the reactor has been validated for more than 5% of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.19</b>		UVT is not less than 80% of the lowest UVT for which the reactor has been validated for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.20</b>		The equipment is operated within the flow range for which it was validated for at least 95% of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.16 (2)</b>	<b>Coag without Filtration 0.5 log)</b>	All water must pass through the sedimentation process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.17 (2)</b>		The sedimentation process must achieve at least a 70% reduction in raw water turbidity each day, based on the arithmetic mean of the turbidity of the raw water and the water leaving the sedimentation process.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.18 (2)</b>		All the requirements in Table 20 must be met	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.19 (2)</b>	<b>Protozoal Rules 2.5 log</b>	All water must pass through the coagulation, flocculation and filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement. There is a numbering duplication in the rules from this point forward T3.16 - T3.20 are repeated in the rules in the consultation documents.

<b>T3.20 (2)</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.3 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.21</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.5 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.22</b>		All of the requirements in Table 21 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.23</b>	<b>Protozoal Rules 3.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the coagulation, flocculation and filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.24</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.15 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.25</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.5 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.26</b>		All of the requirements in Table 21 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.27</b>	<b>Protozoal Rules 3.5 log</b>	All water must pass through the coagulation, flocculation and filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.28</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.1 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.29</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.3 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.30</b>		All of the requirements in 21 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.31</b>	<b>Coag etc 3.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation and filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.32</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.3 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.33</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.5 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.34</b>		All of the requirements in Table 22 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils question the limitation of 10% of plant inflow within the process limitations if the turbidity levels can be met effectively.

				This uses the principles of Te Mana o te Wai in reusing the water in the process rather than discharging into the environment as well as looking at resilience from a climate change context.
<b>T3.35</b>	<b>Coag etc 3.5 log</b>	All water must pass through the coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation and filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.36</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.15 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.37</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.5 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.38</b>		All of the requirements in 1 must be met.	Assurance	It is unclear what this rule is referring to - there potentially is a missing table in the rules or assume the link is Table 22 as per the other coag compliance rules. See response to T3.34
<b>T3.39</b>	<b>Coag etc 4.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation and filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.40</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.1 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.41</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.3 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.42</b>		All of the requirements in Table 22 must be met.	Assurance	See response to T3.34
<b>T3.43</b>	<b>Second Stage Filtration 0.5 log</b>	All water must pass through the second stage filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils require further information on the following scenario where the first stage of treatment is unavailable, but second stage is able to be applied – what happens with compliance in this situation
<b>T3.44</b>		Turbidity must not to exceed 0.1 NTU for more than 5% of a day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.45</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.3 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T3.46</b>		All of the requirements in Table 23 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.47</b>	<b>Second Stage Filtration 2.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the slow sand filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils require further information on the following scenario where the first stage of treatment is unavailable, but second stage is able to be applied – what happens with compliance in this situation
<b>T3.48</b>		The filter must not dry out.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.49</b>		Disinfecting chemicals must not be dosed such that they leave a residual disinfectant upstream of the filter beds.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.50</b>		Following filter maintenance, water suppliers must not deliver water to consumers until the filtration process has been demonstrated to be effective.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.51</b>		The filters must be operated at a surface loading rate of less than 0.35 m <sup>3</sup> /m <sup>2</sup> /h.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.52</b>		The temperature of the water entering the filter must not drop below 6°C at any time	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.53</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 0.5 NTU for more than 5 percent of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.54</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 1.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.55</b>		All of the requirements in Table 24 must be met	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.56</b>	<b>Membrane filtration up to 4.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the membrane filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.57</b>		Direct integrity tests must be performed on each membrane filtration unit at least daily (midnight to midnight) if the membrane filtration unit has been in service at any point during the day.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T3.58</b>		The membrane filtrate turbidity must not exceed the turbidity of the membrane feed water for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period. 31	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.59</b>		No membrane unit may be used while it has failed its direct integrity test.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.60</b>		If the turbidity of the membrane filtrate exceeds 0.1 NTU for more than 15 minutes the membrane unit must be shut down and not returned to service until it has passed a direct integrity test.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.61</b>		If the membrane unit has been out of service for maintenance or any other reason a direct integrity test must be completed before the unit is returned to service.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.62</b>		All of the requirements in Table 25 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.63</b>	<b>Cartridge filtration 2.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the cartridge filtration process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.64</b>		A slow opening/closing valve must be fitted ahead of each housing, or each feed pump must be fitted with a variable speed drive, to minimise pressure surges onto the cartridges.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.65</b>		Pumps must not be connected directly to the discharge side of a cartridge filter. After filtration, the filtrate must pass directly to a tank if there is subsequent pumping.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.66</b>		Turbidity does not exceed 0.5 NTU (or 1.0 NTU if a 1- micron cartridge is used) for more than 5 percent of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.67</b>		Turbidity does not exceed 1.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T3.68</b>		The filtrate turbidity does not exceed the turbidity of the cartridge feed water for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period. <sup>33</sup>	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.69</b>		The equipment is operated within the flow range for which it was certified at all times.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.70</b>		Differential pressure is kept within the manufacturer's recommendations at all times.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.71</b>		Individual cartridges are clearly labelled with the manufacturer's name and the part number that relates to the certification.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.72</b>		All of the requirements in Table 26 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.73</b>	<b>Ozone Rules 0.25 -3.0 log</b>	All water must pass through the ozone process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.74</b>		The C.t and water temperature required for the log credit claimed ( Table 27) must be achieved for more than 95% of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.75</b>		The C.t and water temperature required for the log credit claimed ( Table 27) must not be less than 80% for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.76</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 5.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.77</b>		All of the requirements for ozone disinfection in Table 28 must be met.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.78</b>	<b>UV light Rules up to 4 log</b>	All water must pass through the UV reactor.	Assurance	The Councils support the use of UV up to 4-Log
<b>T3.79</b>		The UV dose must meet or exceed that required to achieve the claimed log credit for at least 95% of the day.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.

<b>T3.80</b>		The UV dose must not be less than required to achieve the claimed log credit for any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.81</b>		Turbidity must not exceed 5.0 NTU for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.82</b>		UV Transmittance (UVT) must meet or exceed 95% of the UVT for which the reactor has been validated for at least 95% of the day. <sup>37</sup>	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.83</b>		UVT must not be less than 80% of the lowest UVT for which the reactor has been validated for the duration of any consecutive 15-minute period. <sup>38</sup>	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.84</b>		The equipment must be operated within the flow range for which it was validated for at least 95% of the day.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.85</b>		All of the requirements for UV disinfection in Table 29 must be met	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.86</b>	<b>Chemical Rules</b>	Values for determinands in treated water that exceeded 50% of their MAV in the source water, are added or formed in the treatment process (as well as impurities in treatment chemicals) including the determinands set out in table 31, must be identified by the collection and analyses of 15 samples over a 12-month period (with no more than two samples collected in any calendar month).	Assurance	There is a significant increase on the sampling and monitoring requirements for chemicals which will impact on resourcing (recruitment of monitoring and laboratory staff) to undertake the monitoring, laboratory test costs. With these rules being implemented before the three waters reform is implemented will add significant operating costs to the Council and require additional rates.
<b>T3.87</b>		Determinands identified by the sampling programme outlined in rule T3.86 must continue to be sampled at the rate set out in Table 30.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.88</b>		If sodium hypochlorite is used as a disinfectant, chlorate and perchlorate and must be sampled weekly	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.



<b>T3.89</b>		If fluoride is added to treated water, it must be continuously monitored.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.90</b>		Samples must be taken from a point directly after the final treatment process.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.91</b>		Containers used for collecting samples must be obtained from a laboratory and appropriate for the target determinand.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.92</b>		Event based monitoring (determined by the water supplier) must be undertaken for any event that may rapidly introduce high concentrations of health-significant chemical determinands into the water at the source or at the treatment plant.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.93</b>	<b>Cyanotoxin Rules</b>	If a water supplier becomes aware of the presence of cyanobacteria in source water, monitoring of treated water for cyanotoxin levels must commence in accordance with the supply cyanobacteria/cyanotoxin response plan.	Monitoring	The Councils have a concern that Cyanotoxin testing turnarounds for samples maybe under pressure to meet deadlines for turnarounds due to increased demand especially for smaller geographically isolated sources.
<b>T3.94</b>		If cyanotoxins are identified in treated water, cyanotoxin testing must be undertaken in accordance with the supply response plan but must be at a frequency of at least twice weekly until cyanotoxins are not present.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>T3.95</b>		If cyanotoxin levels in treated water exceed the MAVs in the <i>New Zealand Drinking Water Standards 202X (to be determined)</i> neither a 'do not use advisory' must be issued to consumers, or water must be provided from an alternative source	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>Distribution Rules</b>				

<b>D1.1</b>		Water in the distribution system must be monitored for the determinands and at the frequencies set out in Table 8 and any other determinands identified in the supply Source Water Risk Management Plan.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D1.2</b>		A backflow prevention device must be fitted at any place in the distribution system where there is a high or moderate risk of backflow	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D2.1</b>		Water in the distribution system must be monitored for the determinands/ parameters and at the frequencies set out in table 13.	Monitoring	Monitoring daily for pH and FAC without a continuous monitoring system within the distribution system is not technically very easy with timing and resourcing especially across small geographically separate networks. The costs of installing continuous monitoring would be cost prohibitive. The Councils recommend that Taumata Arowai review the frequency of this monitoring or provide direction on an appropriate number of measuring points within a distribution network.
<b>D2.2</b>		There must be no more than 45 days between E. coli samples. and 5 different days of the week must be used.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D2.3</b>		consecutive samples for E. coli must not be taken on the same weekday.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D2.4</b>		over a year, 5 different days of the week must be used.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D2.5</b>		Samples taken for FAC, Ph and E. coli must be taken at regular sampling points that are representative of the distribution system and include storage reservoirs and end points of the system.	Assurance	The Councils would like clarification on the numbers of samples that would be representative across a distribution network. This would assist in the logistics However as the sample locations are the same for e-coli FAC and pH the three tests could be undertaken on a weekly basis. The risk of these determinands changing within the network would Testing at the treatment stage would give some confidence that weekly monitoring would be appropriate.
<b>D2.6</b>		Samples for metals must be collected from a sampling point	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.

		near the end of the system. Taps to be flushed.		
<b>b</b>		An assessment of the distribution system for backflow risk must be performed annually by the supplier and; i. any supply point connections, fittings to be found at risk for backflow must be recorded along with potential hazard. ii. any supply points at risk must have a suitable backflow prevention or containment device fitted iii. all supply point testable backflow prevention devices installed must be inspected and tested annually by a suitably trained and qualified person and remediated if found to be faulty. iv. any cross connections that are identified must be removed.	Assurance	
<b>D3.1</b>		DW Suppliers must prepare and implement a backflow prevention programme to protect network against risk of backflow.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D3.2</b>		Periodic surveys of customer premises to determine medium and high-risk sites must be undertaken by the supplier at a minimum of every 5 years to assess the adequacy of backflow prevention at the supply point	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D3.3</b>		Supplier must notify the local authority with details of the situation and risk around inadequate backflow at any premises	Assurance	The Councils question the reasoning around needing to inform the local authority and would request that the description is made clearer if referring to a building compliance issue.
<b>D3.4</b>		Testing of all testable backflow prevention devices installed at a supply point specifically to protect the network (generally	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.

		boundary devices) must be undertaken at least annually.		
<b>D3.5</b>		Supplier must maintain a register of the location of all supply point testable backflow protection devices, device types, risk level and the results of testing the devices.	Assurance	The Councils agree in principle with this requirement, although the timeframes to collate this data may exceed the timeframes for compliance. The Councils request a longer implementation period for developing this register of 1 year or to be undertaken with the development of the three water processes to ensure consistency of data and data systems.
<b>D3.6</b>		Access to a water network through use of a standpipe is not permitted except by Fire and Emergency New Zealand, other emergency services, the water supplier or authorised contractors to the water supplier where it is reasonably necessary to access the network for the operation of the drinking water supply.	Assurance	The Councils submit that the rule relating to standpipes are too restrictive and recommend that water supplier controls the access points. Councils currently enable contractors such as roading and development contractors to use registered and metered standpipes for civil works. From a climate change and sustainability perspective there are benefits relating to the carbon footprints for operations to not have to travel to obtain water for worksites. The Councils propose that the definition of who can use standpipes is widened, and that access is managed via a permit system for fire hydrants and standpipes have adequate backflow protection.
<b>D3.7</b>	<b>New and Repaired Watermains Hygiene Procedures Rules</b>	Before carrying out or commissioning repairs to pipes in a water distribution network, a drinking water supplier must undertake and keep records of a risk assessment to determine the risk of contamination of the network and the procedures required to minimise that risk.	Assurance	The Councils have concerns that undertaking a documented risk assessment for all repairs is not sustainable. The Councils recommend this could be undertaken for high-risk pipes such as mains and pipes serving vulnerable communities. The Water Safety plans will outline standard processes and procedures that contractors and staff are expected to follow that are appropriate to the level or repairs and criticality of the network affected. This would also be covered by contractor SOP's, JSA's?
<b>D3.8</b>		All materials used in construction and repairs must be free of visible contamination and remain protected from contamination until installation	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.8 - D 3.10 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans

<b>D3.9</b>		All tools contacting the water supply, or its parts (cutting surfaces) must be disinfected prior to commencing work and throughout process if it comes into contact with soil or backfill material	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.8 - D 3.10 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.10</b>		Disinfection of mains must follow industry best management practices	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.8 - D 3.10 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.11</b>		Water suppliers must develop and document standard operating procedures for planned, unplanned and emergency repairs.	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.8 - D 3.10 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.12</b>	<b>Facilities Operations, Maintenance and Disinfection Rules</b>	Water suppliers must prepare water storage management plans for the operation of storage facilities which includes the minimum and maximum operating levels, target turnover rates, inspection and cleaning	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.12 - D 3.17 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.13</b>		Storage facilities must be subject to a security and contamination inspection and assessment annually	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.12 - D 3.17 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.14</b>		Supplier must prepare and use written disinfection procedures for storage facilities that are consistent with best practice	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.12 - D 3.17 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.15</b>		All new storage facilities and existing facilities that have been drained for maintenance purposes must be cleaned and disinfected prior to being brought back into use.	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.12 - D 3.17 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.16</b>		Divers' suits, rafts, ROV's and other materials used during inspection and maintenance within storage facilities must be made from materials acceptable for contact with potable water and suitable for disinfection.	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.12 - D 3.17 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans

<b>D3.17</b>		All equipment and materials entering storage facilities must be disinfected immediately prior to entry according to industry best practice.	Assurance	The Councils see rules D 3.12 - D 3.17 as repetitive and are already requirements of the Water Safety Plans
<b>D3.18</b>		Following full or partial draining of storage facilities for disinfection purposes, it must be refilled with potable water and tested for TC, E.coli and FAC.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D3.19</b>		A sampling plan for determinands to be sampled in relation to disinfection, disinfection by-products and plumbosolvent metals must be prepared including a system map indicating locations and response procedures to be followed when sample results do not meet prescribed levels.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D3.20</b>		A FACE of at least 0.2mg/L must be maintained at all locations at all times.	Monitoring	The Councils agree with this requirement.
<b>D3.21</b>		Samples must be collected for FAC and Ph at the frequencies outlined in table 31	Monitoring	There is an error, and this should refer to table 32. Clarification is sought is the sample location can be the same for the twice daily samples. Under rule D3.26 which are the FAC and pH continuous monitoring locations this. This also raises the question if there are more than one reservoir are multiple meters required but only 2 daily samples are required for the whole distribution zone.
<b>D3.22</b>		Routine sampling sites must be located to adequately represent the distribution system and areas associated with higher risk of deterioration of water quality and population exposure	Assurance	The councils would like Taumata Arowai to develop guidance on the development of nationally consistent monitoring points for the distribution network. This would include how a zone should be determined. The size and number of points per zone could change the sampling requirements and increase monitoring and costs for the operators.

<b>D3.23</b>		Analyses must be undertaken for the following disinfection by-products, trihalomethanes: chloroform, bromodichloromethane, dibromochloromethane, and bromoform; and the haloacetic acids: dichloroacetic acid and trichloroacetic acid in each distribution zone according to the frequencies set out in Table 33.	Assurance	There is a misalignment between table 33 and the rule compliance periods quarterly testing but 1 monthly reporting. These should be aligned to quarterly or to a rolling average over 12 months due to negligible health risk.
<b>D3.24</b>		Sample sites for disinfection by-products should represent both peripheral and central locations in the distribution system.	Assurance	The Councils are concerned that this rule adds a central location to the locations for sampling (in addition to the supply points and outer extents. The same sampling locations should be used where possible, and terminology made consistent (e.g., peripheral vs outer extent).
<b>D3.25</b>		Analyses must be undertaken in each distribution zone for the plumbosolvent metals outlined in Table 34.	Monitoring	No guidance has been provided as to how sampling for Plumbosolvent metals is to be undertaken. The Councils request further guidance is developed to assist water distributors.
<b>D3.26</b>		Continuous monitoring analysers for FAC and pH must be installed in each distribution at the following locations: 1. at the supply point to a distribution zone. E.g., a reservoir or bulk supply point 2. at a supply main near to the outer extent of the distribution of the distribution zone in an area associated with higher risk of deterioration in water quality.		The Councils require clarification on what is meant by a distribution zone in this context. At treatment plant before entering distribution or at each reservoir as this creates a huge increase in the number of monitors required across the distribution network for a low risk. This would be a significant cost to install, service and manage. As discussed, is D.2.21 this is conflicting with 2 samples per day across the distribution network.
<b>D3.27</b>		Verification of the representative nature of the continuous monitoring results must be undertaken by the collection and analysis of five grab samples each month from within the distribution zone. Samples should be taken from the outer extent of the distribution zone at times of normal demand.		The Councils request this is amended to weekly rather than 5 samples a month.

<b>D3.28</b>	<b>Microbiological Monitoring Rules</b>	A written sampling plan for monitoring TC, E. coli and any other determinand/ parameter must be prepared, including a system map indicating sampling locations.	Assurance	This is duplicating the Water Safety Plan.
<b>D3.29</b>		E. coli and total coliforms must be monitored in each zone of the distribution system according to the frequencies set out in table 35.	Reporting	The Assurance/monitoring refers to reporting which is not used anywhere else in the quality assurance rules. The Councils request that Taumata Arowai change this term to monitoring to reflect the other classes or define reporting in the rules. The Councils agree with the sampling frequencies in Table 35. It is noted that Weekly reporting/ monitoring is not aligned with other reporting such as FAC and pH and request that monthly reporting is sufficient noting that any exceedances are notified within 24 hours.
<b>D3.30</b>		Routine sampling sites must be located to adequately represent the water in the distribution system, including water leaving water storage facilities.	Assurance	The Councils request that the sampling sites should be aligned with the FAC and pH testing sites and frequencies for ease of data collection and management. The splits between populations for FAC and pH and microbiological is not consistent, it is also practice to sample pH when undertaking the microbiological testing to ensure there are no other factors affecting the results.
<b>D3.31</b>		Samples must be collected according to written sampling protocols prepared by the drinking water supplier or the laboratory undertaking the sample analysis.	Assurance	The Councils agree with this requirement.



# Submission on Drinking Water Aesthetic Values

Name	Sue Davidson	
Organisation (if applicable)	Kaipara District Council	

## Relevant documents;

[Drinking Water Aesthetic Values – Summary \(176 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Aesthetic Values \(195 KB, PDF\)](#)

Question
<p><b>Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues</b></p> <p><b>Note you are not required to provide your email address</b></p>
<p>C/o <a href="mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz">dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz</a></p>
<p><b>Where do you live/reside?</b></p> <p>Whangarei</p> <p><b>If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outside New Zealand</li> <li>• National</li> <li style="background-color: yellow;">• Northland / Te Tai Tokerau</li> <li>• Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau</li> <li>• Waikato</li> <li>• Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi</li> <li>• Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti</li> <li>• Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui</li> <li>• Taranaki</li> <li>• Manawatū – Whanganui</li> <li>• Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara</li> <li>• Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere</li> <li>• Nelson / Whakatū</li> <li>• Marlborough / Te Taihu-o-tewaka</li> <li>• West Coast / Te Tai Poutini</li> <li>• Canterbury / Waitaha</li> <li>• Otago / Ōtākou</li> <li>• Southland / Murihiku</li> </ul>

**Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?**

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)
- Other commercial user of water
- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- **Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation**
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an 'Registered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).**
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an 'Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

- School
- Café
- Camping grounds
- Recreational facilities

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Community halls and other local community facilities</li> <li>• Water supplied under an easement</li> <li>• Small commercial water supply networks</li> <li>• rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>	
<b>If you selected 'Other commercial user of water' – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example 'food manufacturer' 'bottled water supplier' etc)
<b>If you selected 'Stakeholder representative / industry body'</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected 'Marae' – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected 'Health professional' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>

<p><b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>1. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>2. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>3. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b></p>	<p>Specify your interest</p>
<p><b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question

Response

<p><b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p><b>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</b></p> <p><b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the</b></p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

<b>OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b>	
---	--

## Responses

**You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.**

**Do you agree that the proposed range for determinands will be acceptable to consumers regarding appearance, taste and odour?**

The Councils are in general support the development of aesthetic properties for drinking water.

However it is our view that the quality standards should always override the aesthetics and that provision should be made where there is a difference in the required standards for safety and aesthetics that the water quality standard should be the one to be met and a water supplier should not be penalised or deemed non compliant over aesthetic values. It is always the goal of a water supplier to provide safe and acceptable drinking water.

It is unclear how the means of meeting the water requirements will be measured and what the consequences would be from the regulator if the aesthetic values are not met. For some communities the changes to the water supply to meet the standards will significantly change the taste of water which could increase the number of complaints. This will need to be balanced with the improvement in water quality.

**Do you agree with the proposed acceptable range for Chlorine?**

**Existing guideline 0.6 – 1.0 (mg/L)**

**Proposed acceptable range - 0.3 – 0.6 (mg/L) as Cl<sub>2</sub>**

The range for Chlorine is too narrow especially for sources with expansive reticulation networks. Chlorine degrades over time and distance and it is expected to be difficult to meet this at the source/ treatment and delivery network testing points. Additional chlorine dosing points may need to be added to meet this standard, which would add additional cost to the water providers infrastructure.

**Do you agree with the proposed acceptable range for Iron?**

**Existing guideline - 0.2 (mg/L)**

**Proposed acceptable range - ≤0.3 (mg/L)**

Yes, the Councils agree with the range for iron.

**Do you agree with the proposed acceptable range for Temperature?**

**Existing guideline - Should be acceptable to most consumers, preferably cool**

**Proposed acceptable range - Preferably not more than 15°C**

Yes, the Councils agree with the range for temperature.

This is not currently tested for within the receiving network. Clarification is sought if this is an average across the distribution network and how many samples would be required for a representative sample for a distribution network.

**Th Do you agree with the proposed acceptable range for Turbidity?**

**Existing guideline – 2.5 NTU**

**Proposed acceptable range - ≤4 NTU**

Yes, the Councils agree with the range for turbidity.

**Do you agree with the proposed acceptable range for Colour?**

**Existing guideline – 10 TCU**

**Proposed acceptable range - ≤15 TCU**

Yes, the Councils agree with the range for colour.

**If you want to provide any feedback on transition issues to the proposed Drinking Water Aesthetic Values**

It is understood a 1 July 2022 start date to test for aesthetic values. No information for transition process has been provided.

Relief Sought:

The Councils propose the requirements for implementation are be aligned with the 3 waters reform to manage the increased costs to consumers.

**additional feedback on any acceptable ranges**

**Additional Feedback**

The Councils would like clarity on how aesthetic values will affect overall compliance with the standards. Source waters can have chemical different make-ups and the costs to effect the aesthetic standards while meeting the water quality standards may be cost prohibitive especially for smaller suppliers.





# Submission on Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies

Name	Sue Davidson
Organisation (If applicable)	Kaipara District Council

## Relevant documents;

[Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies - Summary \(129 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies \(500 KB, PDF\)](#)

### Question

**Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues**

**Note you are not required to provide your email address**

C/o [dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz)

**Where do you live/reside?**

Whangarei

**If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’**

- Outside New Zealand
- National
- Northland / Te Tai Tokerau
- Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau
- Waikato
- Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi
- Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti
- Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui
- Taranaki
- Manawatū – Whanganui
- Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara
- Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere
- Nelson / Whakatū
- Marlborough / Te Tauihu-o-tewaka
- West Coast / Te Tai Poutini
- Canterbury / Waitaha
- Otago / Ōtākou
- Southland / Murihiku

**Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?**

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)
- Other commercial user of water
- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- **Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation**
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an 'Registered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).**
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an 'Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

- School
- Café
- Camping grounds
- Recreational facilities

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Community halls and other local community facilities</li> <li>• Water supplied under an easement</li> <li>• Small commercial water supply networks</li> <li>• rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>	
<b>If you selected 'Other commercial user of water' – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example 'food manufacturer' 'bottled water supplier' etc)
<b>If you selected 'Stakeholder representative / industry body'</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected 'Marae' – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected 'Health professional' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>

<p><b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>1. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>2. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>3. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b></p>	<p>Specify your interest</p>
<p><b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question	Response
<p><b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

<b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b>	
---	--

## Responses

You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.

**Do you believe that the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Roof Water Supplies will provide assistance to water suppliers to comply with the Water Services Act 2021?**

Yes, the Councils support that the proposed Drinking Water Standards for Roof Water Supplies will provide assistance to Water Suppliers to comply with the Act. Further assistance could be provided in the form of reporting templates, assistance in helping identify specialised providers of testing and monitoring and education and training for the suppliers in what is required.

**Section 4 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution sets the criteria that must be met for the adoption of the proposed acceptable solution:**

### Drinking water use criteria

- Water is supplied to a building, or group of buildings, which share the same roof water source.
- A networked community drinking water supply is not available to the building(s) i.e. the drinking water acceptable solution does not apply to building(s) which is located within the supply area of a reticulated water supply.
- All buildings that require drinking water, and are served by the roof water supply, must receive treated water.
- All water used within a building or buildings fitted with a treatment system, must be treated by that system. Water provided for outdoor water use may be untreated but must be marked as non-potable in accordance with the Building Code (schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992).

### Water supply size criteria

- The population served by the entire drinking water supply must be less than 500 people.
- There are compliant treatment systems installed such that each building is serviced with treated drinking water.

### Treatment system size criteria

- Any treatment system must be designed to meet the peak instantaneous demand for treated water.

**Do you agree with these proposed criteria?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed criteria however in regard to the quantity of drinking water, Taumata Arowai should provide guidance as to what is an adequate supply at peak demand.

**Section 6 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the requirements that must be met for every serviced building that receives water from a roof water supply.**

**Section 6.1 covers the roof water system requirements.**

**Do you agree that the proposed roof water system requirements are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However, the Councils are concerned that due to socio-economic factors, some roof water suppliers will struggle to meet the design requirements. Building maintenance is economically difficult for some communities already and additional regulation will increase financial pressure.

**Section 6 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the requirements that must be met for every serviced building that receives water from a roof water supply.**

**Section 6.2 covers the requirements the end point treatment system requirements.**

**Do you agree that the proposed end point treatment system requirements are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However, in our capacity as an advocate for communities, the Councils note that the requirements may be a significant upgrade from existing systems. Compliance timeframes should reflect the financial challenges and limited professional capacity available to implement these, especially in remote communities.

**Section 6 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the requirements that must be met for every serviced building that receives water from a roof water supply.**

**Section 6.3 covers the requirements the end point treatment system configuration.**

**Do you agree that the proposed end point treatment system configuration is appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However, in our capacity as an advocate for communities, the Councils note that the requirements are a significant upgrade from existing systems. Compliance timeframes should reflect the financial challenges and limited professional capacity available to implement these upgrades. Taumata Arowai should consider whether there is scope for simpler acceptable solutions for very small roof supplies. Also, communities who are not serviced by mains power (off grid) would not be able to use this solution.

**Section 7 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the operation and maintenance for the roof water supply that includes requirements for each treatment system.**

**Do you agree that the proposed requirements for the operation and maintenance for the roof water supply that includes requirements for each treatment system are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However, the Councils are concerned that the requirement for Operation and Maintenance manuals, SOP's and inspection procedures is similar to a Water Safety Plan. This is a considerable administrative requirement for laypersons. Taumata Arowai should consider providing guidance and templates to facilitate compliance.

**Section 8 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the monitoring and testing the water supplier must undertake.**

**Do you agree with the source water monitoring requirements?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However the Councils notes the specification that water source monitoring be conducted between June and August. This may not be achievable if there is high demand and limited laboratory capacity.

**Section 8 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the monitoring and testing the water supplier must undertake.**

**Do you agree with the treated water monitoring requirements?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However, the Councils notes the requirement to monitor for E. coli post tap every 3 months will be difficult to monitor and enforce. If cartridge and UV requirements are being met, is it still cost effective to monitor E. coli?

**Section 9 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the incident or emergency response plan the water supplier must develop.**

**Do you agree with the incident or emergency response plan the water supplier must develop are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. However, the Councils note this is a significant new administrative requirement. Taumata Arowai should consider providing guidance and templates to facilitate compliance. It is unclear how this requirement will be monitored and enforced.

**Section 10 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the training and awareness obligations of the water supplier.**

**Do you agree with the training and awareness obligations of the water supplier are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements.

**Section 11 of the draft drinking water acceptable solution covers the auditing obligations of the water supplier.**

**Do you agree with the auditing obligations of the water supplier are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements.

**If you want to provide any additional feedback, please provide this here:**



# Submission on Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies

Name	Sue Davidson
Organisation (if applicable)	Kaipara District Council

## Question

**Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues**

**Note you are not required to provide your email address**

C/o [dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz)

**Where do you live/reside?**

Whangarei

**If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’**

- Outside New Zealand
- National
- **Northland / Te Tai Tokerau**
- Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau
- Waikato
- Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi
- Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti
- Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui
- Taranaki
- Manawatū – Whanganui
- Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara
- Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere
- Nelson / Whakatū
- Marlborough / Te Taihū-o-tewaka
- West Coast / Te Tai Poutini
- Canterbury / Waitaha
- Otago / Ōtākou
- Southland / Murihiku

**Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?**

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)

- Other commercial user of water
- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- **Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation**
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an 'Registered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).**
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an 'Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)' – are you**

- School
- Café
- Camping grounds
- Recreational facilities
- Community halls and other local community facilities
- Water supplied under an easement
- Small commercial water supply networks
- rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)
- Other

<b>If you selected 'Other commercial user of water' – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example 'food manufacturer' 'bottled water supplier' etc)
<b>If you selected 'Stakeholder representative / industry body'</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected 'Marae' – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected 'Health professional' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>
<b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>1. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>2. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>3. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>

<b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b>	Specify your interest
<b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question	Response
<b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b>	(Required response)  Select an option: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> </ol>

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p><b>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</b></p> <p><b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b></p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

## Responses

You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.

**Do you believe that the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Water Supplies will provide assistance to water suppliers to comply with the Water Services Act 2021?**

Yes, the Councils support that the proposed Drinking Water Standards for Spring and Bore Water Supplies will provide assistance to Water Suppliers to comply with the Act.

Further assistance could be provided in the form of reporting templates, assistance in helping identify specialised providers of testing and monitoring and education and training for the suppliers in what is required.

**This proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies has been prepared based on a centralised treatment solution. Do you think the proposed Acceptable Solution would be more effective if it was based on an end-point treatment system rather than a central treatment plant?**

Options should be provided for both options. But for supplies serving less than 500 people a central treatment plan is potentially more cost effective.

**Section 4 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies sets the criteria that must be met for the adoption of the proposed acceptable solution:**

- Water abstracted from a bore or spring is treated, then supplied to a distribution system.
- Water is provided to a consumers point of supply (toby).
- The population served by the entire drinking water supply is less than 500 people.
- All water provided is treated by a treatment system which meets the requirements set out in this drinking water acceptable solution.
- An adequate quantity of drinking water is provided to all connections at peak demand.

**Do you agree with these proposed criteria?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed criteria however in regard to the quantity of drinking water, Taumata Arowai should provide guidance as to what is an adequate supply at peak demand. Any water take serving under 500 people that needs to be registered with have or will require resource consent for the water take and existing conditions of consent conditions will apply.

The Councils would like clarification on whether this acceptable solution can be applied to lake/dam/reservoir takes serving under 500 people and if not would like this to be explicitly stated in the acceptable solution.

**Section 6.1 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the requirements before the drinking water acceptable solution can be adopted by a supplier.**

**Do you agree that the proposed requirements before the drinking water acceptable solution can be adopted by a supplier are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree with these proposed requirements. Taumata Arowai should identify suitable laboratories and secure rates to assist the water supplier with testing and to manage costs to the supplier.

**Section 6.2 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the requirements the bore or spring source for the drinking water supply must meet before the drinking water acceptable solution can be adopted by a supplier.**

**Do you agree that the proposed requirements before the Acceptable Solution can be adopted by a supplier are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree in general with these proposed requirements.

Any reference to stock exclusion and location and activities within zones adjacent to supply points should be aligned with the National Environmental Standard – for Sources of Human Drinking Water SWRMA zone rules.

**Section 6.3 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the treatment system requirements must meet before the drinking water acceptable solution can be adopted by a supplier.**

**Do you agree that the proposed requirements the treatment system must meet before the drinking water acceptable solution can be adopted by a supplier are appropriate?**

Yes, the Councils agree in general with these proposed requirements.

There is potential that the water supplier could have significant costs to establish these systems. If there is no support from Central or Local Government or Water Entities, there is a risk that the economics or complicated requirements will negatively impact small users and business such as campgrounds and papakianga. There is concern around levels of competency of water suppliers to manage systems and costs required to provide professional support.

**Section 7 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the operation and maintenance of the bore or spring drinking water supply, including the headworks and the treatment system.**

**Do you agree that the proposed requirements for the operation and maintenance of the spring or bore water supply including the headworks and the treatment system are appropriate?**

Yes, in general the Councils support the requirements for operation and maintenance of the spring or bore supply.

It is noted that Maintenance, Inspection and Calibration requires either daily visits or continuous monitoring, both these options are a significant investment in technology or staff for a small provider and is greater than the S1+T1+D1 requirements. The ability of a provider to be a water treatment expert in undertaking monitoring raises the competency issue on who can undertake

sampling and inspections. Many of these systems are located outside of urban areas (hence not being on public supply) and therefore the ability of trained experts to undertake the required monitoring is limited.

The Councils would reduce this to a similar level of monitoring to the S1+T1+D1 requirements.

**Section 8 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the monitoring and testing the water supplier must undertake.**

**Do you agree with the source water monitoring requirements?**

As above, the requirements are acceptable but there are concerns of the affordability and competency of water suppliers to undertake the level of monitoring required. In addition, some of these areas are remote and have limited courier and transport systems which may impact of the ability to undertake the required testing.

**Section 8 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the monitoring and testing the water supplier must undertake.**

**Do you agree with the treated water monitoring requirements?**

As above, the requirements are acceptable but there are concerns of the affordability and competency of water suppliers to undertake the level of monitoring required.

Daily or continuous testing for pH, FAC and turbidity could be reduced to twice weekly.

The UV continuous monitoring requires an alarm to an operator. As many of these sites are remote the ability to respond to an alert by a qualified operator may not be feasible. This again leads to the ability to train and provide an level of competency to a level accepted by Taumata Arowai.

**Section 8 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the monitoring and testing the water supplier must undertake.**

**Do you agree with the distribution system monitoring requirements?**

As above, the requirements are acceptable but there are concerns of the affordability and competency of water suppliers to undertake the level of monitoring required.

**Section 9 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the incident or emergency response plan the water supplier must develop.**

**Do you agree that the incident and emergency response plan requirements are appropriate?**

Yes, in general the Councils support the requirements for the incident and emergency response plan.

**Section 10 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the training and awareness obligations of the water supplier.**

**Do you agree that the training and awareness obligations of the water supplier are appropriate?**



Overtime the training will be effective. During the establishment phase training suppliers to manage small bore and spring systems could be problematic and assistance and support will be required.

**Section 11 of the proposed Acceptable Solution for Spring and Bore Drinking Water Supplies covers the auditing obligations of the water supplier.**

**Do you agree that the auditing obligations of the water supplier are appropriate?**

Yes, in general the Councils support the requirements for the auditing obligations

**Additional Feedback**



# Submission on Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies

Name	Sue Davidson	
Organisation (if applicable)	Kaipara District Council	

Relevant documents;

[Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies - Summary \(127 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies \(753 KB, PDF\)](#)

## Question

**Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues**

**Note you are not required to provide your email address**

C/o [dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz](mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz)

**Where do you live/reside?**

Whangarei

**If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’**

- Outside New Zealand
- National
- **Northland / Te Tai Tokerau**
- Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau
- Waikato
- Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi
- Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti
- Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui
- Taranaki
- Manawatū – Whanganui
- Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara
- Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere
- Nelson / Whakatū
- Marlborough / Te Taihu-o-tewaka
- West Coast / Te Tai Poutini
- Canterbury / Waitaha
- Otago / Ōtākou

- Southland / Murihiku

**Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?**

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)
- Other commercial user of water
- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- **Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation**
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an ‘Registered water supplier (excl Marae)’ – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).**
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an ‘Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)’ – are you**

- School
- Café
- Camping grounds

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recreational facilities</li> <li>• Community halls and other local community facilities</li> <li>• Water supplied under an easement</li> <li>• Small commercial water supply networks</li> <li>• rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>	
<b>If you selected 'Other commercial user of water' – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example 'food manufacturer' 'bottled water supplier' etc)
<b>If you selected 'Stakeholder representative / industry body'</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected 'Marae' – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected 'Health professional' – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>

<p><b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>2. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>3. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>4. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b></p>	<p>Specify your interest</p>
<p><b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question

Response

<p><b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p><b>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</b></p> <p><b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the</b></p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

<b>OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b>	
---	--

## Responses

You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.

**Do you believe that the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies will provide assistance to water suppliers to comply with the Water Services Act 2021?**

Yes, the Councils agree that the Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies will assist water supplies to comply with the Act.

**Section 4 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies sets the criteria that must be met for the adoption of the proposed acceptable solution:**

### **Drinking water use criteria**

- Water is supplied through a network system to a farm (or farms) to support farm activities (e.g. stock water) but some of the water is used at households for domestic purposes.
- Up to 35 percent of the water from the supply may be used for domestic purposes (and therefore goes through a compliant treatment system). At least 65 percent of the water must be used for stock water, wash down, irrigation or other non-domestic uses.
- The water from any household treatment system must be used for domestic purposes only; i.e. drinking, food preparation, washing and oral hygiene for dwellings and farm accommodation or farm buildings.
- All water used within a building fitted with a treatment system must be treated by that system. Water provided for outdoor water use may be untreated but must be marked as non-potable in accordance with the Building Code (clauses G12 Water supplies and F8 Signs).

### **Water supply size criteria**

- There is no upper or lower limit to the population served by the rural agricultural water supply.
- End point treatment systems, which comply with the requirements for this drinking water Acceptable Solution, are installed for each single dwelling or building (e.g. shearers' quarters) serviced with drinking water or one treatment system which supplies water for up to three buildings.
- Each property that is connected to the rural agricultural water supply that adopts the drinking water Acceptable Solution, can install treatment systems at ten or fewer dwellings or buildings. Properties connected to a rural agricultural water supply that serve more than ten buildings, require a dedicated, centralised treatment system to provide potable water to all those buildings.
- All dwellings and buildings requiring drinking water must be supplied with water from a treatment system. Individual buildings or dwellings cannot opt out.

### **Treatment system size criteria**



- Any treatment system must serve no more than 30 people (within a single dwelling or building).
- Buildings serving more than 30 people require a treatment system specifically designed for the volume of water required.

Do you agree with these proposed criteria?

The Councils agree in principle with these criteria.

Clarification is sought if a farm property is used as a home business if this excludes them from the standard as it outside the definition of residential use.

**Section 7 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the requirements that must be met for both the rural agricultural supply, and any treatment systems located at houses or other buildings that receive water from the supply.**

**Section 7.1 covers the requirements before the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies can be adopted.**

**Do you agree that the proposed requirements for the use of the Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements.

However, we note that a rural supply might be high in a determinand not able to be removed by the acceptable solutions i.e., Nitrates or Lead. We consider more thought needs to be given pretesting requirements.

**Section 7 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the requirements that must be met for both the rural agricultural supply, and any treatment systems located at houses or other buildings that receive water from the supply.**

**Section 7.2 covers the requirements the rural agricultural water supply must meet.**

**Do you agree that the proposed turbidity and backflow prevention device requirements are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements.

**Section 7 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the requirements that must be met for both the rural agricultural supply, and any treatment systems located at houses or other buildings that receive water from the supply.**

**Section 7.3 covers the end point treatment system requirements.**

**Do you agree that the proposed end point treatment system requirements are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements.

However, the Councils note that for some supplier's significant investment in equipment would be required. Also, many locations are remote and the this solution will not be available if they cannot meet the requirement for mains power.

**Section 7 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the requirements that must be met for both the rural agricultural supply, and any treatment systems located at houses or other buildings that receive water from the supply.**

**Section 7.4 covers the end point treatment system configuration.**

**Do you agree that the proposed end point treatment system configuration is appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. .

However, the Councils note the requirement to install backflow, tanks, pumps, filter cartridges and UV imposes considerable expense. Communities may struggle to find the funds and professional capacity to meet these requirements.

**Section 8 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the operation and maintenance for the installation, maintenance and testing of all household or building treatment systems installed under this drinking water Acceptable Solution.**

**Section 8.1 covers the operations and maintenance manual.**

**Do you agree that the proposed operations and maintenance manual requirements are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements.

However, the Councils note the requirements involve a considerable increase in administrative burden. Taumata Arowai should either reconsider the requirements or provide guidance, templates and training to facilitate implementation. It is unclear how the requirement will be funded and enforced.

**Section 8 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the operation and maintenance for the installation, maintenance and testing of all household or building treatment systems installed under this drinking water Acceptable Solution.**

**Section 8.2 covers the standard operating procedures.**

**Do you agree that the proposed operating procedures are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements.

However, The Councils note the requirements involve a considerable increase in administrative burden. Taumata Arowai should either reconsider the requirements or provide guidance,

templates and training to facilitate implementation. It is unclear how the requirement will be funded and enforced.

**Section 8 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the operation and maintenance for the installation, maintenance and testing of all household or building treatment systems installed under this drinking water Acceptable Solution.**

**Section 8.3 covers the inspection procedures.**

**Do you agree that the proposed inspection procedures are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. However, the Councils note the requirements involve a considerable increase in administrative burden. Taumata Arowai should either reconsider the requirements or provide guidance, templates and training to facilitate implementation. It is unclear how the requirement will be funded and enforced.

**Section 9 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the monitoring and testing required under this drinking water Acceptable Solution.**

**Do you agree with the proposed household monitoring requirements?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. However, the Councils note the requirements involve a considerable increase in administrative burden. Taumata Arowai should either reconsider the requirements or provide guidance, templates and training to facilitate implementation. It is unclear how the requirement will be funded and enforced.

**Section 9 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the monitoring and testing required under this drinking water Acceptable Solution.**

**Do you agree with the proposed supply monitoring requirements?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. However, the Councils note the requirements involve a considerable increase in administrative burden. Taumata Arowai should either reconsider the requirements or provide guidance, templates and training to facilitate implementation. It is unclear how the requirement will be funded and enforced. The requirement to rotate which household is inspected will require considerable cooperation and organisation amongst groups of private households.

**Section 10 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the incident or emergency response plan the water supplier must develop.**

**Do you agree that the incident and emergency response plan requirements are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. However, the Councils note the requirements involve a considerable increase in administrative burden. Taumata Arowai should either reconsider the requirements or provide guidance, templates and training to facilitate implementation.

**Section 11 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies Solution covers the training and awareness obligations of the water supplier.**

**Do you agree that the training and awareness obligations of the water supplier are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. However, the Councils note that the requirement for training validation every 3 years may be onerous. How will Taumata Arowai ensure there is access to suitably qualified professionals to conduct regular affordable training.

**Section 12 of the proposed Drinking Water Acceptable Solution for Rural Agricultural Water Supplies covers the auditing obligations of the water supplier.**

**Do you agree that the auditing obligations of the water supplier are appropriate?**

The Councils agree in principle with these requirements. The Councils note that it is unclear how the auditing will be funded and enforced. If funded by the supplier this again is an administrative cost to be added to the operations of the supplier.

#### **Additional Feedback**

The Councils as advocates for their communities notes that the combined requirements outlined in this acceptable standard, impose considerable new costs on businesses and communities that may have limited capacity to comply.

# Submission on New Zealand Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance

Name	Sue Davidson
Organisation (if applicable)	Kaipara District Council

Relevant documents;

[Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance – Discussion Document – Summary \(182 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance – FAQs \(121 KB, PDF\)](#)

[Drinking Water Network Environmental Performance – Discussion Document \(943 KB, PDF\)](#)

Question
<p><b>Email address - this will only be used if we need to communicate with you about your submission, or if you indicate below that you would like to be contacted in the future in relation to drinking water issues</b></p> <p><b>Note you are not required to provide your email address</b></p>
<p>C/o <a href="mailto:dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz">dmugutso@kaipara.govt.nz</a></p>
<p><b>Where do you live/reside?</b></p> <p>Whangarei</p> <p><b>If your organisation has presence in more than one region – select ‘National’</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outside New Zealand</li> <li>• National</li> <li>• <b>Northland / Te Tai Tokerau</b></li> <li>• Auckland / Tāmaki-makau-rau</li> <li>• Waikato</li> <li>• Bay of Plenty / Te Moana-a-Toi</li> <li>• Gisborne / Te Tai Rāwhiti</li> <li>• Hawke’s Bay / Te Matau-a-Māui</li> <li>• Taranaki</li> <li>• Manawatū – Whanganui</li> <li>• Wellington / Te Whanganui-a-Tara</li> <li>• Tasman / Te Tai-o-Aorere</li> <li>• Nelson / Whakatū</li> <li>• Marlborough / Te Taihu-o-tewaka</li> </ul>

- West Coast / Te Tai Poutini
- Canterbury / Waitaha
- Otago / Ōtākou
- Southland / Murihiku

**Which of the below options best describes you in the context of this consultation?**

- Individual water drinker / consumer
- Registered drinking water supplier (excl marae) – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021
- Unregistered drinking water supplier (excl marae)
- Other commercial user of water
- Stakeholder representative / industry body
- Iwi representative organisation
- Marae
- Health professional
- Laboratory
- **Local authority or Council Controlled Organisation**
- Regional Council
- Central government agency
- Local interest group
- Other

**If you are an ‘Registered water supplier (excl Marae)’ – are you**

**If you have multiple supplies, please select your largest supply type.**

**For a definition of each supply type refer to this document – [Supply type](#).**

- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – < 50 (Very Small Supplies).
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – 50 – 500 (Small Supplies).
- **On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – >500 (Large Supplies).**
- On-demand Networked Drinking Water Supplies – Varying Population Size Supplies.
- Trickle Feed Water Supplies.
- Self-supplied Building Drinking Water Supplies.
- Water Carrier Services.
- Planned Event Temporary Drinking Water Supplies.
- Community Drinking Water Stations/Water Carrier Supplies

**If you are an ‘Unregistered water supplier (excl Marae)’ – are you**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• School</li> <li>• Café</li> <li>• Camping grounds</li> <li>• Recreational facilities</li> <li>• Community halls and other local community facilities</li> <li>• Water supplied under an easement</li> <li>• Small commercial water supply networks</li> <li>• rural drinking water networks (also providing irrigation and water for livestock)</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>	
<b>If you selected ‘Other commercial user of water’ – are you</b>	Specify your commercial activity (example ‘food manufacturer’ ‘bottled water supplier’ etc)
<b>If you selected ‘Stakeholder representative / industry body’</b>	Specify your area of interest or industry
<b>If you selected ‘Marae’ – are you</b>	Registered water supplier – either under the Health Act 1956 or the Water Services Act 2021  An unregistered water supplier
<b>If you selected ‘Health professional’ – are you</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. District Health Board</li> <li>2. Māori health provider</li> <li>3. Private health provider</li> <li>4. Residential care provider</li> <li>5. Other</li> </ol>

<p><b>If you selected 'Laboratory' – are you</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. IANZ accredited - drinking water laboratory</li> <li>1. IANZ - Level 2 Recognised Laboratory (transitional)</li> <li>2. Other IANZ accredited laboratory (non-drinking water)</li> <li>3. Other – non IANZ accredited laboratory</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you selected 'Local interest group'</b></p>	<p>Specify your interest</p>
<p><b>If you would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues, please select the option.</b></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes, I would like to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues on the email provided above.</li> <li>2. No, I do not want to be contacted in the future by Taumata Arowai in relation to drinking water issues</li> </ol>

## Publishing submissions and Official Information Act 1982 requests

### Publishing your submission

We intend to proactively publish the submissions made as part of this consultation on our website, but only if we are given permission to do so.

We may publish a summary of submissions. The summary will be aggregated to a level so that individual submissions cannot be identified.

### Official Information Act requests

Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act 1982 (even if it hasn't been published). We must make your submission available in response to such a request, unless we have a good reason or other administrative grounds for withholding it.

Question	Response
<p><b>Do you give us permission to proactively publish your submission?</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may publish this submission, including my personal details (name, organisation and email address)</li> </ol>



	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. You may publish this submission but only after removing my personal details (name, organisation, and email address)</li> <li>3. No. Do not publish this submission</li> </ol>
<p><b>Official Information Act requests</b></p> <p><b>Your submission may be subject to requests made under the Official Information Act (OIA), even if it hasn't been published. Your preference about the release of your submission, including your contact details, will be relevant to our decision on each request. We may be legally required to make your submission available, even if you indicate that you would prefer us not to release it</b></p>	<p>(Required response)</p> <p>Select an option:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Yes. You may make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA, including my personal details (name, organisation, email)</li> <li>2. Yes, but without details that identify me. I would prefer that you make my submission available with my personal details removed or redacted</li> <li>3. Yes, but without the information indicated below</li> <li>4. No, I would prefer that you do not make my submission available in response to requests made under the OIA</li> </ol>
<p><b>If you have asked us to withhold your submission, your personal details, or any other information in your submission, please outline the reasons why you would prefer that information not be made available</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for withholding might include that it's commercially sensitive or it's personal information.</b></p> <p><b>Any decision Taumata Arowai makes to withhold information requested under the OIA can be reviewed by the Ombudsman, who may instruct Taumata Arowai to release the withheld information.</b></p>	<p>Please specify what information in your submission you believe should be withheld, and why</p>

## Responses

You do not need to answer all the questions if you are only interested in some aspects of the consultation.

### Do you agree that the scope of environmental performance should include the entire network, from source to discharge?

Yes, the Councils support the performance covering source to discharge. It is noted that the requirements only apply to only drinking water, wastewater, and stormwater networks owned by, or operated on behalf of, councils or government departments are captured and therefore is only a subset of drinking water suppliers.

The Councils would like to have confirmed in the document if the environmental performance applies to the network managed by a provider as defined above or if each distributions network is to be reported on separately.

### Do you have any suggestions for how we could give effect to Te Mana o te Wai through the drinking water network environmental performance measures and the Network Environmental Performance Annual Report?

**Te Mana o te Wai** starts before the source, it is how we treat our whenua and awa. The better we treat our water and minimise contamination the less treatment will be required. Integration into other legislative tools such and the NPS-DW, NPS-FM and proposed RMA reform legislation is critical to manage the water system from the mountains to the sea.

### Do you agree with the proposed outcomes and principles?

Yes, the Councils agree with the stated outcomes of Mana whakahaere, Kitiakitanga and Governance and there role to set out the intended impacts of reporting.

Yes, the Councils agree with the stated principles of Kāwanatanga, Maanakitanga and Kaitiakitanga in relation to working with network operators and communities. and their role to set out the intended impacts of reporting.

There is concern reading through the performance standards that there is overlap with other reporting such as the economic regulator and is outside of the brief relating to environmental regulation.

### Do you agree with the insights and measures we have proposed?

The Councils generally agree with the insights and measures – however some of the examples used border on the assessment of the economic regulator such as borrowing and costs which will be a duplication of effort for the providers.

The same insights should be used across the regulations where there is overlap and a decision made where the performance should be measured. Taumata Arowai should look to coordinate the performance measures across the regulators to provide a single report for the communities and reduce the reporting burden on the providers.

#### **RELIEF SOUGHT**

Remove the indicators around “Are services economically sustainable”

**Do you agree with the proposed phasing of the measures over three years?**

Yes, in principle the Councils agree with the phasing of the measures. Some of the required work is already underway. Some measures will require more resourcing and funding to implement. In light of the future moves towards three water reform it seems prudent to ensure work is undertaken in a consistent manner.

Councils also request that guidance is provided on how data is to be collected and how and where it is stored to ensure consistency moving forwards under three waters reform.

Penalties should not be applied to enable suppliers the time to implement the measures, an end date for compliance would be a more appropriate measure.

**Do you agree we should include the insight: Is the environment and public health protected?**

Yes, the Councils agree that the insight Is the environment and public health protected should be included in the standards.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2022 measures and data associated with the insight: Is the environment and public health protected?**

Yes, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2022 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Drinking water service coverage	% of residential properties connected to drinking water network
Water abstractions within environmental limits	Water supply source type Volume of water abstracted (m3/year) Water abstractions for non-residential use (m3/year)
Resource consent compliance	Resources consents are held for drinking water networks (e.g., water take consent, discharge consents, etc.) Expiry dates for resource consents Permitted activity rules the network is operating under

Some of these measures will be a one off e.g. Resource Consents held. The Councils would like confirmation that it only be changes to this information that will be supplied on an ongoing basis. Compliance with Consents could be collected in the first year.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2023 measures and data associated with the insight: Is the environment and public health protected?**

Yes, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2023 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Drinking water treatment by-products	Volume (sludge, backwash water, overflows) Disposal route
Fish passage and screening	Is fish passage impeded or potentially impeded? Are all intakes screened appropriately?
Resource consent compliance	Compliance with resource consent conditions

Fish passage and screening will often be and should be a consent condition, so compliance with consent conditions should cover this, it is noted that this may be more related to stormwater environmental standards when they are developed.

If data on fish passage is required, then number of constructed fish passes in operation could be recorded. Consent compliance measure should be in first year.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2024 measures and data associated with the insight: Is the environment and public health protected?**

Yes, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2024 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Impact of capital works on ecosystems	Construction impacts from capital works including reinstatement/realignment of assets
Water abstractions within environmental limits	Sufficient environmental flows

Further information of the data requirements for the impact of capital works on ecosystems measure is requested to be provided e.g. evidence it was considered in the work planning and consenting design. The Councils are not sure on how this will be measured.

Water abstraction within environmental limits should be part of the conditions of consent.

Sufficient environmental flows are an outcome of Regional Policy Statements and the NPS-FM so this measure is a duplication and should be removed as a measure.

**Do you agree we should include the insight: Are services economically sustainable?**

Yes, the Councils will record this information but don't consider it is the environmental regulators role to collate this information.

There needs to be acknowledgement that the additional work required to meet the environmental standards and rules will increase the costs of undertaking the services. The term economically sustainable will have different meanings for different communities and regions.

**RELIEF SOUGHT**

Remove the insight as not related to environmental standards.

If this is retained the councils have the following comments on the timing of the measures.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2022 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services economically sustainable?**

If this is retained, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2022 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

It is acknowledged that most of these measures are already being collected under the Water New Zealand's National Performance Review.

Affordability	\$/year for a residential household using 200m3 of water
	\$/m3 for a non-residential customer
	Average hours on a minimum wage to pay water bill
Revenue covers costs	Revenue/Operating costs, or Operating Surplus (+ve) or deficit (-ve) / Operating Income
Asset depreciation funded	Capital renewal delivered/annual depreciation for the period
Debt at serviceable levels	Net Financial Liabilities/Operating Income
	Borrowing costs/revenue
Actual expenditure aligns with budgeted expenditure	Capital Renewal Planned Budget for a period / Capital Renewal Forecast Outlays warranted for the period
Water supply capital investment projects	Details (Name, Location, Start Date, End Date, Status, Budget, % Complete) of any investment projects over \$100,000 or a significant change in the network

The Councils would like clarification of the purpose of collecting the data under Water supply capital investment projects is achieving in terms of environmental benefit and it is likely that this information will be duplicated in the information provided to the economic regulator. The dollar limit stated would also capture a lot of renewal type projects.

**Relief Sought**

The Councils would like to be replaced with number of projects started in the reporting period as a better measure to assess the potential for the scale of environmental impacts from capital works.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2023 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services economically sustainable?**

If this is retained, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2023 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Affordability	Number of non-payments of water bills
---------------	---------------------------------------

**Do you agree we should include the insight: Are services reliable?**

Yes, the Councils agree that the insight Are services reliable should be included in the standards.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2022 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services reliable?**

Yes, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2023 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

It is acknowledged that all of the 2022 measures are already being collected under the Water New Zealand’s National Performance Review.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2023 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services reliable?**

Yes, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2023 measures -as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Systems interruptions	Number of water main breaks, bursts, and leaks (/10km) Number of customers >1 burst for x days Total number of properties affected by unplanned interruptions
Water pressure	Average hours unavailable per customer per year Properties below reference level of flow at end of year

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2024 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services reliable?**

Capacity to accommodate growth	Population projections
	Network capacity

The Councils are unsure if this measure is in the right category future population growth and capacity plans are unlikely to affect current system reliability.

**Relief Sought**

Move this measure to “are services resilient category” if required to be measured at all. More of use would be the identification of the processes in place to manage growth and future network capacity.

**Do you agree we should include the insight: Are resources used efficiently?**

Yes, the Councils agree that the insight Are the resources used efficiently should be included in the standards.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2022 measures and data associated with the insight: Are resources used efficiently?**

Yes, the Councils agree with the 1 July 2023 measures - as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

It is acknowledged that all of the 2022 measures are already being collected under the Water New Zealand’s National Performance Review.

The use of the term efficient can be seen as ambiguous and guidance is sought at to what would be an expected result to meet the standards.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2023 measures and data associated with the insight: Are resources used efficiently?**

Yes, the Councils agree in general with the 1 July 2023 measures -as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Network losses	Leakage ration day/night flows
Alternative water use	Volume of recycled water supplied to residential customers
	Volume of recycled water supplied to nonresidential customers
	Volume of recycled water supplied to managed aquifer recharge
	Volume of urban stormwater supplied to residential customer

Clarification is sought on the data source for **Volume of urban stormwater supplied to residential customer** and the meaning of this measure. If it is the use of private stormwater attenuation for non-potable use the ability of Councils to track and monitor this is currently limited. Council seek the following relief.

**Relief Sought**

Move Volume of urban stormwater supplied to residential customers to the 2024 measures to enable data collection processes to be established.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2024 measures and data associated with the insight: Are resources used efficiently?**

Yes, the Councils agree in general with the 1 July 2024 measures -as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Greenhouse gas emissions	Greenhouse gas capital emissions (tonnes/m3)
	Greenhouse gas operational emissions (tonnes/m3)

**Do you agree we should include the insight: Are services resilient?**

Yes, the Councils agree that the insight Are services resilient should be included in the standards.

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2022 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services resilient?**

Yes, the Councils agree in general with the 1 July 2022 measures -as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Sufficient fire-fighting water available	Fire hydrants tested in the previous five years (%)
--	---

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2023 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services resilient?**

Yes, the Councils agree in general with the 1 July 2022 measures -as stated above confirmation is sought if the measures apply to the network managed by the water authority as a whole or for each distribution catchment.

Return to service post natural disaster	Days to connect to post disaster service levels
	Days taken to return to normal levels of service post disaster

**Relief Sought**

The **Return to service post natural disaster** data rules should be clarified to restrict the data to water supply e.g. Days to connect to post disaster **water supply** service levels and Days taken to return to normal levels of **water supply service** post disaster.

That all of the **Return to service post natural disaster** measures are included in the 2024 measures

**Do you agree with the 1 July 2024 measures and data associated with the insight: Are services resilient?**

The Councils think there is a disconnect between the 2023 and 2024 measures. How can the post disaster services levels (2023) when you haven't set a level of service during a disaster (2024)..

Return to service post natural disaster	Level of service during disaster
	Level of service post disaster
Resilience to electricity/supply chain service disruptions	Outage allowance (allowance to cover temporary or short-term losses to supply)
Resilience to cyber threats / terrorist attack	Processes in place to address cyber threats / terrorist attack
Ability to withstand drought	Target headroom (minimum buffer between supply and demand)
Managing climate change risk	Mitigations/planning to manage risks associated with increases in extreme events



**RELIEF SOUGHT**

The **Return to service post natural disaster** data rules should be clarified to restrict the data to water supply e.g. Days to connect to post disaster **water supply** service levels and Days taken to return to normal levels of **water supply service** post disaster.

That all of the **Return to service post natural disaster** measures are included in the 2024 measures

**Do you think we have missed any insights, measures or data that fall within the environmental performance definition scope?**

This document is a good starting point but appears to have been rushed. More thought needs to go into the development and definitions of most of the measures to avoid confusion and ensure consistency. However, we see this is an ongoing process to develop and refine the measures and look forward to being contacted during the drafting.

**Do you have any comment on the likely impact of complying with the data requirements in the timeframe outlined (i.e., will compliance require operators to employ more people or purchase new software)?**

The Council's see ongoing issues with the timing of the three waters reform implementation in requiring the environmental standards data to be collected without a centralised data/risk system. This will cause additional and ongoing resourcing to amalgamate systems in the future.

The Councils are also signalling that additional compliance and reporting resources will be required to undertake the proposed reporting. The question raised above around the extent of a network will significantly affect resourcing required.

**RELIEF SOUGHT**

Continue to collect the measures currently required under the Water New Zealand's National Performance Review and move all new measures to 2023 when potentially a decision on 3 waters has been made. Alternatively, Taumata Arowai could liaise with DIA on the three waters information system requirements to develop and provide a reporting system and ensure this is being addressed within the reform process.

**Do you want to be contacted when targeted consultation on the drafting of the rules begins?**

Yes, each of the contributing Councils would like to be contacted.

**Have we missed any other pieces of work that may interact with drinking water environmental performance?**

Not that we are aware of.

**If you have any comments on possible transition issues or how we can improve the transition to the new system please provide them here.**

It would be preferable that the transition was interconnected to the three water reform implementation to reduce the amount of duplication among authorities, unnecessary expenditure on systems and processes that will end up being combined as part of the water entities.

**If you want to provide any additional feedback on environmental performance and/or the drinking water environmental performance measures please provide this here:**

We think there needs to be some clear delineation between performance measures and data for information. We would like to see performance measures reported separately to avoid confusion.

**Additional Feedback**

The Councils would like further information on how the environmental performance measures will **interact** with resource consent conditions for water takes and discharges.

The Councils request that they are able to review and comment on the network report before it is publicly released.

The Councils would like further information on the review process for the performance measures.



# **Exceptions Report**

**For the month of March 2022**

**Financial Report**

**Capital Programme**

**Procurement**

**Building and Resource Consents**

**Customer Services**

# Financial Report

## Statement of Operating and Capital Performance

	This Month 31 March 2022				Indicator	Year to 31 March 2022				Indicator	Whole Year	
	Actual \$'000	Annual Plan \$'000	Variance \$'000			Actual \$'000	Annual Plan \$'000	Variance \$'000			Annual Plan \$'000	Forecast \$'000
<b>All</b>												
Rates	3,669	3,412	257	●	31,693	31,656	37	●	41,942	41,509		
Activity Revenue and Other Income	872	569	303	●	6,973	5,380	1,593	●	7,437	8,375		
Subsidies and Grants - Operational	616	481	135	●	5,025	4,074	951	●	5,259	6,312		
<b>Total Operating Income</b>	<b>5,158</b>	<b>4,462</b>	<b>696</b>	●	<b>43,691</b>	<b>41,110</b>	<b>2,581</b>	●	<b>54,638</b>	<b>56,196</b>		
Employee Benefits	1,362	1,316	(46)	●	11,326	11,650	324	●	15,520	14,996		
Contractors	147	168	21	●	1,237	1,533	296	●	2,513	1,738		
Professional Services	836	738	(98)	●	5,609	6,696	1,087	●	9,269	8,748		
Repairs and Maintenance	1,253	664	(589)	●	7,922	5,054	(2,868)	●	7,051	11,296		
Finance costs	154	214	60	●	1,440	1,926	486	●	2,568	2,217		
Other Operating Costs	174	482	308	●	4,503	5,043	540	●	6,709	5,976		
<b>Total Operating Costs</b>	<b>3,926</b>	<b>3,582</b>	<b>(344)</b>	●	<b>32,036</b>	<b>31,902</b>	<b>(135)</b>	●	<b>43,630</b>	<b>44,971</b>		
<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b> <i>(before Depreciation)</i>	<b>1,232</b>	<b>880</b>	<b>352</b>	●	<b>11,655</b>	<b>9,208</b>	<b>2,447</b>	●	<b>11,008</b>	<b>11,225</b>		
Capital Subsidies	873	2,637	(1,764)	●	15,879	19,378	(3,499)	●	33,001	32,323		
Contributions	440	304	136	●	4,429	2,738	1,692	●	3,860	4,747		
Other Capital Revenue	98	0	98	●	102	0	102	●	0	0		
<b>Total Capital Revenue</b>	<b>1,412</b>	<b>2,941</b>	<b>(1,529)</b>	●	<b>20,410</b>	<b>22,115</b>	<b>(1,705)</b>	●	<b>36,861</b>	<b>37,070</b>		
Capital Expenditure	3,820	6,148	2,329	●	23,169	32,531	9,361	●	51,604	46,837		
<b>Total Capital Payments</b>	<b>3,820</b>	<b>6,148</b>	<b>2,329</b>	●	<b>23,169</b>	<b>32,531</b>	<b>9,361</b>	●	<b>51,604</b>	<b>46,837</b>		
<b>Subtotal Capital</b>	<b>(2,408)</b>	<b>(3,207)</b>	<b>799</b>	●	<b>(2,759)</b>	<b>(10,415)</b>	<b>7,656</b>	●	<b>(14,743)</b>	<b>(9,768)</b>		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b> <i>- before Loan Payments and Depreciation</i>	<b>(1,176)</b>	<b>(2,327)</b>	<b>1,151</b>	●	<b>8,896</b>	<b>(1,207)</b>	<b>10,103</b>	●	<b>(3,734)</b>	<b>1,457</b>		

**Key:** ● Under budget or within 5% of budget  
 ● Over or under budget by 5 - 10%  
 ● Over or under budget by more than 10%

\* Capital expenditure & capital subsidies are expressed in reverse as under budget denotes that the delivery of the capital works programme is behind schedule

\*\* Forecast budget is under review and will be reported to Council in April based on February month end actuals.

## Statement of Operating Performance

Comments on major variances

### Operating Income:

Account	Rationale	YTD Variance \$000
<b>Rates Revenue</b>	The variance in penalties is predominately because of changing the status of 19 whenua Maori blocks to non-rateable and writing off the arrears as required by the implementation of the Local Government (Rating of Whenua Maori) Amendment Act that came into force on 1 July 2021. The penalty write offs related to this amounted to \$660k.	<b>(540)</b>
	Targeted rates for wastewater are ahead of budget due to capital repayments for the Mangawhai scheme but recorded as revenue for accounting purposes.	<b>332</b>
	Water by meter revenue is ahead of budget for the month due to actual high-water consumption in Dargaville area.	<b>356</b>
<b>Activity Revenue and Other Income</b>	Activity revenue:	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Building Control – activity revenue \$16k up on budget for the month and \$520k year to date. The increase also includes a prior year revenue recognition adjustment of \$245k being moved to FY22</li> </ul>	<b>774</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Resource Consenting – activity revenue for the month is below budget, however year to date impacted by prior year revenue recognition adjustment of \$452k being moved to FY22</li> </ul>	<b>463</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External recovery costs are now ahead of budget for the month and year to date. This month: Mangawhai Heads Holiday Park revenue share of \$92k received and Kai-lwi Lakes campground fees up on budget by \$55k over the last two months.</li> </ul>	<b>207</b>
<b>Operating Subsidies and Grants</b>	Operational subsidies from Waka Kotahi are up for the month due to roading sealed works and infrastructure improvements completed ahead of budget – timing difference.	<b>951</b>

## Operating Costs:

Account	Rationale	\$000
<b>Employee Benefits</b>	Employee benefits costs are slightly up on budget for the month mainly due to accrued leave being paid out for leaving staff. This is therefore a timing difference that will be adjusted as part of the annual report completion. Year to date salaries are still well down due the time it is taking to fill vacancies in the current environment.	<b>324</b>
<b>Contractors</b>	The contractor's costs are below budget for the month and year to date, mainly in wastewater, with the under spend being used to offset higher repairs and maintenance costs in that activity.	<b>296</b>
<b>Professional Services</b>	Professional services costs are above budget for the month due to District Plan review costs incurred and below budget year to date. The majority of the year to date difference is in the Transportation activity (\$1.325m) where the budget allocation for professional services is overstated and repairs and maintenance understated and the result of how this contract work is now being coded in the system.	<b>1,087</b>
<b>Repairs and Maintenance</b>	<p><b>Transportation:</b> - Roading works maintenance programme on schedule. (Also see comment for Professionals Services).</p> <p><b>Flood Protection:</b> Weed control work programme behind schedule year to date. <b>This month:</b> Raupo stopbanks improvements work started.</p> <p><b>Waters:</b> Increase of cost due to Dargaville Wastewater Treatment plant desludging operations of \$420k but funded by a carry over from FY21 and increased reticulation repairs. Some of this is offset by savings in contractor costs (\$292k).</p> <p>Dargaville and Mangawhai Wastewater – preventative maintenance work completed.</p>	<p><b>(2,240)</b></p> <p><b>77</b></p> <p><b>(626)</b></p> <p><b>(105)</b></p>
<b>Finance Costs</b>	Below budget due to lower inter-period loan balances and the fact that there is currently no need for further borrowings to fund the capital programme at this stage.	<b>486</b>
<b>Other Operating Costs</b>	<p>Overall other operating costs are lower than budget for the month and year to date due to savings in support costs with most staff working from home.</p> <p>Additional cost for insurance premiums paid in advance in the month of November – timing difference.</p> <p>Civic Grants paid in November – timing difference, budget was planned to be spend through the year.</p>	<p><b>340</b></p> <p><b>121</b></p> <p><b>95</b></p>

## Capital Revenue

Account	Rationale	\$000
Capital Subsidies	Capital subsidies are below budget for the month and for year to date due to delays in capital works projects.	3,499
Contributions	<p>The contributions are ahead of budget for the year to date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Development contributions are ahead of budget for the year to date due to prior year adjustment of revenue being moved to FY22 for accounting purposes. This month \$525k ahead of budget</li> <li>Financial contributions are ahead of budget for the year to date.</li> </ul>	<p>601</p> <p>1,090</p>

## Public Debt:

The public debt position as at 31 March 2022 is \$44 million and the net debt position (debt less cash) is \$18.4 million.

Public Debt and Requirements	June 2021 \$000's	31 March 2022 \$000's	June 2022 \$000's
<b>Debt</b>			
Public Debt	44,000	44,000	45,702
Cash in bank (overnight deposits)	(12,194)	(25,626)	(526)
<b>Net Debt</b>	<b>31,806</b>	<b>18,374</b>	<b>45,176</b>
<b>Reserves (future obligations)</b>			
Development Contribution Reserve	(27,209)	(27,209)	(28,589)
Other Reserves	21,798	21,596	17,281
<b>Total reserves (future obligations)</b>	<b>(5,411)</b>	<b>(5,613)</b>	<b>(11,308)</b>
<b>Debt Requirements</b>			
Public Debt	44,000	44,000	45,702
Future obligations	21,778	21,596	17,281
<b>Gross Debt Requirement</b>	<b>65,778</b>	<b>65,596</b>	<b>62,983</b>
Less cash in bank	(12,194)	(25,626)	(526)
<b>Net Debt Requirements</b>	<b>53,585</b>	<b>39,971</b>	<b>62,457</b>

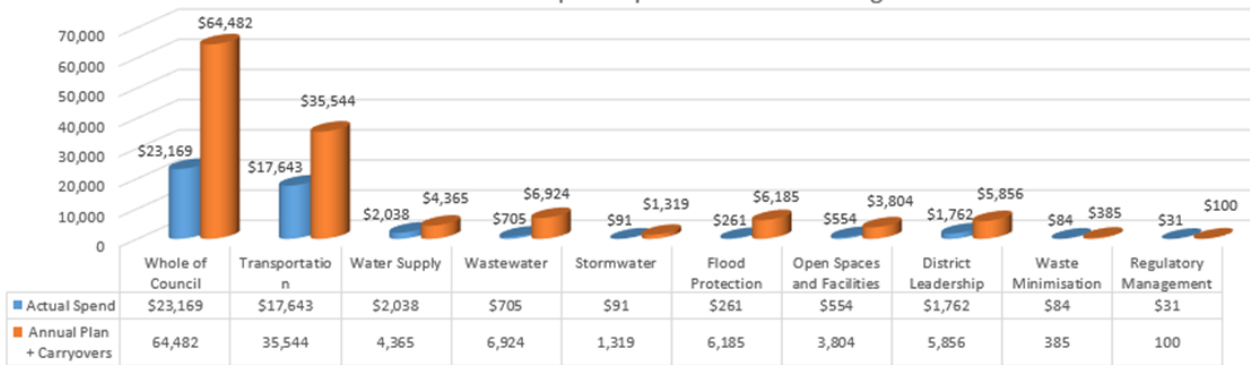
Note: Reserves balances are only recalculated at end of year.

**Capital Expenditure for the period ended 31 March 2022**

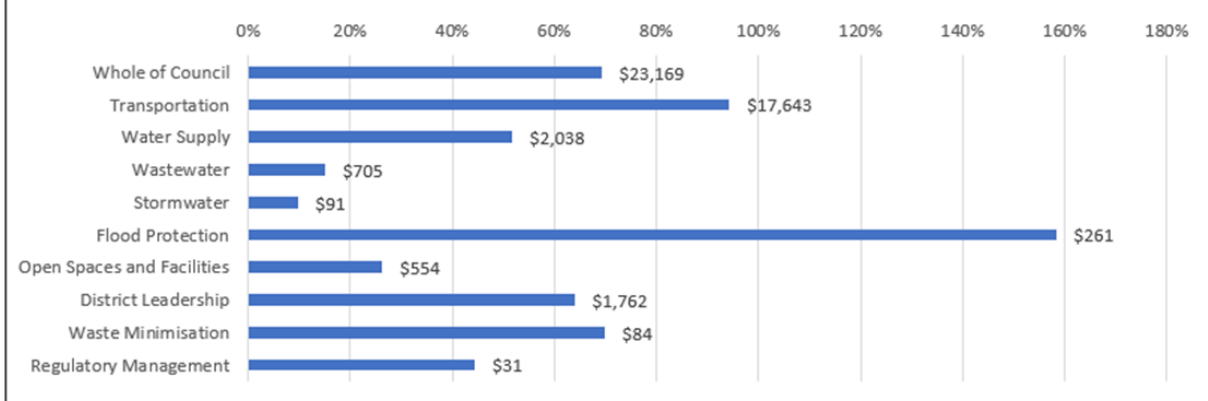
Activity - Capital Expenditure	Actual as at 31 March 2022				Whole Year	
	Actual YTD \$000's	Long Term Plan \$000's	Variance \$000's	Indicator	Long Term Plan \$000's	Long Term Plan + Carryovers \$000's
District Leadership, Finance and Internal Services	1,762	2,390	628	●	4,801	5,856
Flood Protection and Land Drainage	261	1,870	1,609	●	6,060	6,185
Open Spaces and Facilities	554	1,434	880	●	2,938	3,804
Resource Consents, Building Control and Compliance	31	70	39	●	100	100
Stormwater	91	929	838	●	1,319	1,319
Transportation	17,643	20,313	2,670	●	28,236	35,544
Waste Minimisation	84	75	(9)	●	340	385
Wastewater	705	4,016	3,311	●	6,076	6,924
Water Supply	2,038	1,434	(604)	●	1,734	4,365
	<b>23,169</b>	<b>32,531</b>	<b>9,362</b>		<b>51,604</b>	<b>64,482</b>

The capital expenditure completed this month for Whole of Council is 35.9% against LTP budget plus carryovers.

Activities - Total Capital Expenditure vs Total Budgets



Capital Expenditure year to date relative to year to date budget (Values in \$000's)



A detailed capital expenditure report can be found in Attachment A.



## Capital Programme

	Infrastructure Delivery (FY21/22)						
	Projects in plan to be delivered (FY21/22)	Projects awaiting Business Case Approval	Projects with BC approval; not yet assigned to Project Manager	Projects assigned to Project manager	Projects assigned to project manager, not yet started	Projects assigned to Project Manager; in progress	Projects completed
	56	19	2	34	10	33	4
Comments				Includes: 10 projects provisionally allocated to the 'renewals' programme			In closing stages.

## Procurement

### Procurement in progress/ recently awarded

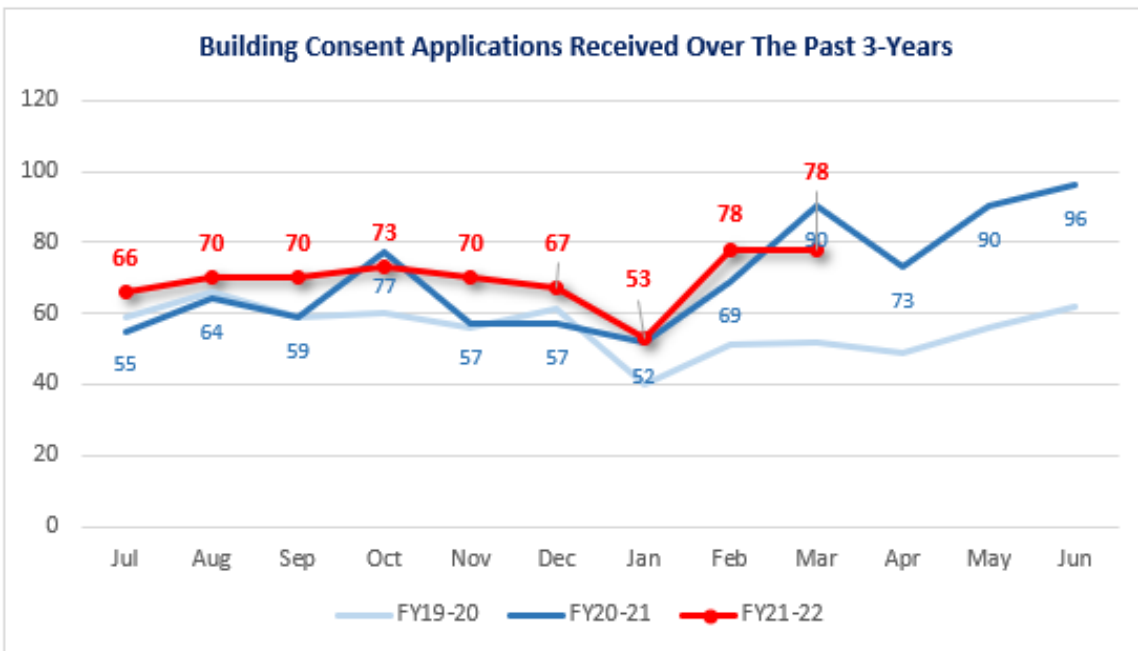
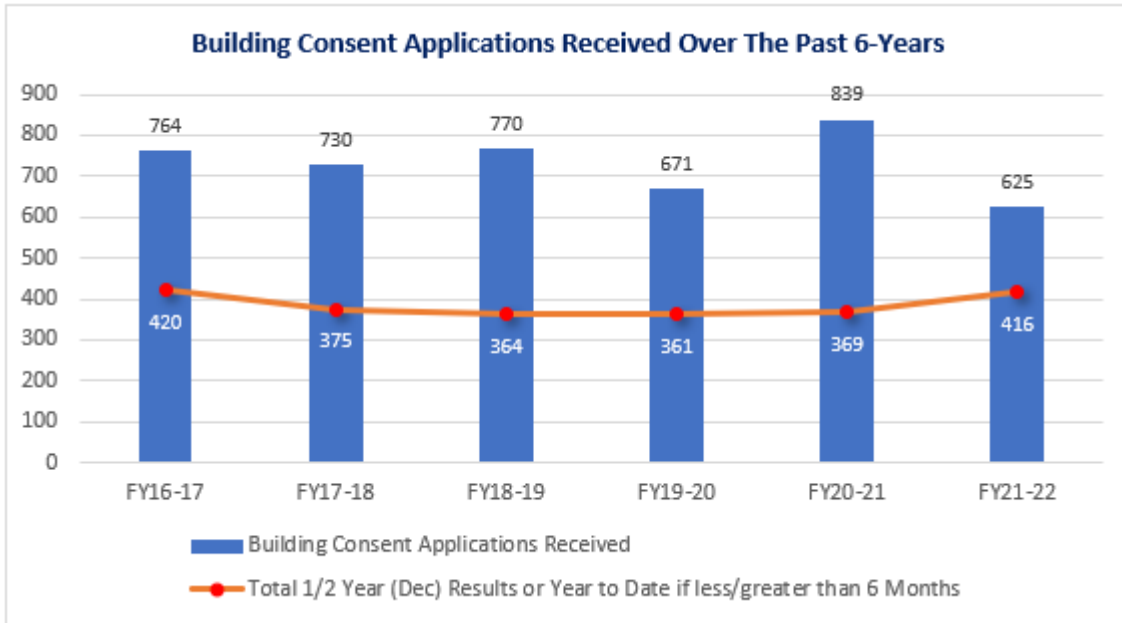
Project	Original cost estimate	Procurement Method	Status
Dargaville wastewater renewals	~\$400k	3 Waters panel	Final contract negotiations.
Kaiwaka wastewater renewals	~\$370k	3 Waters panel	Final contract negotiations.
Dargaville to Te Kopuru stopbanks	~\$320,000	Direct Appoint	Contract awarded: WSP. Disbursements are additional to LS price.
Raupo upgrade	~\$300,000	Closed Tender	Tender evaluation underway. Tender to be issued this month.
Pouto Wharf	~\$2,000,000	Open market	Final contract negotiations.

### Procurement planned for month of April

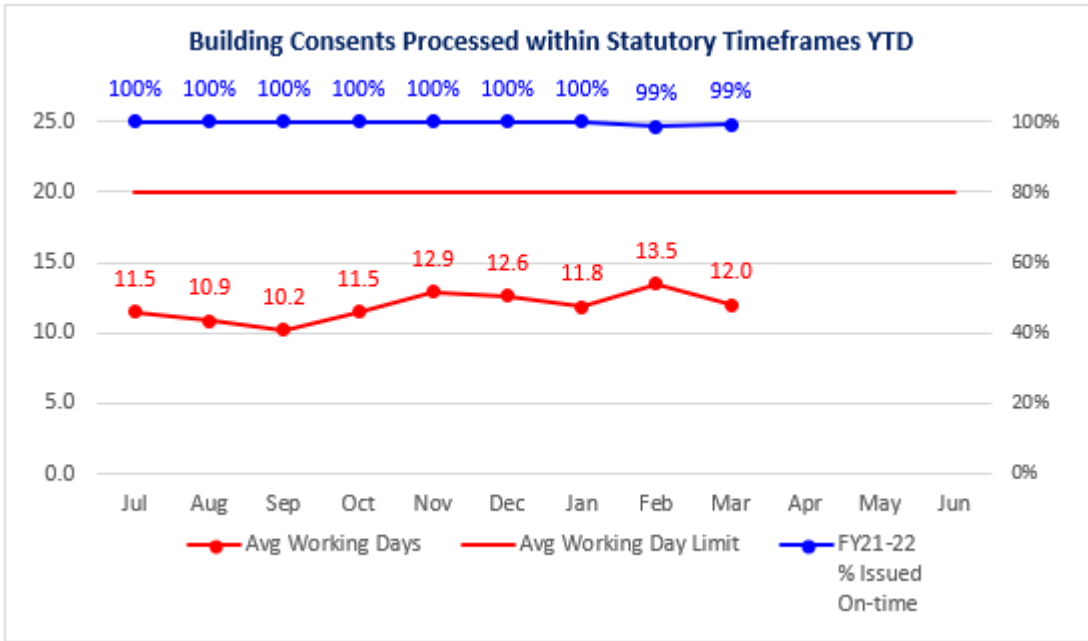
Project	Procurement cost estimate	Procurement Method	Comments
WTP and reservoir Ruawai	~\$90k	No less than three competitive quotes	WTP and reservoir Ruawai.

## Building and Resource Consents

### Building Consents



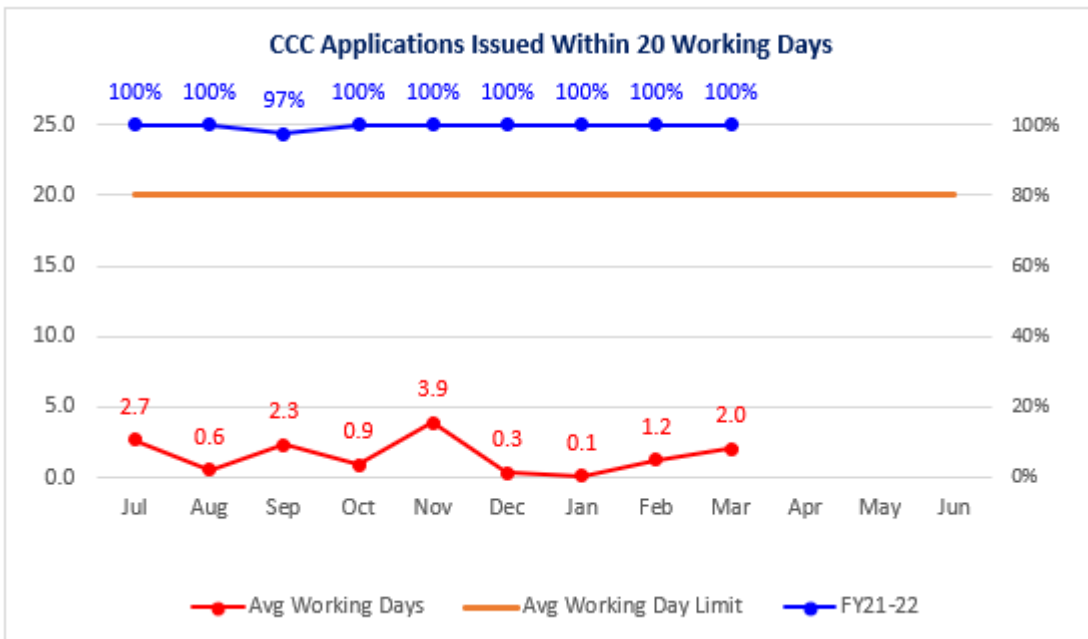
Building Consents processed within the statutory timeframes in March was 99.1%.

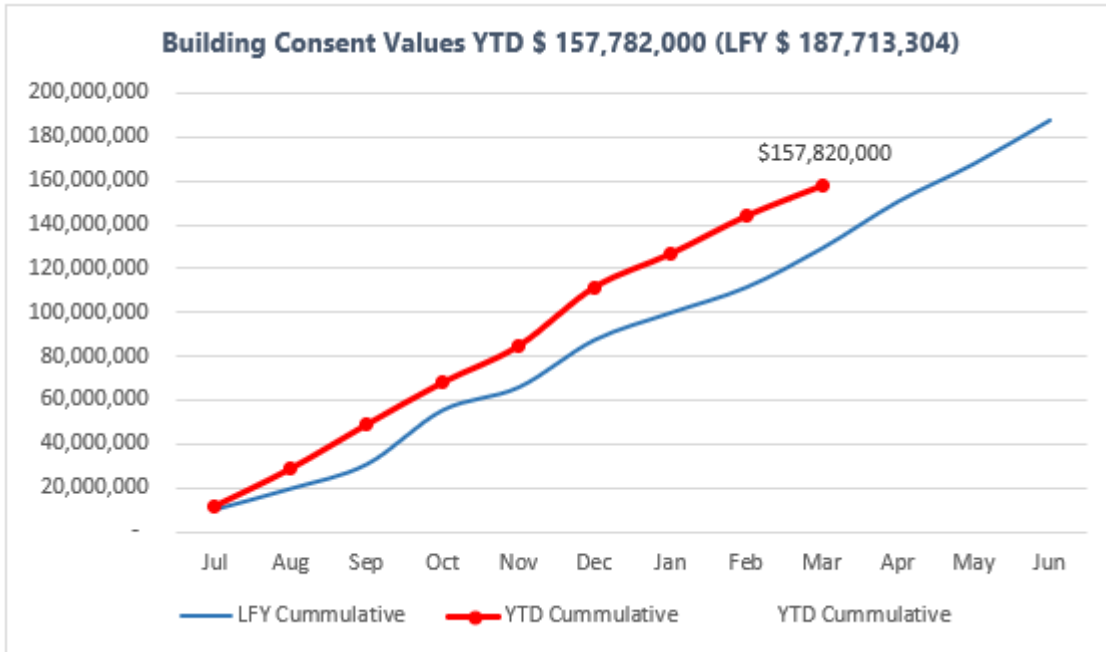


One was overdue a recommendation to grant the consent from the contractor was received late on day 20 and was not able to be completed by the BCA until day 21. This is considered unique and a review has been completed with the processor.

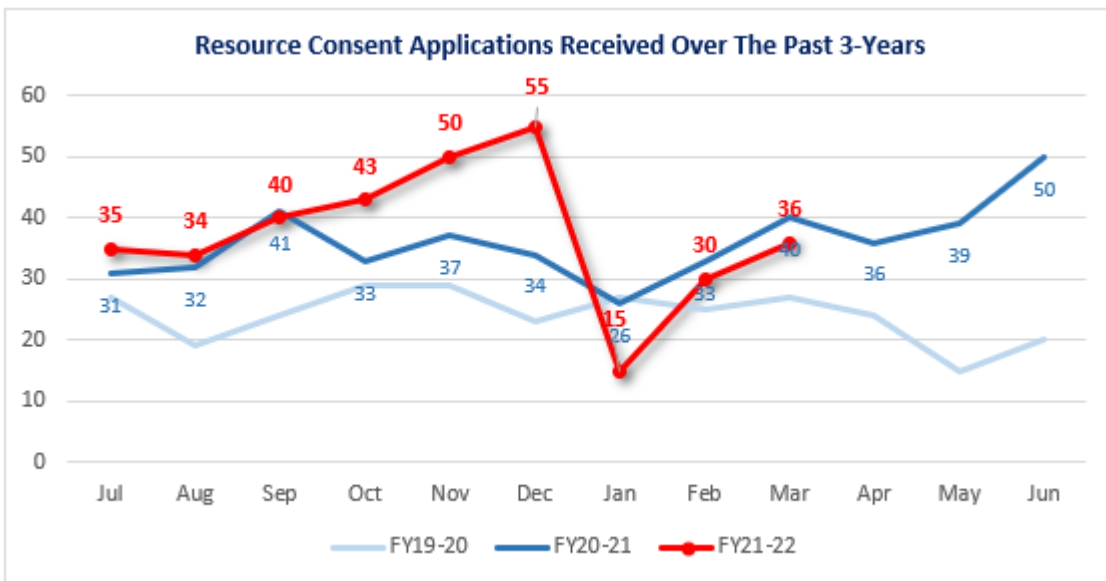
Please note there was an adjustment to February 2022 to include one overdue consent as a result of multiple building amendments being processed against one single consent. Processing was completed on day 24. This was investigated with the online building consent software provider to verify the timeframe, and is deemed a unique issue.

Code Compliance Certificates (CCC) issued in March were all at 100%.

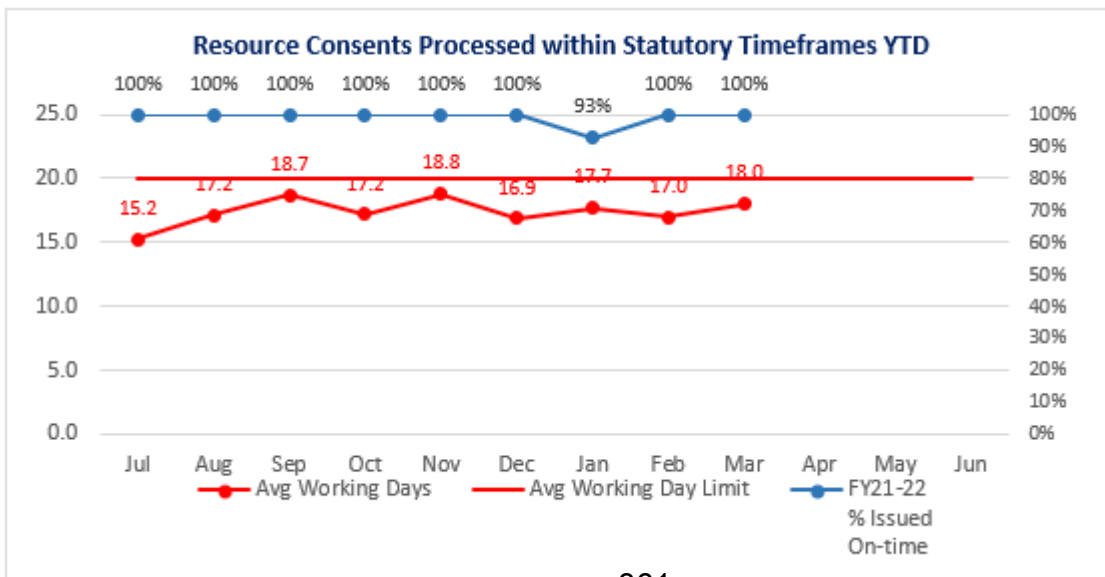




**Resource Consents**

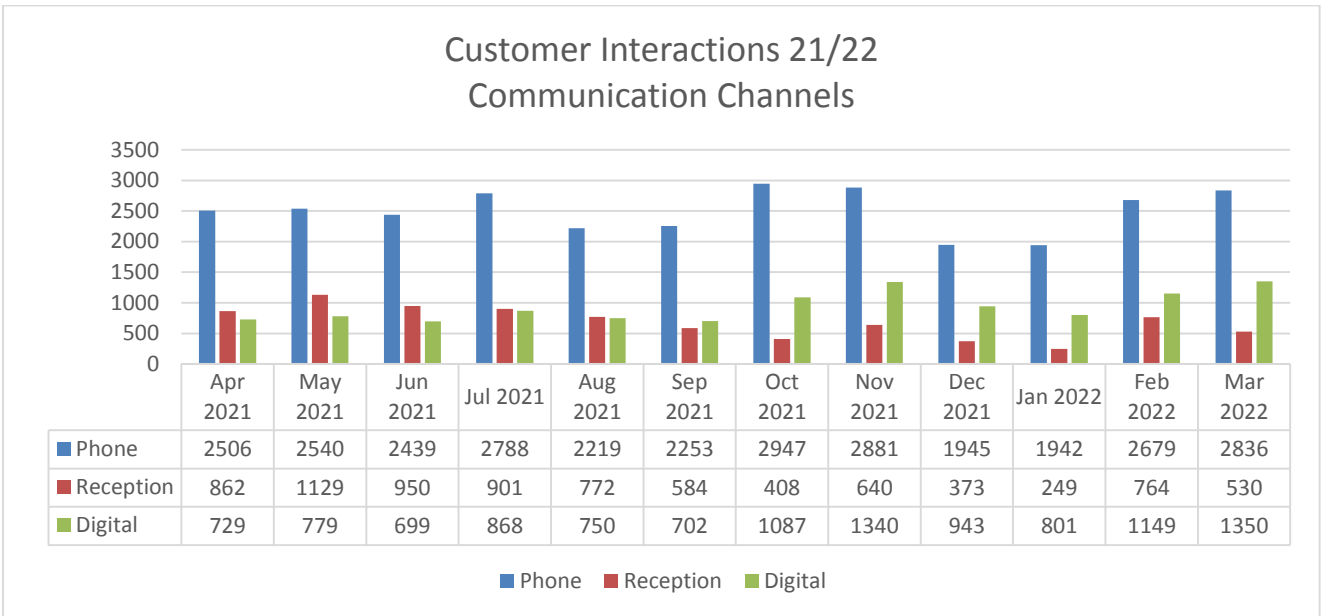


Resource Consents issued in March were 100% processed on time.

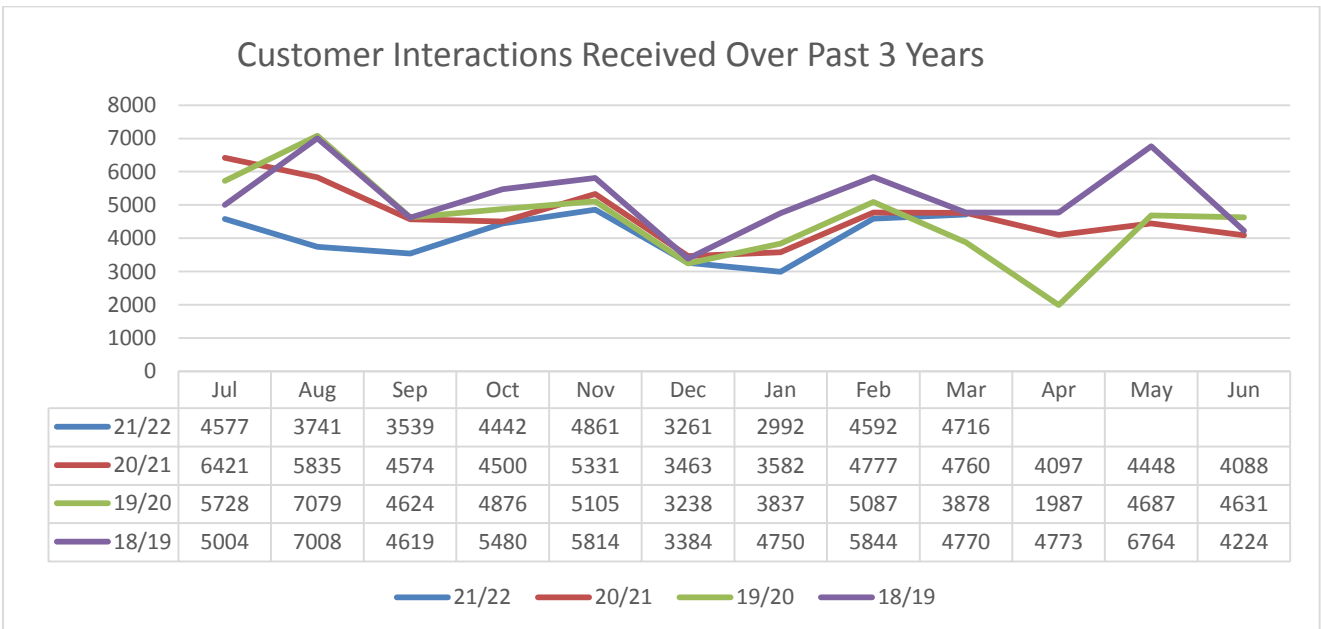


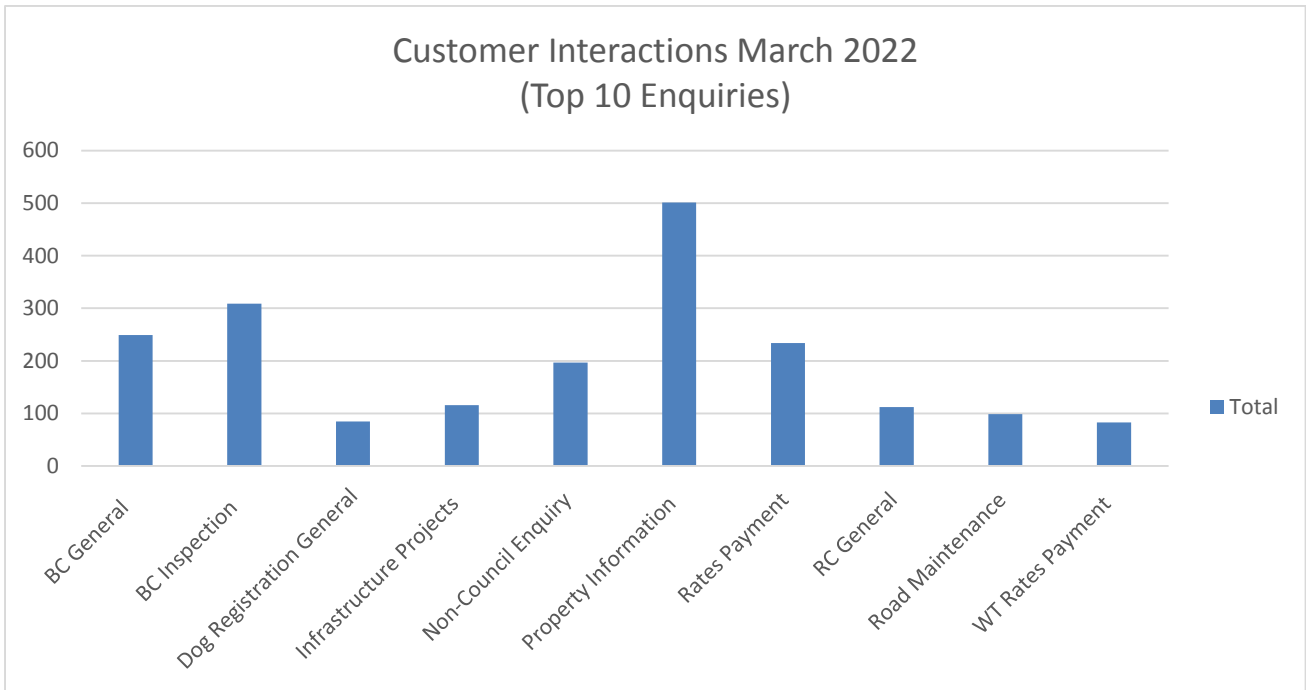
### Customer Services

Month	Total Customer interactions	Digital	Reception	Total Calls	Average Speed Answer (sec)	Average call abandonment (%)	Calls FTE
March	4716	1350	530	2836	27	8	2.58



\* Digital – Email, Website, social media





\* Other – FENZ, NZTA, NRC, LINZ, CAB, Utility Companies

**Narrative**

Interactions are comparative to previous years, however more customers are choosing to interact with Council using our digital channels, as this number continues to increase.

Property information and building inspection enquiries continue to feature. To enable customers to access this service anytime, investigation into self-service technology has begun. An increase in Waka Kotahi and NRC enquiries, as well as fire season status changes contributed to an increase in non-council enquiries.

As part of the risk assessment around Omicron, it has been necessary to continue with reduced office hours. Council’s Omicron response will depend on the way it spreads through the communities and may include reduced services, i.e. all or partial closure of reception services. Although the Customer Support team continues to be affected by the covid illness, assistance from other departments enabled continuity of service across all communication channels in March.





## Resolutions Register update – April 2022

Ref	Meeting Date	Item Number	Item Name	Resolution	Assigned	Status	Comments
1	26/09/2017	6.6	Stopbank reinstatement - land known as Section 73 75 part 44 Block XV of the Tokatoka Survey District	<p>a) Delegates responsibility to the interim Chief Executive to complete any associated works for the stopbank reinstatement of Raupo Drainage District flood protection based on feedback from community consultation and expert advice.</p> <p>b) Notes that the works are to be funded by Raupo Drainage Targeted Rate</p>	GM SGI	In Progress	<p>Council made further decision on this issue in November 2018. Meeting was held on 22 September 2020 to conclude matters. Raupo Drainage committee confirmed direction to progress.</p> <p><b>August update</b> – Consultant has been engaged to prepare material which will be used to progress the project. Engineers estimate will be updated and a paper brought to Council to incorporate budget.</p> <p><b>November-</b> to be reviewed at Nov Raupo Committee meeting and to Council later</p> <p><b>December-</b> Report to Council on Chairs alternative proposal</p> <p><b>March update</b> – Eros Foschieri will present at April Briefing</p> <p><b>April update</b> – Eros has presented at April Briefing, further analysis needed</p>
2	26/07/2018	4.11	Mangawhai golf course Reserve status exchange and Golf Club surrender of lease / variation of lease or grant of new licence	<p>a) Approves the surrender of the Mangawhai Golf Club lease on Lot 33 DP 185449 and the driving range Licence to Occupy and agrees in principle to approve a new Licence to Occupy for the Mangawhai Golf Club in accordance with the Community Assistance Policy</p> <p>b) Directs the Chief Executive to publically notify Council's intention to grant the Mangawhai Golf Club a new Licence to Occupy as required in section 119 of the Reserves Act 1977, and to report back to Council on the results of this consultation so that Council can consider any submissions received in accordance with section 120 of the Reserves Act 1977</p>	GM E&T	In Progress	<p>Public notification was done in August 2018, with no objections received. Staff are in negotiation with the Golf Club on terms and conditions of the surrender and Licence to Occupy (LTO). Council's lawyers drafted an LTO for the Golf Club's consideration. Revised LTO was sent in May 2019. Meeting was held with the Golf Club in June 2019 to discuss the last remaining substantive issue, which is related to the rent review clause. The Club to provide a proposed revision in near future.</p> <p><b>Sept 2021 update</b> -Marked up LTO has been received from Club and an indication that they would like to conclude matter in the near future.</p> <p><b>November 2021 Update-</b> Response to marked up LTO has prepared and will be sent to Club representatives for further discussion.</p> <p><b>December 2021-</b> Awaiting response from Club on marked up LTO.</p> <p><b>January 2022-</b> Have had several</p>

							<p>questions from Club but no formal response as yet.</p> <p><b>March 2022-</b> Response received from Club. Further matters raised being investigated.</p> <p><b>April 2022</b> - Response being prepared prior to a further meeting with the club.</p>
3	29/08/2019	4.1	Independent Planning Functions Review	<p>b) Requests the Chief Executive implement the recommendations provided by Barker &amp; Associates and set out in Appendix 7 of the above report</p>	GM T&E	In Progress	<p>Progress on the recommendations is reported to the Audit, Risk and Finance Committee. There are only 3 items left still in progress with one item not started. The remaining recommendations have been completed or a system set up for ongoing monitoring.</p>
4		5.5	Alamar boat ramp and carpark improvements	<p>a) Approves the allocation of Financial Contributions up to \$900k for the design and construction of the boat ramp car park.</p> <p>b) Approves the Procurement Plan for the construction of the car park.</p> <p>a) Delegates award of Contract to the CEO subject to the price being within the approved budget</p>	GM SGI	In progress	<p>Procurement approach amended so that it can be advanced without the coastal walkway. This will avoid unnecessary delays</p> <p><b>August Update</b> – Following design development it has been identified that the benefits of this investment do not outweigh the costs. Discussions have been held with stakeholders with regards not progressing the sealing of the road.</p> <p><b>October-</b> Boat club contacted and realise increased parking needed. Masterplan for that area to be started</p> <p><b>March update</b> – Full Structural Plan being completed for an extended area for future proofing of estuary access</p> <p><b>April update</b> - TBA</p>
5	28/07/2021	5.4	Resolving appeals on Private Plan Change 78 to the Kaipara District Plan	<p>a) Delegates the authority to resolve appeals on Private Plan Change 78 (Mangawhai Estuary Estates) to Mayor Smith, Cr Larsen, Cr Wethey.</p> <p>b) Delegates staff to attend Court-assisted mediation on behalf of Kaipara District Council and to represent Council's position during mediation with the parties.</p>	GM E&T	Completed	<p>Mediation has completed with the result announced publicly.</p>

6	25/08/2021	5.3	Appeals on the Dome Valley Landfill Resource Consent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Notes that Kaipara District Council has joined the appeal lodged by Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei and Environs Holding Ltd (Te Uri O Hau) on the Dome Valley Landfill Resource Consent, as a s274 party.</li> <li>b) Delegates the authority to resolve appeals on the Dome Valley Landfill Resource Consent Mayor Smith (Chair), Cr Vincent, Cr Joyce-Paki.</li> <li>c) Delegates staff to attend Court-assisted mediation on behalf of Kaipara District Council and to represent Council's position during mediation with the parties.</li> </ul>	GM E&T	In progress	A date has now been set for the Environment Court hearing. It is scheduled to commence on 20 June 2022 for a period of nine weeks in total over the course of five months. Staff are liaising with the EMs delegated responsibility for this work.
7	25/08/2021	5.5	Waipoua River Road Construction Contract Principal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Agrees to enter into negotiations with Te Roroa, DOC and any other potential stakeholder, on a contract to fully recover the costs of both the second seal and on-going maintenance of this road. An acceptable agreement will be a prerequisite to any consideration of vesting this road to Council.</li> </ul>	GM SGI	In progress	<p><b>August update</b> - [Reported through Externally Funded Programme Committee].</p> <p>Negotiations are in progress with Preferred Contractor.</p> <p><b>October</b>- still to finalise second seal costs</p> <p><b>Dec</b>- Contract awarded to Fulton Hogan and work started 3 December</p> <p><b>March update</b> – meeting to be arranged with DOC to sort out the maintenance</p> <p><b>April update</b> – CE contacting DOC</p>
8	29/09/2021	5.3	Mangawhai Museum Licence to Occupy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Approves the Mangawhai Museum's proposal for a new Licence to Occupy (LTO) for a period of up to 35 Years.</li> <li>b) Accepts a Surrender of the Mangawhai Museums existing lease once the terms of the new LTO have been agreed.</li> <li>c) Delegates to the Chief Executive responsibility for finalising the terms and conditions of the Surrender and LTO documents.</li> </ul>	GM E&T	In Progress	Finalised agreement was sent to Museum last month for their review and execution and we are awaiting a response.
9	24/11/2021	6.2	Baylys Beach storm events report	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Notes the Report on Baylys Beach Storm Events.</li> <li>b) Requests the Chief Executive report back to the March 2022 Council Meeting with a comprehensive report detailing issues and options at Baylys Beach.</li> </ul>	GM SGI	In progress	<p><b>March update:</b> Eros Foschieri leading meeting with community and report going to April Council Meeting</p> <p>April update:</p>
10	15/12/2021	5.1	Objection determination drainage work on private property	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Determines to proceed with the construction of the wastewater line along Lot 50 DP 180860 to 54C and D Jack Boyd Drive Mangawhai, without any alterations, pursuant to clause 1(e) of Schedule 12 of the Local Government Act 2002, in the manner shown at Attachment A to this report.</li> </ul>	GM SGI	In progress	<p>Staff are working with the land owners to progress this decision.</p> <p><b>April update:</b> Council has advised the land owners that resource should be available around December 2022 to progress this.</p>

11	15/12/2021	5.2	Annual Plan 2022-23 - Proposed changes, rates increase and decision whether to Consult	<p>a) Approves the proposed Annual Plan 2022/23 be prepared on the basis of Option 2 in this report, equating to a rates increase of 7.57% (after factoring in growth).</p> <p>b) Agrees that consultation on the proposed Annual Plan 2022-2023 is not required as this plan does not include significant or material differences from the Long Term Plan 2021/31 for the 2022/23 year.</p>	GM E&T	In progress	Updated financials, based on the draft financial forecast for this FY, will be presented to the May Council briefing.
12	15/12/2021	5.3	Parks and Open Spaces Operations and Maintenance- Procurement Plan	<p>a) Approves the Parks and Spaces Procurement Plan (Attachment A).</p> <p>b) Notes that Council staff will report back to a Council meeting on the tender results for approval prior to appointment of contractors.</p>	GM SGI	In progress	<p><b>March update:</b> Roll over for 4 months to enable tender documentation to be prepared</p> <p><b>April update:</b> Contract is rolled over for 4 months to 31 October 22</p>
13	15/12/2021	5.7	Pahi Community Hall Society License to Occupy	<p>a) Approves a new License to Occupy (LTO) the Pahi Community Hall Society's for a period of up to 30 years.</p> <p>b) Delegates the Chief Executive responsibility for finalising the terms and conditions of the LTO documents.</p>	GM E&T	In progress	investigation to confirm KDC is administering body of the land still being progressed.
14	23/02/2022	2.2	Petition: receiving a petition from the Awakino Point Ratepayers Group	<p>a) Notes the statement of petition and supporting signatures (<b>Attachment A</b>).</p> <p>b) Notes that Council staff will report back at the April 2022 Council Meeting.</p>	GM E&T	Completed	This is reported back to this Council meeting.
15	23/02/2022	5.3	Waste Minimisation - Strategy for the Modernisation of Services	<p>a) Approves phase one the proposed strategy to modernise Councils Waste Minimisation activity as outlined below:</p> <p><b>Kerbside collection system</b></p> <p><b>Urban areas:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 120L Wheelie Bin weekly for refuse</li> <li>▪ 240L Wheelie Bin fortnightly for Recycling</li> <li>▪ 45L crate for kerbside sorted glass</li> </ul> <p><b>Rural areas:</b> (On existing routes)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 120L Wheelie Bin weekly kerbside collections for refuse (Collected from the farm gate)</li> </ul> <p><b>Resource Recovery Parks:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Free recycling at Resource Recovery Parks</li> <li>▪ Council takes control of the revenue stream, data collection and pays a contractor to manage its waste facilities</li> <li>▪ Allow the contractor to retain earning's from the sale of recyclables</li> <li>▪ Procure Transfer Station management and operations services through a competitive</li> </ul>	GM SGI	In progress	<b>April update:</b> preparing initial budget analysis for Council and then procurement plan

				<p>tender process</p> <p><b>Landfill arrangements:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Procure landfill arrangements through a competitive tender process to ensure Council is paying market-based rates for its landfilling arrangements.</li> </ul>			
16	23/02/2022	5.5	Fees and Charges	a) Approves the draft Fees & Charges for 2022/2023 ( <b>Attachment A</b> ) for community consultation prior to formal adoption.	GM SGI	In progress	<p><b>March update:</b> Approved Draft Fees &amp; Charges are now out for consultation</p> <p><b>April update:</b> To be approved May Council Meeting</p>
17	23/02/2022	5.6	Pākiri sand extraction submission	<p>a) Notes the final submission made on the two Auckland Council resource consent applications for sand extraction along the Mangawhai-Pākiri embayment.</p> <p>b) Delegates the authority to represent Council and speak at the Resource Consent hearings to <b>Mayor Smith</b>.</p>	GM E&T	Complete	Mayor Smith will represent KDC once the hearings are scheduled and notified.
18	23/02/2022	5.7	Mangawhai Heads Volunteer Lifeguard Service Termination of Lease and License to Occupy Application	<p>a) the termination of the joint Lease of Mangawhai Heads Volunteer Lifeguard Service (MHVLS).</p> <p>b) the new License to Occupy Agreement for Mangawhai Fishing &amp; Boating Club.</p> <p>c) the Development Agreement/License to Occupy (LTO) for Mangawhai Heads Volunteer Lifeguard Service.</p> <p>d) Delegates the Chief Executive responsibility for finalising the terms and conditions of the LTO documents.</p>	GM E&T	In progress	The community team are in discussions with the Mangawhai Fishing and Boating Club to enact this decision.
19	23/02/2022	5.8	Gumdiggers Track, Mangawhai Update	<p>a) Delegates the Chief Executive to transfer the following Northland Regional Council resource consents from the Mangawhai Recreational Charitable Trust to Kaipara District Council:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ AUT.041499.01.01.</li> <li>▪ AUT.041499.02.01.</li> <li>▪ AUT.041499.03.01.</li> </ul>	GM E&T	Completed	The consents have been transferred to KDC.
20	23/02/2022	5.9	Dargaville Water Storage – Indicative Business Case	<p>a) Accepts the findings of the Indicative Business Case (<b>Attachment A</b>) that the Waitua Reservoir option as detailed in that indicative business case is the most appropriate for the needs of the Dargaville Community.</p> <p>b) Directs staff to further advance the Waitua option (as detailed in <b>Attachment A</b>) through the development of a business case.</p>	GM SGI	In progress	<b>April update:</b> report likely to be completed around August 2022.

21	30/03/2022	5.1	Decision on Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel Participation and Representation	<p>a) Agrees elected member participation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be two participant observers with no speaking rights</p> <p>b) Agrees that elected member representation on the Adaptive Pathway Pilot Community Panel be the elected members representing Otamatea Ward (currently Crs Curnow and Vincent).</p>	GM E&T	Completed	Staff will coordinate the community panels as decided.
22	30/03/2022	5.2	The extension of Contract 860 - The maintenance of Parks, Reserves, Cemeteries, Public Toilets, Buildings and Dargaville Gardens 2018/2022	a) Approves to extend the term of contract for Contract 860, The Maintenance of Parks, Reserves, Cemeteries, Public Toilets, Buildings and Dargaville Gardens 2018/2022, for a further four months to the 31 October 2022.	GM IS		
23	30/03/2022	5.4	Externally funded projects – Additional funding for Pahi Wharf and Kaiwaka Footbridges	<p>a) Approves that the shortfall of \$75,000 for Pahi Wharf be funded from the Maungaturoto, Paparoa, Tinopai and Surrounds Financial Contributions Reserve.</p> <p>b) Approves that the shortfall of \$23,000 for Kaiwaka Footbridges be funded from: 1) \$13,000 from retained earnings; and 2) \$10,000 from Kaiwaka Pahi Wharf Financial Contributions Reserve.</p>	GM IS		
24	30/03/2022	5.5	Joint Submission - Renewable Energy Zones Consultation	<p>a) Approves the Draft Joint Submission on Renewable Energy Zones (Attachment B).</p> <p>b) Delegates the Mayor the authority to finalise the submission in conjunction with the Mayors and Chairperson of the Northland Councils, to reflect any further elected member feedback.</p>	GM E&T	Complete	The submission was confirmed and approved by the Mayors and Chair and subsequently lodged.
25	30/03/2022	5.6	Local Government Elections 2022 - Order of Candidate Names	<p>a) Notes the 2022 Triennial Election Report from the Electoral Officer.</p> <p>b) Resolves for the 2022 Triennial Election as permitted under Regulation 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001, to adopt the random order of candidate names.</p>	GM E&T	Complete	The Independent Electoral Officer has been advised of the decision for inclusion on elections related documentation.

## Recommendation to move into public excluded session

The following recommendation is made in reliance on section 48(1)(a) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (LGOIMA) and the particular interest or interests protected by section 7 of the Act.

On the grounds that matters will be prejudiced by the presence of members of the public during discussions on the following items, it is recommended:

### Recommendation/Ngā tūhunga

a) That the following items are considered with the public excluded:

Item	Grounds for excluding the public
Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes – 30 March 2022.	<p>S7(2)(a) to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons.</p> <p>S7(2)(i) enable any local authority holding the information to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations).</p>